




# 英 语 语 法

## 精 讲 与 测 试

主 编 张福元  
副主编 孟江虹

 华东理工大学出版社

## 图书在版编目( CIP )数据

英语语法精讲与测试/张福元主编. —上海:华东理工大学出版社, 2007. 1  
ISBN 978-7-5628-1987-5

I. 英... II. 张... III. 英语-语法 IV. H314

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字( 2007 )第 004389 号

## 英语语法精讲与测试

主 编 张福元

副主编 孟江虹

---

责任编辑 / 陈 勤

封面设计 / 戚亮轩

责任校对 / 李 晔

出版发行 / 华东理工大学出版社

地 址:上海市梅陇路 130 号, 200237

电 话:( 021 )64250306( 营销部 )

( 021 )64252717( 编辑室 )

传 真:( 021 )64252707

网 址:www. hdlgpress. com. cn

印 刷 / 江苏通州印刷总厂有限公司

开 本 / 850mm × 1168mm 1/32

印 张 / 15. 125

字 数 / 468 千字

版 次 / 2007 年 1 月第 1 版

印 次 / 2007 年 1 月第 1 次

印 数 / 1 - 8050 册

书 号 / ISBN 978-7-5628-1987-5/H · 592

定 价 / 22.00 元

( 本书如有印装质量问题, 请到出版社营销部调换 )

语法是学习语言的基础。语法结构掌握得好坏,直接影响语言学习者的读、写、听、说、译的能力。虽然许多英语学习者已经掌握了一定的语法知识,但是在实际操作过程中却常常出

错。有的学生在学习语法过程中,面对诸多的语法项目,感觉千头万绪,不知道该抓什么,从何抓起,结果是事倍功半,效果甚微。为了帮助学生提高英语的实际操作能力,达到事半功倍的效果,作者在多年实践的基础上编著了这本书。

本书是针对语法学习中的重点难点,以目前各种考试中常见的语法现象为主线编写而成。讲解部分突出重点难点,力求做到简明扼要,清楚易懂。通过对本书的学习,既巩固了自己的语法知识,又加深了对语法知识深层次的理解,对常考的语言点也能够系统地掌握。在讲解每个语法项目的同时,我们也注重语法项目之间的联系与区别,以避免混淆。

本书的书稿在教学中已得到多次使用,对其中的有些内容进行了反复的修改,使本书更完善、更精确、更具实用价值。全书共分18章,每章除了重难点讲解之外,还附有选择和改错两种练习题,以巩固所学语法知识,增强语言测试的实际应用能力。

在本书的编写过程中,马静、黄培英、张宁、王娟、展伟伟、武倩、牛力维、赵宁、孙继萍、李海、刘广仁、李伟、张伟、刘卫兵、刚旭、秦龙、王小林、邱杰、李昊、李安兴、张文丽、吴建国、惠敏、张时雨、刘小伟等同志也付出了辛勤的劳动,在此表示感谢。

本书在编写过程中参阅了大量参考书、词典和有关资料,在此向这些作者表示感谢。

由于水平有限,书中肯定还有不少缺陷和不足之处,敬请广大读者和同仁批评指正。

# 前言

PREFACE

编者

2007年1月





# 目 录

1	第一章 动词	
1	第一节 动词的种类及其作用	
2	一、系动词	
2	二、实义动词	
5	三、助动词	
5	四、情态动词	
5	第二节 普通动词的变化形式	
6	一、一般现在时的第三人称单数变化形式	
6	二、现在分词的词尾变化形式	
7	三、过去式和过去分词词尾的变化形式	
8	第三节 短语动词	
8	一、动词 + 介词	
9	二、动词 + 副词	
10	三、动词 + 名词 + 介词	
11	四、动词 + 副词 + 介词	
12	第四节 常用动词的区别	
23	Exercise 1	
29	第二章 时态	
29	第一节 一般现在时	
30	一、一般现在时的基本用法	
30	二、一般现在时用来表示将来时的几种特殊用法	
31	三、一般现在时表示过去时间	
32	第二节 一般过去时	
32	一、一般过去时的基本用法	



- 32     二、一般过去时的特殊用法
- 33    第三节   一般将来时
- 33     一、will/shall 表示将来时的用法
- 34     二、“be going to + 动词原形”表示将来时
- 34     三、“be about to do sth.”表示将来时
- 35     四、“be to + 动词原形”表示将来时间
- 35     五、“be + V-ing( 现在进行时 )”表示将来时间
- 35     六、用一般现在时表示将来时间
- 36    第四节   过去将来时
- 36     一、过去将来时的基本用法
- 36     二、过去将来时的特殊用法
- 37    第五节   现在完成时
- 37     一、表示过去发生的动作对现在造成的影响( 已完成用法 )
- 37     二、表示动作的持续和重复( 未完成用法 )
- 38     三、现在完成时的特殊用法
- 40    第六节   过去完成时
- 40     一、过去完成时的基本用法
- 41     二、过去完成时的特殊用法
- 41    第七节   现在进行时
- 41     一、现在进行时的基本用法
- 42     二、现在进行时的特殊用法
- 42     三、不能用于进行时的动词
- 43    第八节   过去进行时
- 43     一、过去进行时的基本用法
- 44     二、过去进行时的特殊用法
- 44    第九节   将来进行时
- 44     将来进行时的用法
- 45    第十节   将来完成时
- 45     将来完成时的用法
- 45    第十一节  现在完成进行时
- 45     现在完成进行时的用法
- 46    第十二节  几组时态的对比



· 目 录 ·

46	一、现在完成时与一般过去时的区别
46	二、过去完成时与一般过去时的区别
47	三、现在完成时与现在完成进行时的区别
48	第十三节 时态的呼应
48	一、名词性从句的时态呼应
49	二、状语从句和定语从句的时态呼应
50	Exercise 2
58	第三章 被动语态
58	第一节 被动语态的种类
58	一、及物动词用于被动结构的各种时态
59	二、短语动词的被动结构
59	三、双宾语动词的被动结构
60	四、复合宾语的被动结构
60	五、含有情态动词的被动结构
60	第二节 被动语态的基本用法
61	第三节 主动语态表示被动的情况
63	第四节 被动语态与系表结构的区别
63	一、从过去分词的功能上来区分
63	二、从修饰过去分词的词来区分
63	三、从谓语动词的特性上来区分
63	四、从短语动词是否有介词搭配上来区分
64	第五节 使用被动语态应注意的问题
64	一、被动语态在时态、数等方面与主语一致
64	二、不及物动词没有被动语态
65	三、有些及物动词不能用被动语态
65	四、使役动词和感官动词的被动用法
67	Exercise 3
73	第四章 助动词和情态动词
73	第一节 助动词
73	一、助动词的种类





74	二、助动词的用法
75	第二节 情态动词
75	一、情态动词的种类
75	二、can 和 could 的形式和用法
77	三、can( could ) 与 be able to 的区别
78	四、may 和 might 的形式和用法
80	五、must 的形式和用法
81	六、must 和 have to 的区别
81	七、need 和 dare 的形式和用法
82	八、will 和 would 的形式和用法
83	九、used to 和 would 的用法比较
83	十、shall 的形式和用法
84	十一、should 和 ought to 的形式和用法
85	Exercise 4
91	第五章 虚拟语气
91	第一节 非真实条件状语从句中的虚拟语气
92	一、if 条件状语从句中的虚拟语气形式
92	二、if 虚拟条件句的基本用法
93	三、省略 if 的虚拟条件句的用法
93	四、混合型虚拟条件句
94	五、含蓄虚拟条件句
95	六、虚拟语气与祈使语气、陈述语气的混合使用
96	七、“ If it were ( had been ) not for. . . ”句型中的虚拟语气
96	第二节 名词性从句中的虚拟语气
96	一、宾语从句中的虚拟语气
98	二、主语从句中的虚拟语气
99	三、表语从句和同位语从句中的虚拟语气
100	第三节 其他句型中的虚拟语气
100	一、would rather , would sooner , would just as soon 等句型中的虚拟语气
100	二、It is ( high / about ) time ( that ) . . . 句型中的虚拟语气

101	三、if only 引起的感叹句中的虚拟语气
101	四、in case ,lest ,for fear that 等引起的虚拟语气
102	五、as if 和 as though 引起的虚拟语气
102	六、had hoped 后面所跟虚拟语气
103	七、动词 be ,intend ,mean ,plan ,want ,hope 等后面所跟的虚拟语气
104	Exercise 5
110	第六章 非限定动词
110	第一节 动词不定式
111	一、动词不定式作主语
111	二、动词不定式作表语
111	三、动词不定式作宾语
112	四、不定式作宾补
113	五、不定式作定语
114	六、动词不定式作状语
116	七、“ 连接词 + 动词不定式 ”的用法
117	八、动词不定式的逻辑主语
118	九、不带 to 的动词不定式
120	十、to 后面省略动词原形的动词不定式
120	十一、动词不定式的时态
121	十二、动词不定式的否定形式
122	十三、动词不定式的被动结构
123	第二节 动名词
123	一、动名词作主语
123	二、动名词作表语
124	三、动名词作宾语
126	四、动名词的逻辑主语
127	五、动名词的时态
127	六、动名词的被动式
128	第三节 分词
128	一、分词作表语



129	二、分词作定语
130	三、分词作宾语补足语
131	四、分词作状语
132	五、分词的独立结构
133	六、垂悬分词
133	七、分词的时态
134	八、现在分词的被动式
135	第四节 非谓语动词的用法比较
135	一、动名词作主语与不定式作主语的比较
136	二、动名词作宾语与不定式作宾语的比较
138	三、既可接动名词作宾语也可接不定式作宾补的某些动词的比较
138	四、动名词作表语与现在分词作表语的比较
139	五、作表语的现在分词和构成进行时态的现在分词的比较
139	六、作表语的过去分词和构成被动语态的过去分词的比较
139	七、分词作宾补与不定式作宾补的比较
139	八、不定式与分词作定语的比较
141	Exercise 6
151	第七章 名词
151	第一节 不可数名词
151	一、在汉语中属可数范畴,但在英语中为不可数名词的某些词
152	二、不可数名词的量化表示
153	第二节 可数名词单复数变化的特殊形式
153	一、单个名词单复数的特殊形式
156	二、只能用名词的复数形式
157	三、集合名词的单复数形式
157	四、合成名词的单复数变化形式
158	五、具有双重特性的名词
159	第三节 名词的所有格
159	一、“s”所有格的用法
161	二、s 属格与通格的互用



161	三、of 所有格的用法
162	四、双重所有格( of + 名词 s )
163	第四节 名词的性
163	一、表示人的名词的性
164	二、表示双重性的人的名词
164	三、表示动物的名词的性
165	Exercise 7
170	第八章 代词
170	第一节 人称代词
170	一、人称代词的形式和作用
172	二、it 的用法
173	第二节 物主代词
174	第三节 反身代词
174	一、反身代词的形式
174	二、反身代词的用法
174	三、反身代词数和人称代词的一致问题
175	四、反身代词的某些特殊用法
176	第四节 相互代词
176	第五节 指示代词
176	一、指示代词的形式和作用
176	二、that ,this ,those 等指示代词的几种用法
177	三、such 的用法
178	四、same 的用法
178	第六节 疑问代词
178	一、疑问代词 who , whom 和 whose 的用法
179	二、疑问代词 what 和 which 的用法
179	三、疑问代词的用法与比较
180	四、疑问代词的强调作用
180	第七节 不定代词
181	一、all 和 both 的用法
181	二、each 和 every 的用法



- 182 三、no one 和 none 的用法
- 183 四、some 和 any 的用法
- 183 五、few a few little a little 的用法
- 184 六、everyone 和 every one 的用法
- 184 七、either 和 neither 的用法
- 185 八、other 和 another 的用法
- 186 九、one 的用法
- 187 十、someone something 等合成代词的形式和用法
- 188 十一、much 和 many 的用法
- 189 十二、more 和 most 的用法
- 189 十三、不定代词的否定形式
- 191 Exercise 8

## 198 第九章 冠词和数词

---

- 198 第一节 冠词
- 198 一、冠词的种类
- 199 二、不定冠词的用法
- 200 三、定冠词的用法
- 203 四、零冠词的用法
- 205 五、冠词用法的其他问题
- 206 第二节 数词
- 206 一、基数词
- 207 二、序数词
- 208 三、分数
- 208 四、倍数
- 210 Exercise 9

## 216 第十章 形容词与副词

---

- 216 第一节 形容词
- 216 一、形容词的种类
- 217 二、表语形容词和定语形容词
- 218 三、名词化的形容词

218	四、形容词在句中的位置
220	五、前置形容词的排列顺序
221	六、几组易混淆的同源形容词
222	第二节 副词
222	一、副词的种类
223	二、副词的用法
224	三、副词的位置
225	四、几组同源副词的对比
227	五、几组形、意相近副词的区别
230	第三节 形容词与副词容易误用的几种情况
230	一、系动词之后应用形容词 不用副词
231	二、以-ly 结尾的形容词和副词
231	三、既可作形容词也可作副词的词
232	四、词形相近的形容词和副词
232	第四节 形容词与副词的比较结构
233	一、形容词和副词的原级(同级)比较
234	二、形容词和副词的比较级
237	三、比较级的其他用法
239	四、形容词和副词的最高级用法
240	第五节 使用比较级时应注意的问题
240	一、替代问题
241	二、主句和从句对比的一致性问题的
242	三、比较结构中的名词位置问题
244	Exercise 10
256	第十一章 介词
256	第一节 介词的种类
257	一、简单介词
257	二、双重介词
257	三、短语介词
258	第二节 介词的作用
258	第三节 介词的意义



- 258 一、表示时间关系的介词
- 259 二、表示地点、位置和方向的介词
- 259 三、表示原因的介词
- 260 四、表示方式或手段的介词
- 260 五、表示目的的介词
- 260 六、表示让步的介词
- 261 七、表示条件的介词
- 261 八、表示相关的介词
- 261 九、表示排除的介词
- 262 十、表示工具和材料的介词
- 262 十一、表示对象的介词
- 262 十二、表示对比或比例的介词
- 263 第四节 几组意义相近的介词的区别
- 263 一、in 和 after 在表示时间时的区别
- 263 二、in ,on ,at 在表示时间和地点时的区别
- 264 三、over/under ,up/down ,above/below ,on/beneath 表示“上”、  
“下”位置的区别
- 265 四、around ,round ,about 表示“围绕”或“周围”意义的区别
- 265 五、across ,through ,over 表示“横过 穿过 越过”意义的区别
- 265 六、at ,of ,for ,with ,over ,in 表示引起某种感情的原因或理由时的区别
- 266 七、表示排除意义的介词在用法上的区别
- 268 八、with ,in 和 by 在表示材料、手段、工具时的区别
- 269 九、between ,among 和 amid( st )在表示“之间 ,之中”用法上的区别
- 270 第五节 介词与其他词类的搭配
- 270 一、介词和名词的搭配
- 273 二、介词和动词的搭配
- 275 三、介词和形容词的搭配
- 279 Exercise 11
- 286 第十二章 名词性从句
-



286	第一节 主语从句
286	一、that 引导的主语从句
289	二、wh-引导的主语从句
290	三、whether 与 if 引导主语从句的区别
290	第二节 宾语从句
291	一、that 引导的宾语从句
291	二、that 引导宾语从句的其他几种情况
293	三、wh-引导的宾语从句
293	四、介词后面所跟的宾语从句
294	五、形容词后面所跟的宾语从句
295	第三节 表语从句
295	一、that 引导的表语从句
295	二、wh-疑问词引导的表语从句
295	三、从属连词 as if , as though , because , just as 等引导的表语从句
296	四、使用表语从句时应注意的问题
296	第四节 同位语从句
296	一、同位语从句通常由 that 引导
297	二、wh-疑问词引导的同位语从句
297	三、whether 引导的同位语从句
297	四、同位语从句与定语从句的区别
298	第五节 that 和 wh-引导名词性从句的区别
299	Exercise 12
305	第十三章 定语从句
305	第一节 关系代词引导的定语从句
305	一、关系代词 who ,whom 引导的定语从句
306	二、关系代词 whose 引导的定语从句
306	三、关系代词 which 引导的定语从句
307	四、that 引导的定语从句
307	五、通常只用关系代词 that ,不用 which , who 或 whom 的几种情况





- 309 六、关系代词 but 和 than 引导的定语从句
- 309 第二节 关系副词引导的定语从句
- 309 一、关系副词 when ,where ,why 引导的定语从句
- 310 二、that 作关系副词引导的定语从句
- 311 第三节 限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句
- 311 一、限制性定语从句
- 312 二、非限制性定语从句
- 312 三、使用非限制性定语从句时应注意的问题
- 313 第四节 as 引导的定语从句以及与其他关系代词的比较
- 313 一、as 与其他词连接引导的定语从句
- 313 二、the same... as 和 the same... that 的用法不同
- 314 三、as 和 which 引导非限定性定语从句的用法比较
- 315 第五节 “介词 + 关系代词”引导的定语从句
- 315 一、介词与关系代词连用引导的定语从句
- 316 二、介词短语动词与关系代词连用引导的定语从句
- 316 三、of 与关系代词连用引导的定语从句
- 317 四、“名词/代词/形容词比较级或最高级/数词等 + 介词 + 关系代词”引导的定语从句
- 317 第六节 关系代词和关系副词的选择
- 319 Exercise 13
- 
- 326 第十四章 状语从句
- 
- 326 第一节 时间状语从句
- 326 一、when ,while 和 as 引导的状语从句
- 328 二、一些形式上为副词的连接词引导的时间状语从句
- 328 三、某些表示时间的名词短语引导的时间状语从句
- 328 四、连接词 as soon as ,since ,no sooner than... 等引导的时间状语从句
- 329 五、till 与 until
- 330 六、状语从句中省略动词 be 的情况
- 330 七、时间状语从句中一般现在时表示将来时
- 331 第二节 地点状语从句



331	第三节 原因状语从句
331	一、because ,since 和 as 引导的原因状语从句
332	二、for 和 because 的区别
332	三、复合连词引导的原因状语从句
333	四、介词词组引导的原因状语从句
333	第四节 结果状语从句
333	一、so . . . that ,such that ,such . . . that 引导的结果状语从句
334	二、so ,that 和 so that 等引导的结果状语从句
334	三、to such a degree that ,to such an extent that ,with the result that 等引导的结果状语从句
335	第五节 目的状语从句
335	一、so that ,in order that 等引导的目的状语从句
335	二、lest ,for fear that ,in case 引导的目的状语从句
336	三、so that 引导结果状语从句和引导目的状语从句的区别
336	第六节 条件状语从句
336	一、if ,unless 引导的条件状语从句
337	二、only if 和 if only 引导的条件状语从句
337	三、其他常用来引导条件状语从句的连词
338	四、条件状语从句中用一般现在时代替将来时
338	第七节 让步状语从句
338	一、though ,although 引导的让步状语从句
339	二、even if 和 even though 引导的让步状语从句
339	三、as 和 though 引导的让步状语从句的比较
339	四、while 引导的让步状语从句
340	五、“ whether . . . or . . . ” ; “ wh-词 + ever ” ; “ no matter + wh-词 ” 等结构引导的让步状语从句
340	六、be 引导的让步状语从句
340	七、granted that ,for all that 等引导的让步状语从句
341	第八节 方式状语从句
341	一、as ,just as ( . . . so ) 引导的方式状语从句
341	二、as if 和 as though 引导的方式状语从句
342	三、the way 引导的方式状语从句



342 第九节 比较状语从句

342 一、as... as 和 than 引导的比较状语从句

342 二、the + 比较级.....the + 比较级(越.....越.....)结构

343 第十节 使用状语从句应注意的问题

343 一、状语从句的省略问题

343 二、在使用英语状语从句时 要注意英汉两种语言在表达上的差异

344 Exercise 14

351 第十五章 倒装

---

351 第一节 语法倒装

352 一、以 neither ,nor 或 so 开头的句子或分句的倒装形式

352 二、省去了 if 的虚拟条件状语从句的倒装形式

352 三、由 as ,be 和 though 引导的让步状语从句的倒装形式

353 四、以 here ,there ,now ,then ,thus ,hence 等词开头的句子的倒装形式

353 五、“there be”结构中的全部倒装形式

354 六、疑问句中的倒装形式

354 第二节 修辞倒装

354 一、only 引导的状语放在句首时的倒装形式

354 二、有否定意义的词或短语放在句首作状语时的倒装形式

355 三、由 not only... but also... ,neither... nor... 等连接的句子的倒装形式

355 四、当从属连词 so... that 和 such... that 中的 so 和 such 位于句首时的倒装形式

356 五、连词 as 或 than 引导的状语从句中的倒装形式

356 六、“the + 比较级 ,the + 比较级”结构中的倒装形式

356 七、表示方位的副词 in ,out ,away ,off ,down ,up 等位于句首时的倒装形式

357 八、为了强调句中的状语时的倒装形式

357 九、表示地点的介词短语在句中充当状语时的倒装形式

358 十、情态动词 may 放在句首的倒装形式



358	第三节 倒装结构在其他句型中的用法
358	一、复合宾语的倒装
358	二、从句中的倒装
359	三、感叹句中的倒装
360	Exercise 15
367	第十六章 一致关系
367	第一节 单数名词形式作主语的主谓一致
368	一、集合名词作主语的主谓一致
368	二、单复数同形的名词作主语的主谓一致
369	第二节 复数名词形式作主语的主谓一致
369	一、以“s”结尾的书刊名、国名、组织名的主谓一致
369	二、专有名词作主语的主谓一致
369	三、以-ics 结尾的名词的主谓一致
370	第三节 of 构成的短语作主语的主谓一致
370	一、“all ( most ,half ,plenty ,enough , some , the rest ,the remain- der 等 ) + of ”短语作主语的主谓一致
371	二、“a lot ( mass ,heap 等 ) + of + 名词 ”短语作主语的主谓一 致
371	三、“none of ... ,neither of ... ,either of ... ”构成的短语作 主语的主谓一致
372	四、“分数或百分数 + of ... ”构成的短语作主语的主谓一致
372	五、“form( kind ,part ,piece ,portion ,section ,sort ,type 等 ) + of. . . ”短语作主语的主谓一致
372	六、“one of + 复数名词或代词 + 定语从句 ”结构中的主谓一致
373	七、“a ( the ) number ( a variety ) of + 可数名词 ”作主语时的 主谓一致
373	八、“an amount ( amounts ) of 或 a quantity ( quantities ) of + 不 可数名词 ”作主语的主谓一致
374	九、“a group of + 复数名词 ”作主语的主谓一致
374	十、a ( the ) majority ( of ) , a ( the ) minority ( of ) 短语作主语的 主谓一致



- 375 第四节 并列主语的主谓一致
- 375 一、由 and 并列的结构作主语时的主谓一致
- 376 二、either... or..., not only... but( also)... 等连接的并列成分作主语时的主谓一致
- 376 三、“名词(或代词)+介词词组”作主语的主谓一致
- 377 第五节 主语从句中主句的主谓一致
- 377 一、what-分句作主语的主谓一致
- 378 二、that 等名词性分句作主语的主谓一致
- 378 三、两个由 and 连接的名词性从句作主语的主谓一致
- 378 第六节 其他结构中的主谓一致
- 378 一、名词化的形容词作主语的主谓一致
- 379 二、动名词或不定式短语作主语的主谓一致
- 380 三、由“more than one...”或“many a...”构成的短语作主语的主谓一致
- 380 四、不定代词 each, one, no one, some (any, no, every) + body (one 或 thing) 等作主语时的主谓一致
- 380 五、某些表示数量的名词词组作主语的主谓一致
- 381 六、存在句的主谓一致
- 382 第七节 名词与代词的一致问题
- 382 一、名词与名词在“主系表”结构中的一致
- 382 二、名词与代词的一致
- 384 Exercise 16
- 
- 392 第十七章 反意疑问句
- 
- 392 第一节 陈述句部分的主语与疑问句部分的主语一致的情况
- 392 一、陈述句部分为系动词、助动词、情态动词时的反意疑问句形式
- 393 二、陈述句部分的时态要与反意疑问句部分的时态一致
- 393 三、反意疑问句的回答形式
- 394 第二节 陈述句部分的主语与疑问句部分的主语不一致的情况
- 394 一、陈述句部分是 one 作主语的情况
- 394 二、this, that, everything, something, nothing 等词作陈述句部



	分主语时的情况	
394	三、everyone, someone, anyone, no one 等不定代词作主语的情况	
395	四、动名词、不定式作主语时的情况	
395	五、陈述句部分是 there be... 时的情况	
395	第三节 陈述句部分与反意疑问句中的动词变化情况	
395	一、陈述句部分的主语是 I am... 时的反意疑问句形式	
396	二、谓语部分有 would rather, had better, ought to, used to 等助动词时的反意疑问句形式	
396	三、谓语动词为 wish 时的反意疑问句形式	
396	四、陈述句部分带有情态动词 must 时的反意疑问句形式	
397	五、陈述句部分带有 have 的情况	
398	六、need, dare 在作情态动词和实义动词时的反意疑问句	
398	第四节 其他结构中的反意疑问句	
398	一、主从复合句中的反意疑问句	
399	二、陈述句中有否定词时的反意疑问句形式	
399	三、祈使句也可用反意疑问句	
399	四、感叹句后面的反意疑问句	
400	Exercise 17	
404	第十八章 强调、平行结构	
404	第一节 强调结构	
404	一、被强调的部分指人	
405	二、被强调的部分指物	
405	三、被强调的部分为状语	
405	四、“not... until”结构中的强调形式	
406	第二节 平行结构	
408	Exercise 18	
414	附录 I 综合练习	
442	附录 II 练习参考答案	
457	附录 III 不规则动词的变化形式	



# 第一章 动词

动词是表示动作或状态的词,是构成句子的核心部分。动词具有时态、语态、语气和非谓语形式等变化。动词和名词、代词一样,也有人称和数的变化,谓语动词的人称和数一般都应与主语的人称和数一致。

## 第一节 动词的种类及其作用

动词就其句法作用来说,可分为系动词、实义动词、助动词和情态动词。



## 一、系动词

系动词与表语一起构成谓语,说明主语的状态、性质、特征、身份或结果等。系动词后可接形容词、名词、副词、分词、介词短语、不定式以及句子等作表语,通常称作系表结构。

常见的系动词有:

be 是	appear 看来	become 变为,成为
fall 变成	feel 感觉到	get 变得,成为
go 变得	grow 渐渐变成	keep 保持
look 看来	prove 证明是	remain 仍然是
seem 好像	sound 听起来	smell 闻起来
stay 保持	turn 变成	taste 尝起来

例 They are my teachers. 他们是我的老师。

The weather still remained cold in April.

虽然已进入四月,天气仍然很冷。

She fell ill and had to enter the hospital.

她生病了,必须住医院治疗。

The district remained unchanged. 那个地区仍然没有什么变化。

I was at a loss for an answer. 我不知如何回答。

## 二、实义动词

### ►► 1. 及物动词和不及物动词。

就用法来说实义动词可分为及物动词和不及物动词。及物动词后面要求接宾语,否则意思不完整;不及物动词自身意思完整,不需接宾语。及物动词有被动结构,不及物动词没有被动结构。

例 A. You should plan carefully in advance.

你应该事前谨慎地拟订计划。

B. They are planning a trip to Korea. 他们正计划到韩国旅游。

C. My father will buy me a computer. 父亲将给我买一台计算机。

(双宾语——直接宾语 a computer 和间接宾语 me)

D. I found the film very interesting. 我发现这部电影很有趣。





(复合宾语——由宾语 the film 和宾语补足语 interesting 构成。

宾语和宾语补足语之间有逻辑上的主谓关系)

E. We elected him our representative. 我们选他为我们代表。

上面的句子代表了英语中除系表结构以外的另外四种句型,即:

- A. 主 + 谓( + 状)
- B. 主 + 谓 + 宾
- C. 主 + 谓 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语
- D. / E. 主 + 谓 + 宾 + 宾补

## ►► 2. 状态动词和动作动词。

就实义动词的词汇意义来说,可分为状态动词和动作动词。

1) 状态动词是表示相对静止状态的动词,它们通常没有进行时态。

**例** 这房子属于我叔叔。

[ ✓ ] The house belongs to my uncle.

[ × ] The house is belonging to my uncle.

我现在理解他为什么要放弃这个计划了。

[ ✓ ] I now understand why he gave up the plan.

[ × ] I am now understanding why he gave up the plan.

英语中状态动词大体可分为四类:

- (1) 动词 be(是)和 have(有)。
- (2) 拥有或关系的动词,如:belong, consist, contain, cost, depend, deserve, differ, exist, hold, include, involve, matter, owe, own, possess, resemble, stand 等。
- (3) 表示心理或情感状态的动词。如:believe, care, consider, disagree, dislike, expect, find, forget, hate, hope, know, like, live, mind, remember, suppose, think, understand 等。
- (4) 表示感官的动词。如:appear, feel, hear, look, seem, notice, observe, remain, see, smell, sound, taste 等。

**例** He is a professor. 他是位教授。

We have friends all over the world. 我们的朋友遍天下。

I believe we have met already. 我想我们见过面。

The hall holds two thousand people. 这个大礼堂能容纳 2000 人。



The food tastes delicious. 这饭菜真好吃。

注：有些动词有多种词义，一种词义是状态动词，另一种词义则是表示动作的动词，使用时应加以注意。例如：

I have a lot of books.

我有很多书。（have 为状态动词）

They are having English classes.

他们正在上英语课。（have 为动作动词，意为“上课”）

I think him to be a clever boy.

我认为他是一个聪明的孩子。（think 为状态动词）

I am thinking about how to arrange the meeting.

我在考虑如何安排这个会议。（think 为动作动词，意为“考虑”）

2) 表示动作的动词即为表示运动状态的动词。大体分为三类：

(1) 表示持续动作的动词。如：drink, eat, read, write, run, play, fly 等。

(2) 表示状态改变或位置移动的动词。如：get, become, grow, turn, change, reach, arrive 等。

(3) 表示非持续性动作的动词或终止性动作的动词。这些动作没有持续性，即一发生就结束。如：begin, come, arrive, end, die, hit, jump, join, knock, lose, open 等。

例 It's getting warmer and warmer. 天气越来越暖和了。

The party ended at midnight. 舞会于午夜结束。

He came back yesterday. 他是昨天回来的。

3) 非持续性动词的误用。

非持续性动作的动词表示动作一发生就结束，不能和表示一段时间的状态连用。

例 他已经回来三天了。

[ × ] He has come back for three days.

[ ✓ ] He came back three days ago.

那位著名的科学家已经去世 5 年了。



[ × ] The famous scientist has died for five years.

[ ✓ ] The famous scientist has been dead for five years.

[ ✓ ] The famous scientist died five years ago.

### 三、助动词

助动词本身没有独立的词义,不能单独作谓语,应和谓语动词连用,表示时态、语态、语气或构成陈述句、否定句和疑问句(请参阅本书第四章的讲解)。

例 She is doing her homework. 她在做作业。[ 构成时态 ]

The car was made in Japan. 那辆汽车是日本造的。[ 构成语态 ]

I have been living here for years.

我已在这里住了多年。[ 构成完成时态 ]

Did you go to the cinema yesterday?

你昨天去看电影了吗? [ 构成疑问句 ]

I don't like the film. 我不喜欢这部电影。[ 构成否定句 ]

I do feel that way. 我的确有那种感觉。[ 加强语气 ]

We shall have a meeting. 我们明天要开个会。[ 构成将来时态 ]

### 四、情态动词

情态动词具有一定的词义,没有人称和数的变化,不能单独作谓语,必须和实义动词连用才能构成谓语。(请参阅本书第四章的讲解)

例 You must try to solve the problem. 你们必须设法解决那个问题。

He can speak several foreign languages. 他能说好几国外语。

Tom needn't have told the lie. 汤姆没必要撒谎。

We ought to help them to finish the task.

我们应该帮助他们完成那项工作。

## 第二节 普通动词的变化形式

英语动词有五种基本形式,即动词原形、第三人称单数形式、过去式、过去分词和现在分词。这五种形式一起构成动词的各种时态、语



态和语气。

## 一、一般现在时的第三人称单数变化形式

当主语是第三人称单数,时态为一般现在时的时候,谓语动词应用第三人称单数形式。

例 She studies hard. 她学习刻苦。

He works every day. 他每天上班。

具体构成形式如下。

►►1. 通常在动词词尾加-s。

work—works      begin—begins

leave—leaves      play—plays

►►2. 词尾以 s, ch, sh, x 或 o 结尾的词加-es。

teach—teaches      wash—washes      go—goes

guess—guesses      fix—fixes

►►3. 以“辅音字母+y”结尾的词,变y为i再加-es。

try—tries      study—studies      carry—carries

注:这种变化和名词复数词尾-s的加法是一样的。

## 二、现在分词的词尾变化形式

►►1. 一般情况在词尾加-ing。

go—going      do—doing      play—playing

study—studying      carry—carrying      meet—meeting

►►2. 以不发音的字母e结尾的词,去e加-ing。

live—living      leave—leaving      move—moving

write—writing      take—taking      make—making

但以-ee结尾的动词,直接加-ing。例如:

agree—agreeing      see—seeing

►►3. 以重读闭音节结尾的动词,末尾又只有一个辅音字母的,将末尾辅音字母双写,再加-ing。

plan—planning      begin—beginning      beg—begging

sit—sitting      get—getting      cut—cutting



另外要注意下面几个词的现在分词形式：

die—dying      lie—lying      tie—tying

picnic—picnicking    panic—panicking

### 三、过去式和过去分词词尾的变化形式

►►1. 一般情况下在动词词尾加-ed。

want—wanted—wanted      work—worked—worked

hasten—hastened—hastened    stay—stayed—stayed

►►2. 在以字母 e 结尾的动词词尾加-d。

live—lived—lived

precede—preceded—preceded

arrive—arrived—arrived

face—faced—faced

►►3. 以“辅音字母 + y”结尾的动词, 再将-y 变-i 加-ed。

try—tried—tried

study—studied—studied

carry—carried—carried

marry—married—married

►►4. 以重读闭音节结尾, 末尾又只有一个辅音字母的, 将末尾的辅音字母双写后, 再加-ed。

plan—planned—planned

permit—permitted—permitted

beg—began—began

►►5. 有些动词的过去式、过去分词的变化不按上述规则, 而有特殊的形式。

1) 第一类不规则动词的原形、过去式、过去分词三个主要形式同形。例如：

burst—burst—burst	cost—cost—cost
cast—cast—cast	cut—cut—cut
hit—hit—hit	hurt—hurt—hurt
put—put—put	set—set—set
shut—shut—shut	spread—spread—spread

2) 第二类不规则动词的过去式与过去分词同形。例如：

bend—bent—bent	bleed—bled—bled
breed—bred—bred	catch—caught—caught
feed—fed—fed	buy—bought—bought



bring—brought—brought	fight—fought—fought
find—found—found	send—sent—sent
meet—met—met	leave—left—left
sell—sold—sold	sleep—slept—slept
teach—taught—taught	think—thought—thought

3) 第三类不规则动词的原形、过去式和过去分词均不相同。

例如：

begin—began—begun	blow—blew—blown
break—broke—broken	give—gave—given
lie—lay—lain	grow—grew—grown
know—knew—known	see—saw—seen
rise—rose—risen	drink—drank—drunk
speak—spoke—spoken	swim—swam—swum

上面所给出的不规则动词只是其中的一部分，常用不规则动词的三种形式列于书后的附录中，供读者查阅。

### 第三节 短语动词

动词可以和介词、副词或其他词等构成固定词组，这些词组在意义上相当于一个实义动词。

⑧ Professionals can participate in the sports meeting.

职业选手也可以参加这届运动会。

The car broke down halfway. 汽车在半路抛锚了。

We are looking forward to their arrival. 我们在期待着他们的到来。

We were brought up to respect the elderly.

我们从小受教育要尊敬老人。

The police are looking into the matter. 警察正在调查那件事。

#### 一、动词 + 介词

某些动词可以与不同的介词(如 at, for, from, of, to, with 等)搭



配构成固定搭配。这类动词相当于一个及物动词,其后必须有宾语。

① Many people are applying for the job. 许多人在申请这个工作。

I came across the book in a bookstore.

我在一家书店偶然发现了这本书。

She dreamed of becoming a singer. 她梦想成为一名歌唱家。

常用的这类动词短语有许多,下面只列一小部分:

account for 说明	allow for 考虑到
apply for 申请	attend to 照料
believe in 相信	break with 断绝关系,绝交
break into 闯入	come across 偶然遇到
consist in 在于	consist of 由.....组成
complain of/ about 抱怨	count on 指望,依靠
depend on 依靠,依赖	determine on 决心.....,决定.....
look after 照料	look into 调查
object to 反对	operate on 为.....做手术
long for 渴望	lead to 导致
live on 靠.....生活	participate in 参加
insist on 坚持	persist in 坚持
interfere with 干涉	rely on 依靠
resort to 求助于	turn to 求助于

## 二、动词 + 副词

某些动词可以与不同的副词(如 away, down, out, off, over, aside 等)搭配构成固定词组。这类短语动词有些相当于一个及物动词,有些则相当于不及物动词。

① The war broke out in 1945. 那场战争爆发于 1945 年。

Put out your cigarettes. 把你的香烟灭掉。

The match has been called off because of the rain.

由于下雨,那场比赛被取消了。

Turn off TV before you go out. 你出去之前把电视关掉。

常见的这类动词短语如下:



back down 撤回,放弃	back up 支持,援助
break up 结束……,终止	blow up 炸毁
call off 取消	carry out 执行
cut down 缩减	cut off 切断
come off 成功	come to 苏醒
find out 查明	hand out 分发
make out 理解……,填写	make up 和好,化妆,捏造
cut away 砍下,切掉	take over 接管
put aside 储存,搁置一边	put away 收拾起来
take out 除去,去掉	turn out 证明是,结果是
turn up 露面,出现	turn off 关掉

注：当这类充当及物动词的短语后接宾语时，如果宾语是人称代词（包括 it）或反身代词，其结构是“动词 + 代词 + 副词”，如果宾语是名词或不定代词，既可放在副词之前，也可以放在副词之后。例如：

她已经长大了，我完全认不出是她。

[ ✓ ] She has grown out and I can 't make her out any more.

[ × ] She has grown out and I can 't make out her any more.

她编造了这个故事。

[ ✓ ] She made up the story.

[ × ] She made the story up.

### 三、动词 + 名词 + 介词

某些动词可以与不同的名词和介词搭配构成固定用法。这类短语动词相当于及物动词，需跟宾语。

例 You should pay attention to your spellings. 你应该注意你的拼写。

They should not make fun of the disabled. 他们不该取笑残疾人。

We must make use of the opportunity to learn English.

我们必须利用这次机会学习英语。

常用的这类短语有：





catch sight of 看见	get rid of 摆脱
make fun of 取笑	keep an eye on 留意
make use of 利用	take advantage of 利用
pay attention to 注意	take care of 照顾
take part in 参加	give rise to 引起
make friends with 与.....交友	take notice of 注意到
find fault with 挑.....毛病	make mention to 提到
take account of 考虑	take hold of 抓住

注：“动词 + 名词 + 介词”这类短语动词大多数可以构成被动语态，而且有两种形式：把短语动词中的名词用作被动语句中的主语，或把短语动词后的介词宾语用作被动语句中的主语。例如：

应该充分利用这次机会。  
 { The opportunity should be made full use of.  
 Full use should be made of the opportunity.

#### 四、动词 + 副词 + 介词

某些动词可以与不同的副词和介词搭配构成固定词组。这类短语动词相当于及物动词，需跟宾语。

例 We must do away with the old laws. 我们必须废除这些旧的法律。

I can 't put up with these insults any more.

我无法再忍受这样的侮辱了。

Keep out of the railroad track. 请勿靠近铁轨。

He walked so fast that she couldn 't keep up with him.

他走得很快，使得她无法跟上。

常用的这类短语有：

catch up with 赶上	go in for 从事
come down with 患(病)	look down upon 轻视
date back to 追溯到	live up to 不辜负，实现



look forward to 期望	listen in to 听广播
look up to 尊敬	come up to 达到 符合
stand up for 保卫 支持	do away with 废除
put up with 忍受	come up with 得出
cut down on 减少	make up for 弥补
go through with 完成	hold on to 抓住
run out of 用完 耗尽	get along with 与.....相处
face up to 面对	look out for 警惕

#### 第四节 常用动词的区别

1. **adapt** *v.* ( to ) 使适应 改编 改写。

**adopt** *vt.* 采纳 收养。

例 He quickly adapted himself to the life in the university.

他很快适应了大学生活。

I adopted their method of making the machine.

我采纳了他们制造机器的方法。

2. **assess** *vt.* 指对人的能力、价值等作出判断 评价。

**estimate** *vt.* 指凭借自己的经验和知识对某物的性质、数量作大概的推断。

例 They assessed the house at 600 000 dollars.

他们把这所房子估价为 60 万美元。

They estimated the number of visitors at 10 million.

他们估计参观的人数为 1000 万。

3. **accept** *vt.* ( 表示主动 ) 接受 指某人经过自己考虑后自愿接受他人给予的东西。

**receive** *vt.* ( 表示被动 ) 收到 只能表示被动的收到 并不涉及是否接受。

例 He received the invitation but he didn't accept it.

他收到了邀请 然而没有接受。



4. **affect** *vt.* 影响,使……受到影响,着重指使事物受到不良的影响或指个人感情受到影响。

**influence** *vt.* 着重强调对人的思想或行为进行潜移默化的影响。

**effect** *n. & vt.* 作名词用表示“影响”,作动词用表示“产生,招致”。

例 The change has seriously affected his income.

这一变化严重影响了他的收入。

The war effected changes all over the world.

战争给全世界带来了变化。

Influenced by a teacher, he took up the study of medicine.

受老师的影响,他学医了。

5. **arise** *vi.* 发生,出现(问题、困难等)。

**arouse** *vt.* 引起,唤起,激起。

**rise** *vi.* 上升,提高。

**raise** *vt.* 提高,举起。

例 New Problems arise daily. 每天都有新问题。

The noise aroused him from sleep. 噪声吵醒了他。

The sun rises every day. 太阳每天升起。

He is too weak to raise the heavy box.

他太虚弱了,以至于提不动那个重箱子。

6. **assure** *vt.* 表示向某人保证某事一定会发生[ 内含含有让某人放心的意思 ]。

**ensure** *vt.* 保证(获得、实现等)。

**insure** *vt.* 保险,投保。

**guarantee** *vt.* 指对事物、商品等无质量、性能欺人的行为作出保证。

例 I can assure you of its quality. 我可以向你保证其质量。

His hard work will ensure success to him.

他的努力工作将给他带来成功。

He insured his house against fire. 他给房子保了火险。

The art dealer guaranteed the picture genuine.

那个工艺品商保证这幅画是真品。

7. **award** *vt.* 给予,授予,指因成绩或贡献由政府或社团组织授予奖励。后面可连接两个宾语。



**reward** *vt.* ( for ) 酬劳 , 奖赏 指对人给予的奖励 , 有时指为某事而付给的酬金。只能以人或人的行为作宾语 , 如果要说明以何为报酬 , 需加 with 短语。

例 The university awarded him an honorary degree.

这所大学授予他名誉学位。

How can I reward you for your help ?

对于你的帮助 , 我将怎样报答呢 ?

The winners will be rewarded with medals and cash.

获胜者将得到奖章和奖金。

8. **cost** *vt.* 花费 , 主语多为物。

**spend** *vt.* 花费 , 主语多为人。

**take** *vt.* 花费 , 主语可为人或物。

用法 **spend** ... ( in ) doing sth.

**spend** ... on sth.

It takes sb. some time to do sth.

sb. takes some time to do sth.

例 He spent five days in finishing the task.

他花了五天时间完成这项工作。

This watch costs him a 10. 这块表花了他 10 英镑。

He took five days to finish the task.

= It took him five days to finish the task.

他花了 5 天时间完成这项工作。

9. **crash** *vt. & vi.* ( 使 ) 破碎 ( 使 ) 突然发生严重意外。

**crush** *vt.* 压碎。

**clash** *vt. & vi.* 冲突 撞击。

例 The car crashed on the bend killing its driver and 2 passengers.

车子在拐弯处出了意外 , 司机与两名乘客遇难。

Don't crush the box , there are flowers inside !

不要压坏盒子 , 里面有花。

The two armies clashed near the border.

两军在边境附近发生了冲突。

10. **doubt** *v.* 怀疑 ( 怀疑某事不可能、不真实 )。其肯定句常跟 **whether**



或 if 引导的宾语从句,否定句及疑问句常跟 that 引导的宾语从句。

**suspect** *v.* 怀疑,猜测(认为某事可能或真实)。其后常跟 that 引导的宾语从句。

例 I doubt whether it is true. 我怀疑这是否是真实的。

I don't doubt that John will come on time.

我确信约翰会准时到达。

We suspected that he was lost, even before we were told.

甚至在我们被告知以前,我们就怀疑他失踪了。

11. **appear** *v.* 指外表上给人以某种印象,但实质并非如此。

**look** *v.* 指从面部表情上产生的某种感觉。

**seem** *v.* 指从某种迹象作出的主观推断。

例 She seems like a reasonable person. 她似乎是个通情达理的人。

It seems to me that you are not telling the truth.

在我看来,你不是在说实话。

He appears rich. 他似乎很富有。

She doesn't look very well today. 她今天看起来气色不太好。

12. **bring** *vt.* 拿来,带来。

**take** *vt.* 拿去,拿走,带去。

**fetch** *vt.* 去拿来。

例 Bring me the book when you come here.

你来这儿时给我把书带来。

Let's take Mary to the cinema. 让我们带玛丽去电影院吧。

Please fetch me a clean handkerchief from my bedroom.

请到卧室把干净的手帕给我拿来。

13. **recall** *vt.* 回忆起,想起,强调经思考而记起。

**remember** *vt.* 记住,记得,强调记得以前曾经历过或知道的事情。

**remind** *vt.* (指人)提醒,使想起。

结构 recall sth. 回想起.....,回忆起.....

recall doing sth.

recall + that-clause

remember doing sth. 记得已发生的事



remember to do sth. 记得要去做的事(还未发生的事)

remind sb. of sth. 提醒某人某事

remind sb. to do sth. 提醒某人做某事

remind sb. + that clause 提醒某人.....

例 I can't recall his face/seeing him/that he came.

我不记得他的样子/见过他/他来过。

Certainly I posted the letter — I remember posting.

我肯定把信寄出去了——我记得寄过了。

This hotel reminds me of the one we stayed in last year.

这旅馆使我想起了去年我们住过的那家。

14. **speak** *vi.* 说话。

**tell** *vt.* 告诉,向.....讲述(某事),可接双宾语。

**talk** *vi.* 谈论,可与介词搭配构成固定词组。

结构 **speak about( of ) sb. ( sth. )** 谈及某人或某事

**speak to sb.** 对某人说话

但在说某种语言时 **speak** 后可直接跟宾语。

例 He speaks quickly. 他说话快。

I shall speak to him about( of ) the meeting tomorrow.

我要跟他谈谈明天的会议。

Can you tell him the matter? 你可以把此事告诉他吗?

They are talking with each other. 他们正谈话呢。

The teacher will talk to you about your composition.

老师会就你的作文和你谈谈。

15. **change** *vt.* 改变,尤指全部改变与原来不一样,或在本质上有明显的差异。

**alter** *vt.* 指部分改动,在原来的基础上作些变更,指局部或某方面的变化,基本上仍保持原状。

**vary** *v.* 着重指“有变化,有不同”,且逐渐地发生变异。

例 In autumn the leaves change from green to brown.

秋天树叶由绿变黄。

This shirt must be altered: it's too large.

这件衬衣必须改一下,它太大了。



Her health varies from good to rather weak.

她的身体渐渐地由好变差。

16. **conserve** *vt.* 保存,保全 强调珍惜,节约利用。

**preserve** *vt.* 保护,保藏 强调使东西保持完好。

**reserve** *vt.* 保留,预定。

- 例 He writes on both sides of the sheet to conserve paper.

他在纸的两面写字以节省用纸。

I pray that fate may preserve you from all harm.

我祈祷命运保佑你免于一切伤害。

These seats are reserved for old and sick people.

这些座位是为老人和病人保留的。

17. **discover** *vt.* 发现 指发现一个原先就已存在而不为人知的事物。

**invent** *vt.* 发明 指创造一原先不存在的事物,另外, **invent** 还有“虚构,杜撰”之意。

- 例 Columbus discovered America in 1492.

哥伦布于公元 1492 年发现了美洲。

Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876.

亚历山大·格雷姆·贝尔在 1876 年发明了电话。

The whole story was invented. 整个故事是虚构的。

18. **ignore** *vt.* 忽视,不理睬 强调故意不理。

**neglect** *vt.* 忽略 强调无意中忽视。

- 例 Ignore the child if he misbehaves, and he 'll soon stop.

如果小孩淘气就别理他,他会停下来的。

The government has neglected socializing industry.

政府忽略了使工业社会化。

19. **lend** *vt.* 借出 强调往外借与别人。

**borrow** *vt.* 借来 强调从别处借来自己用。

- 例 I agree to lend you a sum of money. 我同意借钱给你。

Tomorrow I 'll borrow a book from the library.

明天我将去图书馆借书。

20. **hear** *vt.* 听见 强调结果 表示听见了什么。

**listen** *vi.* 听 强调动作 表示听什么,后接介词 to。



例 I heard him say so. 我听见他这样说了。

Listen to the music ; don 't make a noise. 听音乐 ,不要吵。

21. **lie** *v.* 躺 ,其过去式、过去分词及现在分词分别为 :lay ,lain ,lying.

**lay** *v.* 放置 ,其过去式、过去分词及现在分词分别为 :laid ,laid ,laying.

**lie** *v.* 撒谎 ,其过去式、过去分词及现在分词分别为 :lied ,lied ,lying.

例 He lay till evening without moving. 他一动不动地躺到晚上。

It 's wonderful lying on the beach all day.

整天躺在海滩上真是太好了。

Apparently , he was lying. 显而易见 ,他在撒谎。

Lay the package on the table. 把包裹放在桌上。

22. **hang** *vt.* 悬挂 ,其过去式、过去分词分别为 :hung ,hung.

**hang** *vt.* 吊死 ,绞死 ,其过去式、过去分词分别为 :hanged ,hanged.

例 He hung the coat outside. 他把大衣挂在外边。

He hanged himself in sorrow after his wife died.

妻子死后 ,他因悲伤而自缢。

23. **replace** *vt.* 取代 ,代替 ( by ,with ).

**substitute** *vt. & vi.* 以.....代替 ( for ).

例 We have replaced slave labor with /by machines.

We have substitute machines for slave labor.

我们已用机器取代了奴隶劳动。

He substituted for the worker who was ill. 他代替了生病的工人。

24. **wear** *vt.* 穿着 ,戴着 ,表示状态。

**dress** *vt.* 给.....穿衣 *vi.* 穿衣 ,穿着。用主动语态表示动作 ,用被动形式表示状态。在表示动作时 ,后面接的不是衣服而是人。

**put on** *vt.* 穿上 ,戴上 ,常表示动作。

例 He was wearing my coat. 他正穿着我的衣服。

The mother dressed her child in beautiful clothes.

妈妈给孩子穿上漂亮的衣服。

The lady was dressed in white at the party.





那位女士在晚会上穿了一套白衣服。

She put her hat and coat on. 她戴上帽子,穿上大衣。

25. **cheat** *vt.* 着重为自己的利益或占别人的便宜时而“行使不诚实的手段”,因此常用于骗取钱财等场合。

**deceive** *vt.* 着重“隐瞒真相”或“造成错误印象”。

结构 **cheat** sb. into doing 骗人使之……

**cheat** sb. out of sth. 诈取某人某物

**deceive** sb. into doing 欺骗某人使其……

- 例 The salesman cheated him into buying the fake goods.

那个销售人员骗他买了那件假货。

The mirage deceived him into thinking there was a town over there.

海市蜃楼的景象使他误认为在那边有一个城镇。

26. **sit** *vi.* 坐,后面需加相应的介词再加上名词作宾语。

**seat** *vt.* (使)坐,后接反身代词或用被动形式。

- 例 If you can't find a seat you'll have to sit on the floor.

如果你找不到座位,就得坐在地板上。

He sat at his desk working. 他坐在桌旁工作。

He seated himself near the window. 他坐在窗口附近。

Please be seated( sit down ). 请坐下。

27. **choose** *vt.* 指一般性的选择或挑选,强调作出选择的意愿与行为。

**select** *vt.* 指经过斟酌和淘汰,审慎地从许多同类事物或人中选择最好者。

**pick** *vt.* 表示仔细地选择,但其程度低于 select,强调从个人角度在众多对象中进行挑选。

- 例 I chose several reference books from the bookstore.

我从书店选了几本参考书。

He selected a tie to match his suit.

他选择了一条与西装相配的领带。

She picked what she wanted from the supermarket.

她从超市里挑选她所需要的东西。

28. **cite** *vt.* 指出示有力的证据、引用权威的论断、论点、论据。

**quote** *vt.* 指逐字逐句地引用资料,与原文完全一致,不得有所



改动。

例 The minister cited the latest crime figures as proof of the need for more police. 部长列举了最新的犯罪数字作为增加警力的证据。

He quoted a passage from the book. 他从那本书上选了一段。

29. **display** *vt.* 展示, 陈列。

**expose... (to)** *vt.* 使暴露于(日光、风、雨等); 泄露秘密等; 也指陈列商品。

例 The students' works were displayed on the walls.

学生的作品被展示在墙上。

Don't expose your skin to direct sunlight.

不要让你的皮肤直接暴晒于阳光下。

30. **live on** 以.....为食, 靠.....生活, on 后接名词, 如食物、工资或钱等。

**live by** 靠.....生活, by 后接名词或动名词, 指以某种生存方式生活, 如捕鱼、打猎、出苦力等。

例 The people in the area chiefly live on rice.

那个地方的人主要以大米为主食。

They lived by running a restaurant. 他们靠经营一家饭馆为生。

31. **include** *vt.* 指包括作为整体的一部分或要素。

**contain** *vt.* 指某物容纳在比其更大的东西之内。

**involve** *vt.* 指包含有根据整体的性质决定的成分或结果。

例 The tour includes a visit to Paris. 这次旅行包括游览巴黎。

The basket contains a variety of fruits.

这篮子装有各种各样的水果。

The plan involved the cooperation of both young and old.

实施这个计划必须包含年轻人和老年人之间的合作。

32. **fit** *vt.* 通常表示尺寸、大小、形状等合适。

**suit** *vt.* 表示打扮或颜色是否合适。

**match** *vt.* 表示质料、颜色等是否匹配。

例 It is difficult to fit a suit on him because he is so irregularly built.

他因体型与常人大不相同, 所以很难有合身的衣服。



The new dress suited her very well. 那件新衣服非常适合于她。

We must find carpets that 'll match the curtains.

我们必须寻找和这些窗帘搭配的地毯。

33. **prohibit** *vt.* 指通过法律、法令、公告、严正警告等方式禁止某些事情。

**forbid** *vt.* 普通用词,用于较小事物,或指个人、官方、上级、长辈作出的禁止命令、规定,或客观条件不允许。

**ban** *vt.* 指合法地或由于社会压力而禁止,含谴责或不赞成的态度。

结构 **prohibit** sb. from doing 禁止某人做.....

**forbid** sb. doing / to do 不准某人做.....

**ban** sb. from doing 明令禁止某人做.....

例 My mother forbade me to watch TV. 我母亲不让我看电视。

= My mother forbade my watching TV.

He was banned from attending the meeting. 他被禁止参加那个会议。

His poor eyesight prohibited him from becoming a pilot.

他因视力弱而不能当飞行员。

34. **expect** *vt.* 所表示的期望,其对象一般是自己认为应得的东西。

**hope** *v.* 强调个人的愿望,所期望的对象总是好的,无论愿望有无根据。

结构 这两个词在用法上有一点不同, **expect** 后面可接不定式作宾补,但 **hope** 却不能这样用。

[ ✓ ] **hope** / **expect** to do 希望做.....

[ ✓ ] **hope** / **expect** that-clause 希望.....

[ ✓ ] **expect** sb. to do 希望某人做.....

[ × ] **hope** sb. to do

例 They expected to have the door opened for them.

他们期待有人替他们开门。

Nobody expected the experiment to succeed.

没有人认为这个实验会成功。

I hope you don't mind my saying this, but I don't like the tie you are wearing. 希望你不会介意我说的话,但我不喜欢你戴的那条领带。



35. **dissolve** *v.* 指固体被溶解于水中,也可表示“解散,取消”。

**melt** *v.* 指固体受热后的熔化。

④ **例** Salt and sugar dissolve in water. 盐和糖可溶于水。

The snow melted in the afternoon. 雪在下午融化了。

36. **decline** *v.* 指婉言谢绝,如拒绝建议、计划等。

**reject** *v.* 表示断然拒绝,带有抵制的意思,即不接受、不答应。

**refuse** *v.* 表示不肯或拒绝去做别人要求做的事情。

④ **例** I offered him a lift to his house, but he declined with thanks.

我要让他搭便车送他回家,但他谢绝了。

I proposed to her, but she rejected me. 我向她求婚,但被她拒绝了。

The children refused to listen to me. 这些小孩不肯听我的话。



## Exercise 1

### I. 选择题

1. Those gifts of rare books that were given to us were deeply \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. appreciated    B. approved    C. appealed    D. applied
2. Our hopes \_\_\_\_\_ and fell in the same instant.  
A. arose    B. rose    C. raised    D. aroused
3. A season ticket \_\_\_\_\_ the holder to make as many journeys as he wishes within the stated period of time.  
A. entitles    B. presents    C. grants    D. promises
4. The Car Club couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ to meet the demands of all its members.  
A. assume    B. guarantee    C. ensure    D. confirm
5. Extensive reporting on television has helped to \_\_\_\_\_ interest in a wide variety of sports and activities.  
A. assemble    B. yield    C. generate    D. gather
6. \_\_\_\_\_ energy under the earth must be released in one form or another , for example , an earthquake.  
A. Accumulated    B. Gathered    C. Assembled    D. Collected
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ to his customers and halved the price.  
A. leaked    B. drew    C. quoted    D. yielded
8. The author of the report is well \_\_\_\_\_ with the problems in the hospital because he has been working there for many years.  
A. informed    B. acquainted    C. enlightened    D. acknowledged
9. The old couple decided to \_\_\_\_\_ a boy and a girl though they had three children of their own.  
A. adapt    B. bring    C. receive    D. adopt
10. Although he had looked through all the reference material on the subject , he still found it hard to understand this point and her explanation only \_\_\_\_\_ to his confusion.  
A. extended    B. amounted    C. added    D. turned
11. He \_\_\_\_\_ on me his own ideas about the novel.  
A. composed    B. proposed    C. imposed    D. opposed
12. She \_\_\_\_\_ the soup with too much salt.



- A. harmed      B. ruined      C. destroyed      D. spoiled
13. She \_\_\_\_\_ a clear memory of her school days.  
A. obtains      B. retains      C. sustains      D. attains
14. Certain animal species \_\_\_\_\_ completely from the earth leaving only their rock-like remains for the study by human beings.  
A. faded      B. died      C. vanished      D. yielded
15. His decision \_\_\_\_\_ some improvement in the work.  
A. affected      B. awarded      C. effected      D. affirmed
16. Before going to bed she \_\_\_\_\_ herself that the door was locked.  
A. assured      B. ensured      C. insured      D. made sure
17. You cannot expect that the plan will be \_\_\_\_\_ into reality overnight.  
A. transmitted      B. transferred      C. transported      D. transformed
18. I have \_\_\_\_\_ two tickets for tonight's show.  
A. preserved      B. conserved      C. deserved      D. reserved
19. It is unwise of you to \_\_\_\_\_ untrained workers for well-trained workers.  
A. replace      B. take place      C. substitute      D. take over
20. The area round the North Pole shows signs of abundant oil deposits and this area is still being \_\_\_\_\_ , though it would be difficult to transport oil from the North Pole.  
A. surveyed      B. investigated      C. inspected      D. looked into
21. She cut her hair short and tried to \_\_\_\_\_ herself as a man.  
A. decorate      B. disguise      C. fabricate      D. fake
22. The patient with chicken pox was \_\_\_\_\_ so that his disease would not be passed on to others.  
A. isolated      B. separated      C. singled out      D. divided
23. The joys of travel , having long \_\_\_\_\_ the disabled , are opening up to virtually anyone who has the means.  
A. omitted      B. missed      C. neglected      D. discarded
24. The nurse \_\_\_\_\_ his pain by giving him a cooling drink.  
A. relieved      B. conclude      C. released      D. reduced
25. You can't see through a telescope unless it is \_\_\_\_\_ correctly to your sight.  
A. adopted      B. adjusted      C. added      D. adapted
26. If each manager makes his usual speech , the meeting will be \_\_\_\_\_ for forty-five minutes.



· 第一章 动词 ·

- A. expanded    B. delayed    C. prolonged    D. exceeded
27. The execution of a scheme or plan \_\_\_\_\_ the expenditure of much time and money.  
A. contains    B. includes    C. involves    D. combines
28. Under the present system , state enterprises must \_\_\_\_\_ all profits to the government.  
A. turn down    B. turn up    C. turn out    D. turn in
29. Oil companies in the U. S. are already beginning to feel the pressure. Refinery workers and petroleum equipment-manufacturing employees are being \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. laid out    B. laid off    C. laid down    D. laid aside
30. When Jack was eighteen he \_\_\_\_\_ going around with a strange set of people and staying out very late.  
A. took to    B. took for    C. took up    D. took on
31. Ever since the rise of industrialism , education has been \_\_\_\_\_ towards producing workers.  
A. harnessed    B. hatched    C. motivated    D. geared
32. The fuel of the continental missile is supposed to be \_\_\_\_\_ by this device.  
A. lighted    B. inspired    C. fired    D. ignited
33. I am sure I can \_\_\_\_\_ him into letting us stay in the hotel for the night.  
A. speak    B. say    C. talk    D. tell
34. Having finished their morning work , the clerks stood up behind their desks , \_\_\_\_\_ themselves.  
A. stretching    B. extending    C. prolonging    D. expanding
35. He is a boy who is willing to do everything possible to \_\_\_\_\_ his aims.  
A. gain    B. get    C. catch    D. achieve
36. Very few scientists \_\_\_\_\_ completely new answers to the world's problem.  
A. come up with    B. come round    C. come out    D. come up to
37. It is a common theme in many science fiction stories that the world may one day be \_\_\_\_\_ by insects.  
A. broken in    B. run over    C. taken over    D. filled in
38. The space age \_\_\_\_\_ in October 1957 when the first man-made satellite was launched by the Soviet Union.  
A. initiated    B. originated    C. embarked    D. commenced



39. We'll \_\_\_\_\_ you for any damage done to your house while we are in it.  
A. compensate B. remedy C. supplement D. retrieve
40. If you \_\_\_\_\_ the bottle and cigarettes , you'll be much healthier.  
A. take off B. get off C. keep off D. set off
41. Mr. Wilson said that he did not want to \_\_\_\_\_ very further responsibilities.  
A. take on B. put up C. get on D. look up
42. Important people don't often have much free time as their work \_\_\_\_\_ all their time.  
A. takes away B. takes over C. takes up D. takes in
43. This popular sports car is now being \_\_\_\_\_ at the rate of a thousand a week.  
A. turned down B. turned up C. turned out D. turned on
44. The French pianist who had been praised very highly \_\_\_\_\_ to be a great disappointment.  
A. turned up B. turned out C. turned in D. turned down
45. When a fire \_\_\_\_\_ at the National Exhibition in London , at least ten priceless paintings were completely destroyed.  
A. broke off B. broke down C. broke out D. broke up
46. A lorry \_\_\_\_\_ Jane's cat and sped away.  
A. ran over B. ran into C. ran through D. ran down
47. Because Edgar was convinced of the accuracy of this fact , he \_\_\_\_\_ his opinion.  
A. struck at B. stuck to C. strove for D. stood for
48. It is not easy to learn English well , but if you \_\_\_\_\_ , you will succeed in the end.  
A. hang up B. hang about C. hang on D. hang onto
49. Generous public funding of basic science would \_\_\_\_\_ considerable benefits for the country's health , wealth and security.  
A. lead to B. result from C. lie in D. settle down
50. Eating too much fat can \_\_\_\_\_ heart disease and cause high blood pressure.  
A. attribute to B. contribute to C. attend to D. devote to
51. This article \_\_\_\_\_ more attention to the problem of cultural interference in foreign language teaching and learning.  
A. cares for B. allows for C. applies for D. calls for





· 第一章 动词 ·

52. There was a big hole in the road which \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic.  
A. set back      B. stood back      C. held up      D. kept down

II. 改错题

1. It is said that Einstein felt very badly about the application of his theories to the  
A B C D  
creation of weapons of war.
2. Written English has become more importantly in business English, with the  
A B C D  
invention of the fax and the computer.
3. Because he was seriously ill, he laid in bed waiting for the doctor to come.  
A B C D
4. I read in the paper that the killer and his accomplices are to be hung at noon  
A B C  
by order of the governor.  
D
5. One of the workers has hung the curtains that had been laying on the floor.  
A B C D
6. A completely new situation will arouse when the new examination system  
A B  
comes into existence.  
C D
7. The experts believed that the new plan adopted by the government would affect  
A B C  
profound changes in the national economy.  
D
8. Despite strong protests, the emperor still refused to lighten the burden of taxes  
A B C  
that he had lied upon his people.  
D
9. Is it advisable to display our body to the sunlight?  
A B C D
10. I have been standing here for an hour but no one has past me.  
A B C D
11. It stroked me that they had really learned a great deal there.  
A B C D
12. It will spend you \$ 50 to fly to Paris.  
A B C D
13. Of all the people in the village, only three survived through the earthquake.  
A B C D



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

14. The art of print was discovered by the Chinese people in the Han dynasty.  
A B C D
15. As the days passed , their relationship grown more and more formal.  
A B C D
16. The book that you see laying on the table belongs to the theater.  
A B C D
17. The policeman allows people to stay but he does not leave them enter easily.  
A B C D
18. The president devoted his energies to update the curricula , making the education  
A B C  
offered at Washington College as meaningful and usual as possible.  
D



## 第二章 时态

英语中的时态是一种用来表示不同时间中动作发生的动词形式。时间由现在、过去、将来和过去将来四种表示，动作则由一般、完成、进行和完成进行四类组成。两者结合则构成了英语的 16 种时态。本章将对其中最常见的几种时态作简要介绍，并对易混淆的几种时态加以区别和评述。

### 第一节 一般现在时

一般现在时以动词原形表示，当主语为第三人称单数时，词尾需加-s 或-es。



## 一、一般现在时的基本用法

- 1. 一般现在时常表示现在、经常性、习惯性发生的动作或存在的状态。

例 He is a worker now. 他现在是一名工人。

They have English classes every day. 他们每天都上英语课。

You always make fun of me. 你总是爱拿我开玩笑。

What do you think of the lecture? 你觉得那个讲座怎么样?

- 2. 在表示客观真理、科学事实及不受时间限制的客观存在时, 也用一般现在时。

例 Where there is a will, there is a way. 有志者 事竟成。

The earth moves round the sun. 地球绕太阳旋转。

Time and tide wait for no man. 岁月不待人。

- 3. 报刊、杂志、书籍等不强调过去时间, 单纯表示客观事实时, 亦用一般现在时。

例 What does this article say? 这篇文章讲的是什么?

The article describes social problems.

这篇文章描述的是社会问题。

- 4. 在有 when, while, after, before, until 等引导的时间状语从句和有 if 引导的条件状语从句中, 也可用一般现在时表示经常发生或存在的状态。

例 When I come across a new word, I look it up in the dictionary.

每当遇到生词, 我都要查词典。

Before I go to bed I read newspapers. 我睡觉之前要看报纸。

## 二、一般现在时用来表示将来时的几种特殊用法

- 1. 在时间或条件状语从句中, 分句不能用将来时, 要用一般现在时代替将来时。

例 Unless you get rid of smoking, you will not stay healthy.

你只有戒烟, 方可保持健康。

When you come next time, I'll show you around our campus.



你下次来时,我将带你到我们的校园去看看。

If I see him, I shall tell him the news.

如果我见到他,我就把这个消息告诉他。

- ▶▶ 2. 在 see( to it )/make sure/make + that 分句中,常用一般现在时代替将来时。

例 See that you finish the assignment on time. 务必按时完成任务。

I'll see ( to it ) that I return the reference book on time.

我保证按时归还这本参考书。

Make sure ( that ) you pick me up at five.

你一定要在五点开车来接我。

- ▶▶ 3. 在让步状语从句中,分句常用一般现在时表示将来时。

例 Whether he drives or takes the train, he'll be here on time.

不管他开汽车还是乘火车,他会准时到的。

No matter what happens, don't be discouraged.

不论发生什么事,都不要气馁。

- ▶▶ 4. 一般现在时可用于表示转移的动词(如 come, go, arrive, leave, start 等),表示预定的行为,即将来的但已事先安排好的动作,这种安排很固定,不容易改变。

例 The plane takes off at three o'clock p. m. 飞机在下午三点起飞。

The film show begins in a minute. 电影一会儿就开始放映。

- ▶▶ 5. 当抽象地谈论未来时,由于时间概念很弱,也可用一般现在时。

例 That is where a change is needed.

那就是需要变更的地方。[ 用于表语从句 ]

Tomorrow at this time we'll know who is elected.

明天这时候我们就会知道谁当选了。[ 用于宾语从句 ]

I shall give you anything you want.

我会给你任何你想要的东西。[ 定语从句 ]

### 三、一般现在时表示过去时间

一般现在时有时可用来表示过去时间,用于强调现在的事实或结果。常用的这类动词有: tell, say, hear, learn, forget 等。



例 They tell me that your younger sister has graduated from the Teachers college. 他们告诉我你妹妹已从师大毕业了。

I hear he has come back from Japan. 我听说他已从日本回来了。

## 第二节 一般过去时

### 一、一般过去时的基本用法

- 1. 一般过去时用来表示过去某个时间完成的动作或一度存在的状态,也可表示过去的习惯动作。该时态常跟一个表示过去时间的状语连用(如 then, yesterday, just now, at that time 等)。

例 I attended a meeting yesterday. 我昨天参加了一个会议。

I graduated from college in 1988. 我于 1988 年大学毕业。

- 2. 也可表示过去连续发生或反复发生的动作。

例 I went to school by bus. 过去我常乘公共汽车上学。

They came and saw me. 他们过去经常来看我。

He was often late for school. 他以前上学经常迟到。

### 二、一般过去时的特殊用法

- 1. 在“would rather, would sooner, would just as soon, might as well, would prefer(宁愿,但愿)”等后面的从句中,如表示现在或将来的动作或情况,用一般过去时。

例 I d rather you left now. 我宁愿你现在就走。

I d rather they came tomorrow. 我倒希望他们明天来。

- 2. 在“It is (high/about) time( that )...”句型中,表示“该……的时候了”,谓语动词常用一般过去时。

例 It is high time ( that ) you went home. 你们该回家了。

It is time that you went to bed. 你该睡觉了。

- 3. 主句中的谓语动词用现在完成时, since 引导的从句用一般过去时。



例 I have lived in the house since I came to the city.

自从我到这个城市以后,我一直住在这个房子里。

Great changes have taken place since I visited the city.

这座城市自我上次游览过后发生了巨大变化。

►►4. 一般过去时也可在表示时间或条件的状语从句中代替过去将来时。

例 We would not leave until she came back. 她回来我们才会离开。

She told me that she would not go with us if it rained the next day.

她告诉我说,如果第二天下雨,她就同我们一块儿去了。

### 第三节 一般将来时

一般将来时表示将来发生的动作或存在的状态。

#### 一、will/shall 表示将来时的用法

►►“will/shall + 动词原形”用来表示一般将来时,含有“预见、意图”之义。shall 用于第一人称,will 用于第二、三人称。但现代英语中,will 也常用于第一人称。

例 I hope that he will be able to go to the party.

我希望他能参加这个晚会。

She will be back in a minute. 她过会儿就回来了。

I shall succeed this time. 我这一次会成功。

I shall be twenty years old next month. 下个月我就 20 岁了。

You ll understand on second thought.

再仔细想想,你就会明白的。

注意:有时 will 用于条件从句并不表示将来,而是表示“意愿、拒绝、推论”等。例如:

If you won't come, we ll ask someone else.

如果你不愿来,我们就请别人了。

If they will do this, they will probably add years to their lives.

如果他们能做到这点,就可能为自己增加好几年的寿命。



## 二、“be going to + 动词原形”表示将来时

►► 1. “be going to + 动词原形”表示说话人的意图和打算。

例 Are you going to go downtown for shopping? 你打算去城里购物吗?

We are going to visit Paris this summer.

今年夏天我们打算去巴黎玩。

►► 2. “be going to + 动词原形”也可用来预报某事即将发生或有迹象表明即将发生的动作, 与自己的意志无关。

例 I think I am going to fall asleep. 我好像要睡着了。

She is going to be seventeen years old in July.

到七月她就 17 岁了。

Listen to the loud crash of thunder. It s going to rain.

听那震耳的雷声, 天就要下雨了。

►► 3. “be going to + 动词原形”也可表示“就要……正要……”。

例 We were just going to play basketball, when it began to rain.

我们刚要打篮球时, 天开始下雨了。

I am going to go shopping. 我正要去买东西。

## 三、“be about to do sth.”表示将来时

►► “be about to do sth.”可用来表示将来时, 表示“正要(将要)……”。

例 The sun is about to sink to the west. 太阳正要西下。

“When is the concert supposed to start?” It is about to start now. ”

“音乐会什么时候开始?” “马上开始。”

注意: be about to do 和 be going to do 都可表示将来时间, 但是 be about to do 比 be going to do 表示更近的将来, 所以 tomorrow 等表示将来的副词(短语)可以和 be going to do 连用, 但通常不能与 be about to do 连用。例如:

They are going to hold a party tomorrow.

他们明天准备举行一场晚会。





#### 四、“be to + 动词原形”表示将来时间

►► “be to + 动词原形”表示“预定、义务、可能、命令或吩咐”等。

例 The French President is to visit China.

法国总统将到中国访问。[ 预定做 ]

He is to return from Germany tomorrow.

他明天将从德国回来。[ 预定做 ]

You are to be back by 9 o'clock. 你要在九点以前回家。[ 义务 ]

You are not to stay too late outside.

你不要在外面呆得太晚。[ 命令 ]

Suppose he comes here, what am I to tell him?

假若他来这儿, 我该怎么对他说呢? [ 可能 ]

#### 五、“be + V-ing( 现在进行时 )”表示将来时间

►► 现在进行时表示将来, 带有“意图”、“安排”或“打算”的含义。所用动词都是表示具体动作的动词, 如 come, go, leave, arrive, start 等。

例 We are leaving for New York after the performance.

演出结束后, 我们将动身去纽约。

She is giving a piano recital next week.

下星期她将要举行钢琴独奏会。

#### 六、用一般现在时表示将来时间

►► 一般现在时与某些含“出发、到达”之意的动词连用, 表示将来的但已事先安排好的动作, 这种安排不会轻易改变。常用的动词有 arrive, be, begin, go, leave, stay 等。

例 There is a lecture on English writing tonight.

今晚有个英语写作讲座。

Here I give you some more examples. 这里我再给大家举个例子。

The train leaves at nine a. m. 火车在上午九点开出。



## 第四节 过去将来时

### 一、过去将来时的基本用法

- 过去将来时表示在过去将来的某一时间发生的动作或存在的状态,一般用在间接引语中,主句谓语动词为过去时。一般形式为“would/should + 动词原形”。

例 I never imagined that he would become a doctor.

我从未想到他会成为医生。

I promised my boss that I would finish this work by the end of the month. 我向老板保证到月底我就会完成那项工作。

I asked her if I should see her the following Sunday.

我问她下个星期日是否能和她见面。

### 二、过去将来时的特殊用法

- 过去将来时可用“was/were about to + 动词原形”结构,表示过去正要进行的动作。此外,过去将来时也可用“was/were to + 动词原形”;“was/were + 现在分词”及一般过去时等表示。

例 I was told that the press conference was to be held the next day.

我被告知记者招待会将在第二天举行。

I was about to leave when it began to rain.

我正要离开,这时天开始下雨了。

He looked as if he was about to burst into tears.

他看起来马上就要哭了。

I was seeing off my sister at the station the next day.

第二天我要到车站送我的妹妹。

He told me that he was leaving soon. 他告诉我他快要走了。

## 第五节 现在完成时

现在完成时的形式为“have( has )+ 过去分词”。主要有两种用法：“已完成”用法和“未完成”用法。已完成的动作对现在造成的影响；未完成的动作持续到现在的情况。

### 一、表示过去发生的动作对现在造成的影响( 已完成用法 )

- 1. 现在完成时的“已完成”用法表示说话的时候这个动作已经结束，只是对现在造成的影响( 结果 )。

可以不用时间状语，也可以和一些表示不定时间的状语连用，如 already, yet, lately, often, rarely, ever, now, just, today 等。

例 I have decided against seeing him again. 我已决定不再见他。

He has just come back. 他刚回来。

She has traveled over many countries. 她到过许多国家。

- 2. 现在完成时的“已完成”用法通常与瞬间动作的动词连用，不能和表示一段时间的状态连用。

例 他已回来三周了。

[ × ] He has come back for three weeks.

[ ✓ ] He came back three weeks ago.

或 He has been back for three weeks.

那位作家已经去世两年了。

[ × ] The writer has died for two years.

[ ✓ ] The writer has been dead for two years.

或 The writer died two years ago.

### 二、表示动作的持续和重复( 未完成用法 )

现在完成时的持续性用法( 即未完成用法 )指动作或状态从过去某时开始继续到现在，可能继续下去，也可能刚刚结束，通常要与某些表示一段时间的状态连用。



►► 1. 现在完成时的“未完成”用法常和 for, since 连用。

例 I have worked here since I graduated.

自毕业以来,我一直在这儿工作。

He has been here for more than a month.

他来这里已有一个多月了。

I have lived in the city for about twenty years.

我在这个城市住了差不多有 20 年了。

►► 2. 在“until ( till, up to ) now, up to the present, so far, in ( for, over, during ) the past ( last, recent ) few ( several, two... ) months ( days... )”等结构中也常用现在完成时表示动作的持续。

例 Up to now, I have finished two-thirds of the work.

到现在为止,我已完成了这个工作的三分之二。

We have seen each other three times in the past three weeks.

最近三周我们已见过三次面了。

So far she has written five books. 到现在为止她已经写了五本书。

He perhaps has made some friends by now.

到现在,他可能已经交了几个朋友。

►► 3. 持续性用法不适用于表示短暂动作或位置转移的动词,如: open, break, go, come, arrive, die, leave 等。

例 He \_\_\_\_\_ Beijing for five years.

A. has come to

B. has been in

C. has arrived

D. has gone to

答案为 B。译文:他来北京已 5 年了。

### 三、现在完成时的特殊用法

►► 1. 现在完成时用在时间或条件状语从句中,表示将来某个动作发生之前业已完成的动作。

例 I'll wait until he has written his letter. 我会等到他把信写完。

I'll go and see the exhibition as soon as I have got the recorder fixed.

我把录音机一修好,就去看展览。

I'll give my opinion when I have read the book through.



我把书看完了再提意见。

- 2. 在“ This is( It is )the first( second , ... )time that... ”句型中 ,常用现在完成时。但是 ,在“ It was the second( ... )time that... ”句型中 ,用过去完成时。

例 This is the second time that I have seen the film.

这是我第二次看这部电影了。

That was the third time that I had visited the place.

那是我第三次参观那地方了。

- 3. 在“ It is( has been )... since ”结构中 ,主句常用现在完成时 ,也可用一般时。但是在 since 后面要用过去时。

例 It is( has been ) about 7 years since I came here.

我来这儿近 7 年了。

It is( has been ) a long time since I last came to the town.

自从我上次到城里来 ,已有很长时间了。

- 4. have been ( to )和 have gone ( to )的用法比较。

“ have been ( to ) ”的意思是“ 到过某地 ”,说话时此人很可能不在那里 ,已经回来 ,侧重指经历 ,而“ have gone ( to ) ”的意思是“ 已经去了那里 ”,说话时此人已不在这里 ,很可能已到达那里 ,也可能在路上。

例 He has been to Beijing. 他去过北京。

( 说的人现在不在北京 ,已经回来 ,强调“ 经历 ”。 )

He has gone to Beijing. 他到北京去了。

( 表示他现在不在这 ,他可能到了北京 ,也可能在去北京的路上。 )

- 5. 在 where 或 when 引起的疑问句中 ,一般不用现在完成时 ,因为询问者关心的是过去发生的事或事情发生的具体时间。

例 When did you buy the jacket ? 你什么时候买的衣服 ?

I bought it last Sunday. 我是上个星期天买的。

When did you finish your homework ? 你什么时候做完你的家庭作业 ?



## 第六节 过去完成时

### 一、过去完成时的基本用法

过去完成时主要表示过去某时或某动作之前业已完成的动作或情况,即表示“过去的过去”。通常可分为“已完成”用法和“未完成”用法。

- 1. “已完成”用法表示一个动作或状态在过去某一时间或动作之前刚刚完成或结束,也可能是早已完成或结束。

例 I had just got home when it rained. 我刚回到家,天就下雨了。

The plane had already taken off when we arrived at the airport.

我们到达飞机场时,飞机已经起飞了。

Anna had come to Europe before the outbreak of the war.

战争爆发前,安娜来到欧洲。

- 2. “未完成”用法表示一个动作或状态在过去某时之前已开始,一直延续到这一过去时间,且仍有继续下去的可能性。只适用于状态动词和表示持续性动作的动词,常与表示一段时间的状语连用。

例 By the end of last year, he had taught for thirty years.

到去年年底,他已经教书30年了。

He perhaps had made some friends by then.

到那时,他可能已经交了几个朋友。

- 3. 过去完成时表示一个动作先于另一个过去动作的用法更多见于宾语从句中。

例 The child realized that he had lost his way.

这孩子意识到自己迷路了。

I knew that I had made a mistake at that time.

当时我知道我已经出差错了。



## 二、过去完成时的特殊用法

- 1. “过去完成时 + 动词不定式”可表示“过去未曾实现的愿望、打算或意图”,通常只适用于下列动词,如:hope, intend, mean, plan, suppose, want 等。

例 I had meant to go on Monday but have stayed on.

我原打算周一走的,但没走成。

He had wanted to have a party at his house, and he would have given a good one. 他本来想在他家举行一个晚会,而且会举行得很好。

[实际上并未举行]

- 2. 过去完成时常用于“no sooner... than”和“hardly( scarcely ) ... when( before )”等句型的主句中,从句中常用一般过去时。“no sooner, hardly( scarcely )”置于主句句首时,要求用倒装语序。

例 No sooner had he reached home than it began to rain.

他刚到家,天就下起了雨。

He had hardly got on the train when the train started out.

他刚上火车,火车就开动了。

- 3. 在“would rather, would sooner, would just as soon, might as well, would prefer( 宁愿,但愿 )”等后面的从句中,如表示过去的动作或情况,用过去完成时。

例 I d rather you had been there yesterday. 要是你昨天在这儿就好了。

They d sooner I had left last week. 他们想让我上周动身。

## 第七节 现在进行时

### 一、现在进行时的基本用法

- 1. 现在进行时表示此刻或现阶段正在进行的动作。其形式为:  
“be ( is, am, are ) + 现在分词”。

例 We are having a meeting now. 我们现在正在开会。



The students are preparing for the entrance exam at present.

学生们眼下正在准备入学考试。

- 2. 现在进行时表示将来,带有“意图”、“安排”或“打算”的含义。  
所用动词都是动作动词,如 come, go, leave, arrive, start 等。

例 He is coming tomorrow. 他明天就要来了。

When I grow up, I am joining the army. 我长大了要参军。

- 3. 现在进行时也可用来表示过去。现在进行时在时间上跨着过去、现在和将来,所以它不但可以表示现在和将来,也可表示刚刚结束的动作。

例 I must remember what you are telling me.

我一定记住你刚才告诉我的话。

What are you talking about? 你这是在说什么呀?

## 二、现在进行时的特殊用法

---

- 1. 现在进行时同频度副词 always, continually, constantly, forever 等状语连用时,表示经常发生、具有持续性的事情,或表示不满或抱怨情绪等。

例 He is one of those who are always thinking of others.

他属于那种总替别人着想的人。

He is constantly leaving things about. 他老是乱扔东西。

- 2. be 表示状态时,不能用于进行时。但是当它和某些表示动作意义的形容词连用时,表示此时此刻的情况,含有“异乎寻常”之意。常用的这类形容词有 active, afraid, brave, careful, clever, enthusiastic, friendly, generous, helpful, nasty, serious, stupid, sure, thoughtful 等。

例 Don't talk rot. I am being serious. 别胡说,我是认真的。

You are not being polite. 你这可不大客气呀。

## 三、不能用于进行时的动词

---

- 1. 表示感觉的 smell, taste, sound, feel 等通常不用于进行时。

例 The plan sounds a good one. 那个计划听起来不错。





I haven't tasted such a beautiful pie for ages.

我已经好久没有吃过这么好吃的饼了。

- 2. 有些表示感情、拥有关系、状态或思想的动词通常也不用于进行时。

agree( 同意 ), believe( 认为 ), belong( 属于 ), contain( 包括 ), hate( 恨 ), hear( 听到 ), like( 喜欢 ), love( 喜爱 ), mind( 介意 ), notice( 注意 ), possess( 拥有 ), see( 看到 ), seem( 似乎 ), understand( 理解 ), want( 想要 ) 等。

例 The club consists of more than 300 members.

这个俱乐部由三百多位会员组成。

The properties belong to my aunt now. 现在这财产属于我伯母。

They possess three cars. 他们拥有 3 部汽车。

注：然而，当上面有些词的意义转变时，可用于进行时态。例如：

She is seeing her manager this afternoon.

她今天下午将与经理见面。

( see 在此不表示“看见”，而是“参观，拜访” )

## 第八节 过去进行时

### 一、过去进行时的基本用法

过去进行时常与表示过去的时间状语连用，主要表示过去某一时间正在进行的动作。

例 I was watching TV when he called me up.

他打电话给我时我正在看电视。

They were building a dam last winter.

去年冬天他们在修建一座水坝。

They were expecting you yesterday. 他们昨天一直在等你。



## 二、过去进行时的特殊用法

- 1. 过去进行时也可用来表示过去预计将要发生的动作。

例 I didn't know he was coming until yesterday.

直到昨天我才知道他要来。

He asked me whether I was leaving for Japan.

他问我是否要动身去日本。

- 2. 过去进行时也可与 always, forever, constantly 等状语连用,表示某种感情色彩。

例 They were always complaining of the poor living conditions of that time. 他们总是抱怨那时的生活条件太差。

He was constantly helping others when he lived here.

他住在这里时常常帮助别人。

## 第九节 将来进行时

### 将来进行时的用法

- 1. 将来进行时表示的是在将来某一时间正在进行的动作,常表示安排好之事,给人一种期待之感。由“shall/will + be + v-ing”构成。

例 I will be watching the sunrise at the top of the mountain this time tomorrow. 明天这个时候,我就在山顶看日出了。

I will be having a meeting tonight. 我今天晚上要开个会。

- 2. 表示预料不久要发生或势必要发生的动作。

例 I suppose they will be leaving soon. 我想他们不久就会离开的。

Maybe fewer people will be smoking in fifty years.

也许 50 年后,抽烟的人会少些。

- 3. 将来进行时也可表示委婉、客气。

例 Will you be needing anything else? 你还需要些什么?



## 第十节 将来完成时

### 将来完成时的用法

- 1. 将来完成时表示将来某时刻之前或某一行为发生之前所完成的动作,常和 by 或 by the time 等结构连用。其形式为: will/shall + have + 过去分词”。

例 I ll have arrived there by noon. 在中午前我就会到那里了。

I shall have finished reading the book by the end of this week.

到这个周末我就把这书看完了。

When we get there they ll probably have left.

我们到那里时他们可能已经走了。

- 2. 表示到将来某时刻为止动作的持续时,也可用将来完成时。

例 I ll have lived in the city for twenty years by next month.

到下个月,我就在这个城市住满 20 年了。

I ll have done the work for three months by Friday.

到星期五,我做这工作就有三个月了。

## 第十一节 现在完成进行时

### 现在完成进行时的用法

现在完成进行时可用来表示一个动作从过去某时开始,一直延续到说话时还在继续或刚刚结束。常与表示一段时间的状语连用,如: for two years, these few weeks, since early morning 等。一般只适用于动作动词。其形式为: have/has been + 现在分词”构成。

例 I have been teaching English for twenty years.

我教英语已有 20 年了。

She has been playing the music of Beethoven and Mozart for two



hours. 她弹奏贝多芬、莫扎特乐曲已两个小时了。

I ve just been waving goodbye to her. 我刚刚同她道别。

## 第十二节 几组时态的对比

### 一、现在完成时与一般过去时的区别

- 1. 一般过去时只表示过去的动作而不强调对现在的影响 ; 而现在完成时则强调过去动作对现在的影响。

例 I have read the book. 我已经看过这本书。

I read the book last year. 我去年看过这本书。

Did you get up early? 你起床早吗?

Have they got up? 他们已经起床了吗?

- 2. 现在完成时的动作开始于过去 , 现在仍在继续 ; 而一般过去时的动作早已结束。

例 He has worked in this company for three years.

他在这家公司已工作三年了。[ 现在仍在此公司工作 ]

He worked in this company for three years.

他在这家公司工作过三年。[ 现在已不在该公司 ]

- 3. 现在完成时表示动作发生在过去一个不确定的时间 , 常与 already , yet , never , just , before 等连用 ; 一般过去时表示过去某个确定的时间发生的动作 , 常与表示过去的具体时间连用。

例 I have already finished the book. 我已经看完了那本书。

We once lived in the countryside. 我们曾在农村住过。

I haven't seen her once. 我一次也没见过她。

I saw him last week. 我上星期见过他。

### 二、过去完成时与一般过去时的区别

- 1. 一般过去时表示相对于现在而言的过去时间 , 而过去完成时表示的则是相对于过去某一时刻而言的过去时间 , 即过去的过去。



- 例 What I was uncertain about \_\_\_\_\_ whether they could overcome the difficulties.

A. is

B. will be

C. had been

D. was

答案为 D。译文 我不敢肯定他们是否能够克服这些困难。

All representatives present before 5 yesterday afternoon.

A. are

B. have been

C. were

D. had been

答案为 D。译文：昨天下午 5 点之前所有的代表都已到了。

- 2. 两个或两个以上接连发生的动作作用 and 或 but 连接时,按时间发生的顺序,只需用一般过去时,不用过去完成时。

- 例 He lost his key but found it. 他丢失了钥匙,但又找到了。

She brushed her teeth and went to bed. 她刷完牙, 然后上床睡觉。

### 三、现在完成时与现在完成进行时的区别

- 1. 在与表示一段时间的状态语连用时,现在完成时和现在完成进行时均可表示一个动作从过去某时开始延续到说话时,并可能继续下去。在一定的上下文中,这两个时态可以互换使用。

- 例 I have talked to the student for 2 hours.

我已同该生谈了两个小时。

I have been talking to the student for 2 hours.

我一直同该生交谈,已经谈了两个小时了。

- 2. 在不用时间状语时,现在完成时表示动作已结束,而现在完成进行时则表示动作仍在进行。

- 例** He has been writing an essay. 他一直在写一篇论文。

「表示动作仍在继续」

He has written an essay. 他已写好了一篇论文。

[ 表明动作已经完成 ]

- 3. 现在完成进行时一般不适用于状态动词,要表示状态动词的“未完成”用法,只能用现在完成时。



注：状态动词表示感受、情感、看法、认识、愿望及所有关系等状态含义，如 be, belong, exist, feel, hate, love, want 等。

They \_\_\_\_\_ each other since childhood.

- A. have been knowing                      B. knew  
C. have known                              D. had know

答案为 C。译文：他们从小就认识了。

- 4. 用“ How long... ? ”结构询问目前正在进行的动作的时间长度时，多用现在完成进行时。

例 How long have you been living in the city ?

你在这个城市住了多久了？

How long have you been listening to music ? 你听音乐已多久啦？

- 5. 现代英语中，像 sit, lie, wait, stay, stand 等动词更趋向于用现在完成进行时。

例 The old man has been sitting there all the morning.

那老人一上午都坐在那儿。

The students have been waiting for their teacher.

学生们一直在等他们的老师。

## 第十三节 时态的呼应

### 一、名词性从句的时态呼应

- 1. 如果主句的动词是一般现在时，则从句的动词可以是表达过去、现在或将来活动的时态。

例 I know that he arrived this morning. 我知道他今天早上到的。

I know that he will arrive. 我知道他就要来了。

I know he has arrived. 我知道他已经到了。

- 2. 如果主句的动词是一般过去时、过去进行时或过去完成时，则从句的动词通常是过去进行时、过去完成时或过去将来时。



- 例 The secretary told me that the manager was holding a meeting.  
 秘书告诉我 经理正在开会。[ 从句动作与主句动作同时发生 ]  
 She knew that he had forgotten his promise.  
 她知道他已忘了自己的承诺。[ 从句动作发生在主句动作之前 ]  
 当从句动作发生在主句之后时 , 从句中要用过去将来时。例如 :  
 He was saying just yesterday that he would come.  
 他昨天刚说过他要回来的。[ 从句动作发生在主句之后 ]
- ▶▶ 3. 当主句动词和从句动词是指将来不同时间时 , 从句可用将来时。
- 例 He will write to you that he will visit your company again next year.  
 他将写信告诉你 , 他明年还会来参观你们公司的。
- ▶▶ 4. 如果名词性从句的动词表达相对永久的事实或活动 , 通常用一般现在时。
- 例 The professor said ( that ) Persian belongs to the Indo-European group of languages. 教授说波斯语属于印欧语系。

## 二、状语从句和定语从句的时态呼应

- ▶▶ 1. 如果状语从句和定语从句的谓语动词的动作和主句谓语动词的动作同时发生 , 应用相同的时态。
- 例 The secretary always leaves as soon as her boss goes home.  
 这位秘书通常就是老板前脚走 , 她后脚就离开。  
 Maxwell laughed as she spoke. 麦克斯威尔边讲边笑。  
 Air moves from the place where the pressure is high to the place where the pressure is low. 空气从压力高的地方流向压力低的地方。
- ▶▶ 2. 如果状语从句和定语从句中谓语动词的动作和主句中谓语动词的动作发生在不同时间 , 可使用相应的不同时态。
- 例 By the time we got there , the performance had begun.  
 我们到达那里时 , 演出已经开始了。  
 This is the same bag that I lost last week. 这正是我上周丢的包。



## Exercise 2

### I. 选择题

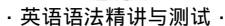
1. Don't take his remarks too seriously. He will stop saying in that way if no notice \_\_\_\_\_ of.  
A. is taken      B. takes      C. will be taken      D. has taken
2. They will have to decide what to do about the energy crisis before the oil \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. is run out      B. will be run out  
C. runs out      D. will run out
3. I'm rather tired ; I \_\_\_\_\_ since this morning.  
A. was doing housework      B. have done housework  
C. did housework      D. have been doing housework
4. I regret that I divorced him. I \_\_\_\_\_ stupid.  
A. am just      B. had just been  
C. was just being      D. would just be
5. I'll go to play football as soon as I \_\_\_\_\_ the composition.  
A. finished      B. will finish      C. have finished      D. are finishing
6. Floods and bad farming over the years ruin a land that \_\_\_\_\_ and made it miserably poor.  
A. was once rich      B. had once been rich  
C. have once been rich      D. was once being rich
7. You love your only son and indulge him so much that you \_\_\_\_\_ him harm.  
A. are doing      B. have done  
C. will have done      D. are going to do
8. You will hardly believe it , but this is the third time tonight someone \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
A. telephoned      B. has telephoned  
C. telephones      D. should telephone
9. The car \_\_\_\_\_ at the present speed until it reaches the foot of the mountain at about ten o'clock tonight.  
A. would go      B. went      C. will be going      D. goes
10. The company \_\_\_\_\_ a rise in salary for ages , but nothing has happened yet.





· 第二章 时态 ·

- A. is promised                      B. is promising  
C. has been promising              D. promised
11. It was not until then that I came to know that knowledge \_\_\_\_\_ only from practice.  
A. had come    B. has come    C. came                      D. comes
12. By the time you get to New York ,I \_\_\_\_\_ for London.  
A. would be leaving                  B. am leaving  
C. have already left                  D. shall have left
13. No decision has been made about the matter yet. We \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. still consider                      B. consider still  
C. are still considered                  D. are still considering
14. The film \_\_\_\_\_ how a university student \_\_\_\_\_ a criminal.  
A. will show... becomes              B. shows... will become  
C. will show... will become          D. shows... becomes
15. Will you come and join us when we \_\_\_\_\_ a farewell party ?  
A. will give    B. give              C. gave                  D. have given
16. It has been about 7 years since they \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. got married    B. got marry    C. get married          D. have married
17. The article suggests that when a person \_\_\_\_\_ under unusual stress he should be especially careful to have a well-balanced diet.  
A. is                  B. were              C. be                      D. was
18. As a young man he did not know that he \_\_\_\_\_ become famous later on.  
A. was to              B. should              C. was going to          D. would
19. He left home in 1970 and \_\_\_\_\_ heard of since.  
A. hadn't been    B. wasn't              C. not has been          D. has not been
20. Henry would rather that his girl friend \_\_\_\_\_ in the same department as he does.  
A. works                                  B. had worked  
C. worked                                  D. has been worked
21. We \_\_\_\_\_ the cold winter for the past 2 years.  
A. would have                          B. had  
C. have had                                  D. have been having
22. Your mother \_\_\_\_\_ for you everywhere. Where have you been ?  
A. has looked                              B. has been looking



- 52



· 第二章 时态 ·

- A. have since kept                      B. since kept  
C. am since keeping                      D. had since kept
35. You \_\_\_\_\_ your books about.  
A. constantly leave                      B. are constantly leaving  
C. constantly left                      D. have constantly left
36. I ate the bread yesterday. In any case , it \_\_\_\_\_ stale.  
A. was going    B. was                      C. had been                      D. is about to
37. I would have gone to visit him in the hospital had it been all possible , but I \_\_\_\_\_ fully occupied the whole of last week.  
A. were                      B. had been    C. have been                      D. was
38. Greater efforts to increase agricultural production must be made if food shortage \_\_\_\_\_ avoided.  
A. is to be    B. can be                      C. will be                      D. has been
39. By the time you arrived in London , we \_\_\_\_\_ in Europe for two weeks.  
A. shall stay                      B. have stayed  
C. will have stayed                      D. have been staying
40. Smith will not be able to attend the meeting tonight because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. he must have a class  
B. he will be teaching a class  
C. he teaches a class  
D. he will have been teaching a class
41. He met her in the doorway just as he \_\_\_\_\_ go away.  
A. will                      B. was about to    C. would                      D. was going to
42. She \_\_\_\_\_ clean out the space room last week but was too much occupied at that time.  
A. intended to                      B. was intended to  
C. had intended to                      D. has intended to
43. He hardly \_\_\_\_\_ the theory of relativity.  
A. is understanding                      B. has understood  
C. had understood                      D. understands
44. When I saw her smiling face , I knew she \_\_\_\_\_ good news of her husband.  
A. has                      B. has had                      C. had had                      D. was having
45. We \_\_\_\_\_ on the project by the end of next month.  
A. shall have finished to work    B. shall finish to work



- C. shall have finished working D. shall finish working
46. He did not arrive until the meeting was nearly over for the simple reason that he \_\_\_\_\_ asleep while watching television.  
A. had fallen B. has fallen C. fell D. was falling
47. By the time the course ends , \_\_\_\_\_ a lot about Britain.  
A. we'll learnt B. we are learning  
C. we have learnt D. we'll have learnt
48. " Certainly , \_\_\_\_\_ him about something else in any case so it won't be any bother. "  
A. I'll see B. I see C. I can see D. I'll be seeing
49. Jone could be a very attractive girl but she \_\_\_\_\_ to her clothes.  
A. pays no attention B. paid attention  
C. was paying no attention D. had paid attention
50. He \_\_\_\_\_ book the tickets but he had no time to call at the cinema.  
A. would B. might C. could D. was going to

## II. 改错题

1. This morning the student was sent home from school because he is caught cheating on an examination.  
A B C D
2. When he retires , Professor Jones will be teaching here for over thirty years , but his classes are never dull.  
A B C D
3. If the library is closed over the holidays , it would be very difficult to finish the research project.  
A B C D
4. When the policeman found the body of that young man , he had already died for about two days.  
A B C D
5. Although the students are disliking the material they are studying right now , their instructor has no authority to change the syllabus.  
A B C D
6. A study of the motion of objects is necessary if we are understanding their  
A B C



· 第二章 时态 ·

- behaviors and learn to control them.  
D
7. Since last fall , the young researcher watched the flowers she grows respond to  
A B C D  
the sun.
8. Industrial management is the aspect of business management that was most  
A B C D  
prominent in the United States for the past eight years.
9. The woman admitted to the doctor that her little boy had sat in the back room  
A B  
and ate everything he could find.  
C D
10. When I last saw Janet , she hurried to her next class on the other side of the  
A B C  
campus and did not have time to talk.  
D
11. The changes that took place in air travel during the last sixty years  
A B  
would have seemed completely impossible to even the most brilliant scientists  
C  
at the turn of the 19th century.  
D
12. He also conceived that the solar system and the universe would come into  
A B  
existence by a natural process and would disappear one day.  
C D
13. The conveniences that Americans desire reflecting not so much a leisurely  
A B  
lifestyle as a busy lifestyle in which even minutes of time are too  
C  
valuable to be wasted.  
D
14. From him to be reelected , what is essential is not that his policy works ,  
A B  
but that the public believe that it is.  
C D
15. I'd say whenever you are going after something that is belonging to you ,  
A B  
anyone who is depriving you of the right to have it is criminal.  
C D
16. The problems that were discovered since the completion of the initial research  
A B



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

- caused the committee members to give up the original plan for the  
time being.  
D
17. She applied three times before she had been finally admitted to the university.  
A B C D
18. I wish I had known that Ann had been ill. I would have gone to see her.  
A B C D
19. No sooner had the words been spoken than he had realized that he should  
have remained silent.  
A B C D
20. Have you made up your mind yet as to where you are about to spend your  
summer vacation ?  
A B C D
21. The master had been very angry and had all the slaves brought before him.  
A B C D
22. Wherever he will go he takes the pistol with him , and he believes he can  
get a sense of security.  
A B C D
23. I looked up but was suddenly seeing a black figure climbing out of a window  
in the shop.  
A B C D
24. After making the experiment for three days he suddenly realized that he  
has been using the wrong method.  
A B C D
25. The president with his wife and daughter , was returned from a vacation at  
Sun Valley in order to attend an important meeting this afternoon.  
A B C D
26. Because of Einstein's theory of relativity , scientists never again regarded the  
world as they regarded before.  
A B C D
27. We all knew that we would never have the equipment we have needed for our  
experiments unless we made it ourselves.  
A B C D
28. He gets himself into dangerous situation over which he has no control.  
A B C D



- 57



## 第三章

# 被动语态

语态是表示主、谓语之间关系的一种动词形式,分为主动语态和被动语态两种。主动语态表示主语是动作的执行者,被动语态表示主语是动作的承受者。被动语态由“be + 及物动词的过去分词”构成。

### 第一节 被动语态的种类

#### 一、及物动词用于被动结构的各种时态

英语中只有及物动词才有被动结构。其形式为“助动词 be + 及物动词(或短语)的过去分词”,被动结构可用于各种时态。





例 I am not so easily deceived.

我不会轻易上当受骗的。[ 现在时 ]

The window was broken by a naughty boy.

窗户被一个顽皮的男孩打破了。[ 过去时 ]

You will be allowed to borrow five books at a time.

允许你一次借五本书。[ 一般将来时 ]

He said that the bridge would be built next year.

他说这座桥将明年建成。[ 过去将来时 ]

The injured player was being carried off the field.

受伤的选手正被抬离现场。[ 过去进行时 ]

The question is being discussed at the meeting.

会上正在讨论这个问题。[ 现在进行时 ]

The food has been cooked. 饭已经煮好了。[ 现在完成时 ]

## 二、短语动词的被动结构

有些短语动词相当于及物动词，所以可用于被动结构。

例 Many interesting experiments are carried out in our laboratory.

我们实验室做了许多有趣的实验。

The poor child was laughed at by his classmates because he failed the exam. 那位可怜的孩子因考试不及格而受到同学的嘲笑。

## 三、双宾语动词的被动结构

带双宾语的动词改为被动语态时，通常是将间接宾语提前作主语，直接宾语变成了保留宾语。如果主动结构中的直接宾语变为被动结构中的主语，这时在间接宾语前要加介词 to(可省去)或 for(一般不可省)。

例 The teacher gave him a dictionary. 老师给了他一本词典。

He was given a dictionary.

A dictionary was given to him. 给他了一本词典。

Mother bought me a shirt. 母亲给我买了件衬衣。

I was bought a shirt by mother.

A shirt was bought for me by mother.



#### 四、复合宾语的被动结构

宾语加宾语补语的结构变为被动语态时，只将主动结构中的宾语变为被动结构中的主语，宾补不变。

例 The students were caught cheating at exams.

学生们考试作弊时被抓住了。

He was elected representative. 他被选为代表。

All the houses are painted white. 所有的房子都被漆成了白色。

The teacher was asked to repeat the question again.

请老师再重复一遍这个问题。

#### 五、含有情态动词的被动结构

含有情态动词的被动语态的构成形式为：“情态动词 + be + 过去分词”。

例 This out-of-date teaching method must be done away with.

必须废除这种过时的教学方法。

These books can be found in the library. 这些书可以在图书馆找到。

### 第二节 被动语态的基本用法

通常情况下，我们多用主动语态，但有时由于不知道动作的执行者，或出于礼貌，或为了强调等原因，要用被动语态。

►► 1. 当不知道或没必要指出动作的执行者时。

例 He told us that a big reservoir was being built in his hometown.

他告诉我们他的家乡正在建造一个大型水库。

The project will be finished next year. 这个计划将于明年完成。

The audience is asked to keep silence. 要求观众保持安静。

►► 2. 当强调或侧重动作的承受者时。

例 All the rooms are cleaned regularly. 所有的房间都定期打扫。

His new car was stolen. 他的新车被盗了。

You are requested to hand in your composition tomorrow.



请你们明天交作文。

- ▶▶ 3. 由于出于婉转、礼貌等不愿说出动词的执行者时。

⑧ He was considered to be a computer genius.

他被认为是个计算机天才。

About the matter, much has been said, but little has been done.

对于这件事,是说得多,做得少。

- ▶▶ 4. 有时为了行文通顺。

⑧ A river may be dammed and when that is done, a large pressure of water is built up behind the dam.

河上可以筑坝,筑成后,坝后形成了很大的水压。

The hero appeared, and was warmly applauded by the students.

当那位英雄出现时,学生们给予了热烈的掌声。

- ▶▶ 5. 在正式的布告、通告中。

⑧ Passengers are requested to remain seated until the aircraft comes to a complete stop. 飞机停稳前,请乘客不要离开座位。

Candidates are required to present themselves fifteen minutes before the examination begins. 考生应于考前 15 分钟到达。

- ▶▶ 6. 有些动词习惯上常用被动结构。

⑧ The professor was born in 1931. 那位教授出生于 1931 年。

There are known to be thousands of different languages.

据人们所知,有几千种不同的语言。

He is said to have been a worker. 据说他过去曾当过工人。

= It is said that he was a worker.

It is said that the man is a writer. 据说那个人是个作家。

= The man is said to be a writer.

### 第三节 主动语态表示被动情况

在英语表达中,有时用主动语态表示被动意义。主要有以下几种情况。

- ▶▶ 1. 某些系动词构成的系表结构,可用主动语态表示被动意义。



例 The flower smells sweet. 花闻起来很香。

That soup tastes very delicious. 那汤味道真好。

She sounded a modest woman. 听起来她是个谦逊的女人。

- 2. 某些动词后加副词表示被动意义。常用的这类动词有 wash , write , sell , lock , shut , clean 等 ; 常用的副词有 easily , well , quickly , smoothly 等。

例 This type of television set sells well. 这种电视机卖得很好。

This pen writes smoothly. 这支笔写起来很流畅。

This jacket washes easily. 这件衣服好洗。

- 3. want , deserve , need , require 及 worth 等词后面动名词的主动语态表示被动意义。在这些动词后( worth 除外 ), 既可接动名词 , 也可接不定式 , 接动名词要求用主动语态表示被动意义 , 接不定式要用被动结构。

例 The novel is worth reading. 这本小说值得一读。

The children require looking after. 这些孩子需要照顾。

= The children require to be looked after.

The point deserves mentioning. 这点值得一提。

= The point deserves to be mentioned.

- 4. 当不定式与它修饰的词之间有动宾关系 , 并且与句子的主语在意思上有主谓关系时 , 虽然表示的意思为被动 , 但却用主动形式。

例 We have many problems to solve. 我们有许多问题要解决。

I'll show you right path to take. 我会把正确的路线给你看。

- 5. 当不定式作表语( 或宾补 ) 形容词的状语 , 又与句中的主语( 或宾语 ) 有逻辑上的动宾关系时 , 虽然不定式有被动意义 , 但只能用主动形式。

例 Some books are interesting to read , but boring to learn.

有些书读起来很有趣 , 但学起来很厌烦。

They found the subject hard to understand.

他们发现这个题目很难理解。



## 第四节 被动语态与系表结构的区别

### 一、从过去分词的功能上来区分

被动语态中的过去分词是动词，表示动作；系表结构中的分词相当于形容词，表示状态。如果是形容词，后面不能用 by 短语。

例 She was not badly injured but she couldn't speak.

她伤势不重，但不能说话。[ 系表 ]

She was injured by a wild horse. 一匹野马使她受伤了。[ 被动 ]

### 二、从修饰过去分词的词来区分

如果过去分词被 very, too 所修饰，为系表结构；如果过去分词被 much, so much 修饰，为被动结构。

例 The man was too frightened to stand up. [ 系表 ]

那个人吓得都站不起来了。

I am very surprised at your words. [ 系表 ]

我对你说的话感到非常吃惊。

He was much agitated by the news. [ 被动 ] 他听到消息后很激动。

He was so much shocked that he couldn't utter a word. [ 被动 ]

他是如此震惊，以至于都说不出话来了。

### 三、从谓语动词的特性上来区分

过去分词是表示心理、感情、从事……活动等词或过去分词是反身动词时，通常为系表结构。

例 She is resolute to become a ballet dancer.

她决心成为一名芭蕾舞演员。

The way was lost between the trees. 小路消失在树林中。

### 四、从短语动词是否有介词搭配上区分

过去分词与介词搭配，且后面跟有介词宾语时，常为系表结构。



例 The boy was scared out of his wits. 那男孩吓得不知所措。

The factory is located at the foot of the hill. 那家工厂位于山脚下。

## 第五节 使用被动语态应注意的问题

### 一、被动语态在时态、数等方面与主语一致

被动语态在时态、单复数形式方面也需与主语一致。

例 He has carried out many interesting experiments in our laboratory.

Many interesting experiments have been carried out in our laboratory.

我们实验室已经做了许多有趣的实验。

[ 主动语态为单数形式,但由于原来的宾语为复数形式,变为被动结构中的主语时,谓语动词应为复数形式 ]

Most environmental problems exist because adequate measures for preventing them \_\_\_\_\_ taken in the past.

A. was not

B. were not

C. were not being

D. being not

答案为 B。主句虽为现在时,但从句谓语动词叙述的是过去的事,所以要用过去时。

译文:由于过去没有采取足够的措施解决环境问题,所以大多数环境问题仍然存在。

### 二、不及物动词没有被动语态

不及物动词没有被动语态,但是,如果过去分词是不及物动词,而这个动词已经是形容词化了的分词,则为系表结构。

例 The patient looks as if she \_\_\_\_\_.

A. had recovered

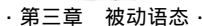
B. had been recovered

C. recovered

D. recovers

答案为 A。recover 作“恢复、痊愈”讲时,为不及物动词。

译文:那位病人好像已经康复了。



D 错。exist 为不及物动词，应改为 exists。

Gone \_\_\_\_\_ the Chinese people were in great lack of food , money , comfort and enough housing.

- A. the days when                      B. are the days when  
C. have the days when                D. the days have when

译文：中国人严重缺乏食物、钱、安逸以及足够住房的那些日子已经一去不复返了。

及物动词如 beg(请求), contain(包含), cost(花费), equal(相等), fail(不及格), fit(合适), have(有), hold(容纳), lack(缺乏), possess(拥有), resemble(相似)等表示状态, 通常不用于被动语态。例如:

- [ ✓ ] He possessed great wealth.  
他拥有很多财富。
- [ × ] Great wealth was possessed by him.
- [ ✓ ] He resembles his father closely.  
他和他的父亲一模一样。
- [ × ] His father is resembled closely by him.

使役动词 *make* , *have* 及感官动词 *see* , *hear* , *notice* , *feel* , *observe* , *listen to* 等在主动语态中 , 后面跟不定式作宾补要省去 *to* , 但当变成被动语态时 , 要加上 *to*。

{ The girl was seen to cross the street.



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

I heard the girl sing in the dormitory.  
我听到那个女孩在宿舍唱歌。  
The girl was heard to sing in the dormitory.  
有人听到那个女孩在宿舍唱歌。





### Exercise 3

#### I. 选择题

1. All the machines \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of the following week.  
A. will be repaired                      B. were repaired  
C. will have been repaired              D. would be repaired
2. Although the mission was to be kept a secret , it \_\_\_\_\_ to the press.  
A. reveals      B. revealed      C. was revealed      D. reveal
3. Many doctors believe cures for many forms of cancer \_\_\_\_\_ soon.  
A. will discover                      B. will be discovered  
C. they will be discovered              D. have been discovered
4. The new kind of machine is going to \_\_\_\_\_ the year after next.  
A. turn out                      B. have turned out  
C. turning out                      D. be turned out
5. The secretary opened the mail which \_\_\_\_\_ that morning.  
A. had delivered                      B. had been delivered  
C. delivered                      D. is delivered
6. Shortly afterwards , I noticed to my satisfaction that their work \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. was been improved                      B. was being improved  
C. were being improved                      D. had being improved
7. A great deal of research \_\_\_\_\_ into the possible causes of cancer in recent years.  
A. has been done                      B. will be done  
C. was done                      D. is done
8. He told us that he \_\_\_\_\_ to work in Italy later in the year.  
A. was transferred                      B. will transfer  
C. will be transferred                      D. would be transferred
9. The professor was profound and eloquent and \_\_\_\_\_ with enthusiasm.  
A. was always listened                      B. was always listened to  
C. always was listened                      D. always listened to
10. Those who have applied for the post \_\_\_\_\_ in the office.  
A. are being interviewed                      B. are interviewing  
C. interviewing                      D. to be interviewing

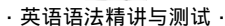


11. The bridge \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment , so we had to take another way.  
A. had been repaired                      B. was repaired  
C. would have been repaired          D. was being repaired
12. Having received over eighty percent of the vote , Jane Byre became the first woman \_\_\_\_\_ elected mayor of Chicago.  
A. who she    B. she was              C. was to                      D. to be
13. I'll take down your name and address in case you \_\_\_\_\_ as a witness.  
A. are needed   B. will be needed   C. need                      D. were needed
14. I should very much like to go to the party , but \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. I am invited                              B. will not have been invited  
C. I was not invited                      D. I will not be invited
15. By the time the applicant makes up his mind , the offer \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. will cancel                              B. will have been cancelled  
C. will be canceling                      D. is cancelled
16. If one \_\_\_\_\_ by vanity , he will be very particular about other's clothing and appearance.  
A. overcomes                              B. will be overcome  
C. is overcome                              D. has been overcome
17. The best use \_\_\_\_\_ our present equipment.  
A. must be made of                      B. must be made  
C. must make of                              D. must make
18. By signing this application , I ask that an account \_\_\_\_\_ for me and a credit card issued as I request.  
A. be opened                              B. is opened  
C. opens                                      D. will be opened
19. I found that my cheating in yesterday's English test \_\_\_\_\_ to my parents that very evening.  
A. was reported                              B. had been reported  
C. had reported                              D. was being reported
20. By promoting more even income distribution in a developing country , a lower birth rate would \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. be achieved                              B. achieved  
C. achieve                                      D. be achieving
21. In the last decade , great changes \_\_\_\_\_ in the emphasis of the bank's



· 第三章 被动语态 ·

- lending policies.
- A. have been taken place      B. have taken place  
C. took place      D. was taken place
22. Besides \_\_\_\_\_, he had to pay back all the money he had received from bribes.  
A. jailing      B. being jailed      C. to be jailed      D. jailed
23. There are problems with nuclear energy that have yet \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to solve      B. to be solved      C. been solved      D. being solved
24. Your hair wants \_\_\_\_\_. You'd better have it \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.  
A. cutting... done      B. cutting... to be done  
C. being cut... done      D. to be cut... to be done
25. I don't remember \_\_\_\_\_ a chance to try this method.  
A. having been given      B. to have been given  
C. having given      D. to have given
26. We could ask someone to do the work privately without it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. know      B. be known      C. being known      D. to be known
27. He had spread his sails and pursued his way, thinking that none besides those who \_\_\_\_\_ were left alive.  
A. had taken up      B. had been taken up  
C. took up      D. were taken up
28. He looked at the room in dismay when he found it \_\_\_\_\_ into.  
A. had broken      B. had been broken  
C. broke      D. was broken
29. "I'd like to buy an expensive camera. "  
"Well, we have several models \_\_\_\_\_. "  
A. to choose from      B. being chosen  
C. of choice      D. for choosing
30. They found the lecture hard \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to be understood      B. to understand  
C. for understanding      D. to have been understood
31. If the work \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of the month is delayed, the construction company will be fined.  
A. to be completed      B. will be completed  
C. has been completed      D. being completed



- ## II. 改错题

- 70



· 第三章 被动语态 ·

- if they are to be survived.  
C D
2. The project which seems to us to be very attractive requires more labor than  
A B C  
have put in because it is extremely difficult.  
D
3. A book may compare to your neighbor ; if it be bad , you cannot get rid of it  
A B C  
too early ; if good , it cannot last too long.  
D
4. As the main objective of going to school is presumably to prepare for after life ,  
A B  
it should be very easy to organize lectures designing to give a broad view  
C  
of the variety of occupations.  
D
5. The idea that learning is a lifelong process has expressed by philosophers and  
A B C  
educationalists throughout the centuries.  
D
6. The advantages of computerized typing and editing are now being extending to  
A B C  
all the written languages of the world.  
D
7. According to some theories derived from psychoanalysis , life is supposedly  
A B  
easier and more pleasant when inhibitions ( 压抑 ) overcoming.  
C D
8. When overall exports exceed imports , a country said to have a trade surplus.  
A B C D
9. The workers of their factory pay in proportion to the number of hours they work.  
A B C D
10. In future , letters won't bring to the house , and we shall have to collect them  
A B C  
from the post office.  
D
11. She was made wait for over an hour in the rain because of the delay of the  
A B C D  
train.
12. To understand the situation completely requires more thought than has given  
A B C



thus far.

D

13. His father warned him not to lead astray by others.

A

B

C

D

14. The ceremony has already started and the flag is being rose now.

A

B

C

D

15. Because radio communication had been failed once before , I was

A

B

afraid the men in the plane might lose touch with the crew on the  
platform.

C

D

16. Having badly damaged by the earthquake , the city had to be rebuilt.

A

B

C

D

17. We insisted on giving the task and promised to fulfil it in time.

A

B

C

D

18. When visiting a foreign country , I sometimes found it difficult to

A

B

C

make myself understand.

D

19. Evidence has been put forward showing that astronauts exposed to

A

B

C

long periods of weightlessness have affected quite severely.

D

20. Because of the horrible air pollution , this city is no longer a good

A

B

C

place to be lived in.

D



## 第四章

# 助动词和情态动词

助动词和情态动词都是动词的不同形式 ,不能单独使用 ,通常和谓语中心词一起构成谓语动词的各种时态、语态及其他用法。

### 第一节 助 动 词

#### 一、助动词的种类

英语中的助动词有四种 :

- ( 1 ) be( is ,am ,are ,was ,were ,being ,been )
- ( 2 ) have( has ,had ,having )



( 3 ) do( does , did )

( 4 ) shall , will( should , would )

## 二、助动词的用法

助动词本身没有独立的词义 ,不能单独构成谓语 ,通常和谓语动词连用表示时态、语态、语气或构成否定句和疑问句。

►► 1. 构成除一般现在时和一般过去时之外的各种时态。

例 She is having a meeting. 她在开会。

I shall help you any minute. 我将随时帮助你。

I have been working in the company for years.

我已在这个公司工作多年了。

They ll discuss the problem tomorrow. 他们明天将讨论这个问题。

Soon they would have reached their time limit and must return to the camp. 不久 ,规定的时间就要到了 ,他们就得回到营地。

He has written the paper. 他的论文已经写完了。

They had finished the work before I arrived there.

在我到那之前 ,他们已经把工作做完了。

►► 2. 构成被动语态。助动词和过去分词连用可构成被动结构。

例 The documents have not been signed by the manager.

这些文件经理还没签字。

The machine was made in Japan. 那部机器是日本造的。

Smith has been sent to California for a year.

史密斯被派到加利福尼亚去一年。

►► 3. 构成否定句和疑问句。

例 Do you often go to the library ? 你经常去图书馆吗 ?

Did everything come off all right ? 一切进行得还顺利吗 ?

I don't like the film. 我不喜欢这部电影。

He didn't answer the question the teacher asked.

他没有回答老师的问题。

►► 4. 加强语气。助动词可放在实义动词前以加强语气。

例 I do feel that way. 我的确有那种感觉。

They didn't think I read the passages , but I did read.





他们认为我没有看那些文章,但我确实看了。

The letter we were expecting never did arrive.

我们期待的信一直没有到。

►► 5. 用于替代,以避免重复。

例 He can cook as well as she does ( as well as she cooks ).

他的烹调技术和她的一样好。

I thought she d come , but she didn't ( = but she didn't come ).

我原以为她会来,但她没来。

Do you mind if I open the window ? No , please do ( open the window ).

你介意我打开窗户吗?不,请打开吧。

►► 6. 由 had , should , would 等构成各种虚拟语气。

例 If I had enough time now , I would help you.

假如我现在有时间,我就去帮助你。

If they had accepted the advice , they would have succeeded.

如果他们接受了那个建议,他们也许就成功了。

## 第二节 情态动词

情态动词具有一定的词义,没有人称和数的变化,不能单独构成谓语,和谓语动词连用表示委婉语气或表示愿望、态度或推测等意义。

### 一、情态动词的种类

英语的情态动词有下列几种:

can , could

must , need , have to

may , might

ought to

will , shall , would , should

dare , dared

### 二、can 和 could 的形式和用法

►► 1. 表示能力。

表示天生或学到的能力,can 表示现在的能力, could 表示过去的的能力。



例 I can read French and German but I can't speak either of them. I can only speak English.

法文和德文我都看得懂，但是不会说，我只会说英语。

She can drive, but she can't ride a bike.

她会开车，但她不会骑自行车。

The lecture couldn't be understood by anyone present.

此次演讲未能被在场的任何人理解。

My son could read and write when he was four.

我的儿子在四岁时就能读会写。

►► 2. 表示许可。

can 或 could 与实义动词连用可表示许可。

例 Students can't smoke in the classroom. 学生们不能在教室抽烟。

I can see him tomorrow. 我明天可以见到他。

I could borrow my father's car whenever I liked.

我什么时候想借，就可以借我父亲的汽车。

Before our town became so big, we could climb trees in the woods and fish in the river. But we can't now.

这个小镇还没变得这么大之前，我们可以在树林里爬树，在河里钓鱼，可是现在不行了。

►► 3. 表示可能性。

表示此意的 can 是表示“理论上的可能性”，如果表示的是实际上的可能性的话，则使用 could 或 may。

例 Even experienced teachers can make mistakes.

即使经验丰富的教师也可能会犯错误。

Our club finances can be improved.

我们俱乐部的财务状况还可以进一步得到改善。[指尚有问题存在]

Our club finances may be improved.

我们俱乐部的财务状况说不定可以得到改善。[已经有了改善的提案]

It could be better to stay here. 说不定待在这里比较好。

She could have gone on vacation already. 说不定她已经去度假了。



#### ►►4. 表示推测。

can 和 could 表示推测的这一用法通常用于否定句或疑问句中,表示对现在、将来及过去情况进行否定的推测。通常有两种形式:

1) 表示对现在或未来情况进行否定的推测,其结构为:“can t ( couldn t ) + 动词原形或 can t ( couldn t ) + be + 现在分词”。

例 She couldn't make mistakes on this matter.

在这个问题上她不可能犯错误。

The story can't be true. 这个故事不可能是真的。

I think it's right. She can't make a mistake.

我想应该没事,她不可能犯错。

2) 表示对已经发生的情况进行否定推测,其结构为:

“can t ( couldn t ) + have + 过去分词”。

例 She can't have gone to school. We have no school today.

她不可能到学校去,今天我们学校放假。

He couldn't have said such a thing. 他应该不会说出这种话的。

#### ►►5. can 用于固定搭配中。

can 可与其他词连用构成固定搭配。

例 I can but do my best. 我只好尽力了。

I can't help but cry. 我忍不住哭了起来。

I cannot help declining his offer. 我不得不婉拒他的提议。

You cannot be too careful when crossing the street.

穿越马路时怎么小心也不过分。

### 三、can( could ) 与 be able to 的区别

#### ►►1. 在表示能力时 can 和 be able to 可以互换使用。

例 I can ( am able to ) speak French. 我能说法语。

She could ( was able to ) read novels when she was four years old.

她4岁时就能看小说了。

#### ►►2. 在表示已经“设法或成功做了某事”时,用“was( were )able to”,不能用 could。

例 He didn't like to go with me at first but I was able to persuade him.



起初他不愿和我一起去,但是我终于说服了他。

He was able to pass his examination as a result of his hard study.

由于他努力学习,考试终于及格了。

#### 四、may 和 might 的形式和用法

- 1. 表示可能性,推测。may 和 might 在表示可能性、推测时,意为“也许,可能,大概”。通常用于肯定句中。具体有两种用法。

(1) 表示对现在或未来情况进行推测,其结构为:“may( might ) + 动词原形或 may( might ) + be + 现在分词”。

例 Such an experienced teacher may sometimes make mistakes.

经验这么丰富的老师有时也可能出差错。

It may snow tomorrow. 明天很可能下雪。

They are ready for a strong earthquake which might occur.

他们对可能发生的大地震已经有所准备。

I think it might rain. 我想可能要下雨。

He may be having the meeting now. 也许他现在正在开会。

(2) 表示对已经发生的情况进行推测,其结构为:“may( might ) + have + 过去分词”。

例 I thought my uncle might have missed the train.

我想我的叔叔可能错过了火车。

They might have known the matter earlier.

他们可能早知道那件事了。

注:may 有时也可用于否定句中,这时 not 不是否定 may 的,而是否定句子里的动词。

She may not know the truth. 她可能不知道真相。

She may not have known about the matter.

她可能还不知道那件事。

- 2. 表示许可。

may 或 might 可以用于陈述句或疑问句中表示许可。意为“可以”。



....., 做.....也可”。其否定形式为 may not, 也可用 mustn't。

例 You may use my dictionary. 你可以用我的词典。

May I borrow your bike? No, you mustn't.

我可以借你的自行车吗? 不可以。

My boss told me I might have a vacation.

老板告诉我说我可以休假。

►► 3. might 表示责备、不满。此种用法中含有条件从句内容的委婉说法, 可以说是省略了表示假设或虚拟的从句或短语。

例 You might hear a pin fall. 连针落地的声音都清晰可闻。

I might have known you would have come back so late.

我若知道你那么晚回来就好了。

You might have told the truth. 你本来可以讲实话的。

►► 4. 用于固定搭配中。

例 You may (just) as well know the truth.

你知道真实情形也无妨。

I might (just) as well stay at home tonight.

我今晚还是待在家里吧。

It may well rain. 或许会下雨。

You may well say so. 你大可那样说。

►► 5. 用于表示目的的状态从句中。

例 They moved over a little so that I might sit down.

他们靠过去一点, 我便可以坐下来。

Mr. Smith speaks English slowly in order that his students may follow him. 史密斯英语说得很慢, 好让学生能听懂。

►► 6. 用于让步状语从句中。在让步状语从句中, 通常不用将来时, 从句中常用一般时或情态动词 may 或 might。

例 Whatever he might say, no one believed him.

不管他说什么, 都没有人相信他。

However hard you (may) try, you will never be able to participate in the Olympic Games.

不管你多努力, 你都无法参加奥林匹克运动会。



►► 7. may 通常用倒装结构, 表示祝愿。

例 May success attend you! 祝你成功!

May you have merry Christmas! 祝你圣诞节快乐!

## 五、must 的形式和用法

►► 1. 表示义务。通常用于肯定句、疑问句, 表示义务、必要性。

例 You must start at 6 tonight. 你今晚六点钟必须动身。

You must talk to your daughter about her future.

你必须跟你的女儿谈谈她的前途。

“Must I wash the dishes at once?” “Yes, you must. (No, you needn't).” “我必须马上洗盘子吗?” “对, 必须马上洗。(不, 不必马上洗。)”

►► 2. 表示不允许。通常用于否定句, 表示禁止。

例 You must not speak ill of others. 你不可说别人坏话。

She must not leave her room. 她不许离开她的房间。

►► 3. 表示推测。

用于肯定句中表示对现在、将来或过去情况的推测, 通常有两种形式。

(1) 表示对现在或将来情况进行肯定的推测, 其结构为: “must + 动词原形或 must + be + 现在分词”。

例 It must rain soon. 不久一定会下雨。

He must be having the meeting now. 他现在一定是在开会。

She must dislike such a man. 她肯定不喜欢这种男人。

(2) 表示对已经发生的情况进行肯定的推测, 其结构为: “must + have + 过去分词”。

例 It must have rained last night for the ground is wet.

昨晚一定下雨了, 因为地上湿乎乎的。

No one answers the phone bell. They must have already gone out. 电话没人接, 他们一定出去了。



## 六、must 和 have to 的区别

### ▶▶ 1. 含义不同。

must 和 have to 作情态动词用时,意思很接近,但含义有所不同。must 表示“必须”,通常着重于说话者的主观看法,认为有义务、有必要去做某事。have to 着重于表示客观的需要,含有“不得不”的意思。

例 You must be back by 3 p. m. 你必须 3 点以前回来。[ 表示命令 ]

You have to be back by 3. p. m. 你不得不 3 点以前回来。[ 客观需要 ]

### ▶▶ 2. 形式不同。

从形式上看 must 只有一种形式,可用于现在时、过去时(多用于间接引语中)。而 have to 却有 4 种形式,即 have to, had to, will/shall have to, would/should have to, 可用于现在时、过去时、将来时和过去将来时。

例 He said he would have to ( must ) get his entry visa for Japan.

他说他得办理去日本的入境签证。

She had to return before Sunday. 她得在周日以前回来。

I haven't any money with me, so I'll have to borrow some from my friends. 我没钱了,只好向朋友借一点。

## 七、need 和 dare 的形式和用法

这两个词作情态动词用时,无人称变化,只用于否定句、疑问句和条件句。

### ▶▶ 1. need 表示“需要”;dare 表示“敢于”。

例 You needn't work so hard. 你不必工作得这么辛苦。

Mary dare not touch the snake. 玛丽不敢碰那条蛇。

You need not meet him unless you'd like to.

你不必会见他,除非你愿意。

I don't know whether he dare try. 我不知道他是否敢试试。

### ▶▶ 2. need 可用于完成式,其形式为: needn't + have + 过去分词”

表示“过去做了某事,但事实上没有必要做”。

例 I need not have got up so early.

我本来没必要那么早起床的。[ 但事实上已早起床 ]



You needn't have bought the dress.

你没必要买那件衣服。[ 但你却买了 ]

►► 3. need 的肯定式为 must ,否定式为 needn't.

例 He need not go if he doesn't want to. 如果他不想去 ,就别去了。

You needn't see him , but I must. 你没必要去见他 ,但我得去。

►► 4. need 和 dare 也可用作实义动词 ,作实义动词时 ,要注意人称和时态的变化 ,后面可以跟不定式等各种结构。

例 A fence needs the support of the three stakes , doesn't it ?

一个篱笆要有三个桩 ,不是吗 ?

I have never dared to tell him about it. 我一直不敢把这事告诉他。

You don't need to come if you feel sick. 如果你不舒服就不要来。

►► 5. dare 作实义动词时 ,其疑问句或否定句后面的不定式符号常省略。

例 Does the little girl dare ( to ) enter the house in the darkness ?

那个小女孩敢进那个漆黑的房子吗 ?

He didn't dare ( to ) disobey. 他不敢不服从。

## 八、will 和 would 的形式和用法

►► 1. will 或 would 可用来表示主语的强烈意志或主张 ,意为“ 无论如何总要…… ”。

例 My children will not listen to me. 我的孩子总是不听我的话。

I will marry you whatever happens.

无论发生什么事 ,我都要和你结婚。

His father was angry because he wouldn't obey him.

他不听话 ,他父亲很生气。

That window wouldn't open. 那扇窗户就是打不开。

The manager would have his own way. 那位经理总是一意孤行。

►► 2. will 作情态动词用时 ,表示将来的意志、意愿。

例 I ll send photos to you soon. 我很快就会把照片寄给你。

I shall be glad if you will help me. 如果你愿意帮助我 ,我会很高兴。

I will never talk about it again. 我永远不会再提这件事了。





►► 3. will 表示命令、请求、规劝等。

- 例 Will you pass me the salt , please ? 请你把盐递给我。[ 表示请求 ]  
Go and get the newspaper , will you ? 去把报纸拿来。[ 表示命令 ]  
Won't you sit down. 请坐吧 ! [ 表示规劝 ]  
You will forgive me , won't you ? 你会原谅我 , 不是吗 ? [ 表示请求 ]

►► 4. would 表示过去的习惯、习性、倾向等。

- 例 When I was a child , I would go skiing. 我小时候经常去滑雪。  
We would stay up all night talking about our future.  
( 那时候 ) 我们经常彻夜谈论我们的将来。

## 九、used to 和 would 的用法比较

used to 和 would 都可以表示过去时间经常的习惯动作 , 但它们的含义和用法不尽相同。

►► 1. would 是以一种回忆往事的心情来描述过去经常重复的习惯动作 , 而 used to 则强调过去与现在的对比 , 并且表示较远、目前不复存在的习惯。

- 例 Every evening she would teach us to read and write.  
那时她每天晚上都教我们学文化。  
My brother used to be a worker , but now he is a college teacher.  
我哥哥过去是工人 , 但现在却是一位大学老师。  
He will not have the money to spend on books as he used to.  
他无法像以前那样有钱买书了。

►► 2. would 只能和表示动作的动词连用 , 而 used to 既能和动作动词连用 , 也能和状态动词连用。

- 例 There used to be a temple there.  
以前那里曾有座庙。( 不能用 would )  
He would spend all he earned on books.  
他总是把挣来的每分钱都花在买书上。

## 十、shall 的形式和用法

►► 1. shall 可用在主语是第一人称或第三人称的疑问句中 , 表示说话人征求对方的允诺。



例 Shall I fetch a doctor for you? 我去为你请医生来好吗?

Shall he come at once? 要他马上来吗?

“ Shall we go to the concert tonight?” “ Yes, let's ( No, let's not ). ”

“ 今晚我们去听音乐会好吗?” “ 好,我们去吧( 不,我们不要去 )。 ”

►► 2. 用在主语是第二、第三人称的陈述句中,表示说话人给对方的义务、命令、许诺等。

例 You shall do as you see me do. 你照我的样子办。 [ 义务 ]

You shall leave here at once. 你必须马上离开这儿。 [ 命令 ]

He shall be paid. 他会得到报酬的。 [ 许诺 ]

They shall never interfere in my private affairs again.

他们决不可以再干涉我的私事。 [ 命令 ]

## 十一、should 和 ought to 的形式和用法

►► 1. should 和 ought to 后接动词原形,表示义务。

例 You should do what your parents tell you.

你应该照你父母说的去做。

You don't look well. You ought to go to see the doctor.

你气色不太好,应该去看医生。

You should apologize to him. 你应该向他道歉。

He ought not / oughtn't to drink too much. 他不应该喝太多的酒。

►► 2. should 和 ought to 后接现在完成时,表示应该做而没有做的事,表示责备、后悔等。

例 I should have been kinder to him.

当时我要是对他再亲切一点就好了。

He shouldn't have said such a thing. 当时他不该说那种话。

He ought to have worked harder. 他本应该更努力读书的。

You ought not to have been so stupid. 你当时不该那么笨。



## Exercise 4

### I. 选择题

1. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ my letter ; otherwise she would have replied before now.  
A. has received                      B. ought to have received  
C. couldn't have received          D. should have received
2. Mary didn't go to the party last night because she \_\_\_\_\_ the baby for her sister until 9 30.  
A. must have looked after          B. had to look after  
C. must look after                      D. has to look after
3. From the tears in her eyes we can deduce that something sad \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. must have occurred                B. would have occurred  
C. might be occurring                D. should occur
4. As it turned out to be a small house party , we \_\_\_\_\_ so formally.  
A. needn't dressed                      B. didn't need have dressed  
C. did not need dress up              D. needn't have dressed up
5. Henry's car stopped on the highway. It \_\_\_\_\_ out of gas.  
A. may not run                          B. may have run  
C. must run                                D. ought to run
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ pay the money , but you \_\_\_\_\_ do so at once.  
A. needn't. . . must                      B. need. . . need  
C. must. . . must                          D. must. . . needn't
7. The car plunged into the river. The driver \_\_\_\_\_ get out but the passengers were drowned.  
A. was able to                              B. succeeded to  
C. could                                      D. might
8. If you \_\_\_\_\_ me , I shall be very grateful to you.  
A. helped                      B. will help                      C. are helping                      D. will be helping
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ in the kitchen when you phoned.  
A. must have been                          B. must be  
C. can be                                      D. could have been
10. I can't find Mr. Fox in her office , she \_\_\_\_\_ for home.  
A. might have started                      B. might start

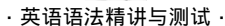


- C. may be starting                      D. may start
11. You don't need \_\_\_\_\_ for his permission every time you want to leave the room.  
A. to ask      B. ask              C. asking              D. being asked
12. They \_\_\_\_\_ have gone out because the light's on.  
A. mustn't      B. can't              C. may not              D. isn't able to
13. Surely nothing \_\_\_\_\_ be going on there so late at night.  
A. needn't      B. shall              C. could              D. ought to
14. If you can eat all these apples you \_\_\_\_\_ have a good digestion.  
A. must              B. can              C. may              D. might
15. I wonder why they haven't arrived yet. I told them how to get here but perhaps I \_\_\_\_\_ them a map.  
A. should give                      B. had to give  
C. must have given              D. ought to have given
16. "Must I come at four o'clock?" "Oh, no, you \_\_\_\_\_ come at four. "  
A. mustn't      B. needn't              C. shouldn't              D. couldn't
17. We had plenty of bread, so I \_\_\_\_\_ a loaf.  
A. needed not to buy              B. need not to have bought  
C. needn't have bought              D. didn't need to buy
18. You \_\_\_\_\_ that if you don't want to.  
A. don't need to do              B. needn't to do  
C. need to have done              D. don't need to
19. The students in the classroom \_\_\_\_\_ not to make such a big fuss.  
A. must              B. need              C. ought              D. dare
20. An ambulance was waiting in the street. Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ hurt or killed.  
A. should have been              B. should be  
C. must have been              D. should have not been
21. I didn't enjoy the concert yesterday; it was a confusion, and the band didn't play as it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. did              B. has done              C. used to              D. have done
22. Oil and other chemicals \_\_\_\_\_ kill fish and make water bad for drinking.  
A. would              B. must              C. can              D. should
23. When we arrived at the pier, the ferry had still not arrived; so we \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. needed not                      B. needn't have hurried



· 第四章 助动词和情态动词 ·

- C. didn't need to hurry                      D. need not to have hurried
24. The line is busy ; someone \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone now.  
A. should be using                      B. must have been using  
C. uses                      D. must be using
25. You \_\_\_\_\_ quit your job until you find another one.  
A. had better don't                      B. had better not  
C. had better not to                      D. would better
26. He hardly \_\_\_\_\_ say anything more since we know all about it.  
A. needs                      B. need                      C. need to                      D. needn't
27. " That must be a mistake. " No , it \_\_\_\_\_ a mistake ".  
A. must not be                      B. needn't be                      C. can't be                      D. would not be
28. The swimmer was very tired but he \_\_\_\_\_ reach the shore before he collapsed.  
A. might                      B. could                      C. succeeded                      D. was able to
29. Dr. Jones , many students want to see you. \_\_\_\_\_ they wait here or outside ?  
A. Do                      B. Will                      C. Shall                      D. Would
30. Professor Wang \_\_\_\_\_ be in Beijing because I saw him in the library only a few minutes ago.  
A. must not be                      B. can't                      C. may not                      D. should not
31. " The lecturer was a tall thin man with white hair. " " Then it \_\_\_\_\_ Dr. Fell because he is short and fat. It \_\_\_\_\_ Dr. Jones ; he is thin. "   
A. can't be ... must be  
B. couldn't have been ... might have been  
C. must be ... can't be  
D. can't have been ... must have been
32. We didn't see him at the lecture yesterday. He \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. mustn't have attended                      B. can't have attended  
C. couldn't attend                      D. needn't have attended
33. No one will eat this food ; it \_\_\_\_\_ be thrown away.  
A. had better to                      B. has better  
C. might as well                      D. has best
34. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ do his best for the modernization of his country.



- ## II. 改错题

- 88



· 第四章 助动词和情态动词 ·

7. The house that was used to stand at this corner was destroyed during the bombing in 1940.  
A B C D
8. Paul did so well in his speech today that he should have practised it many times this past week.  
A B C D
9. He was such a good swimmer that he could swim to a nearby island when the ship sank in the sea.  
A B C D
10. To become a member of the civic association , one need only attend three meetings and to pay his fees regularly.  
A B C D
11. Suzy had better to change her study habits if she hopes to be admitted to a good university.  
A B C D
12. You are quite right ; I'm inferring in my comments that McGraw had not ought to have broken in the room without my permission.  
A B C D
13. Tom , you shouldn't have run across the street without looking around , you might be knocked down by a car.  
A B C D
14. He confessed that for months he was scarcely being able to look at the lawyer without becoming angry.  
A B C D
15. Judging by the noise that is coming from their room , I think that they must have a party.  
A B C D
16. What a pity we didn't know about the show ! We should like to see it.  
A B C D
17. The villagers must fetch water from a dirty pond before liberation for there was no clean water available.  
A B C D



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

18. Had they only listened to me , we must have seen a most interesting film ,  
A B C  
because he was preparing to show it to us at that time.  
D
19. They mustn't have liked the apartment , or they would have stayed longer.  
A B C D
20. No statement was issued after yesterday's talk , but it is thought that the two  
A B  
parties might be reaching an agreement.  
C D





## 第五章 虚拟语气

虚拟语气是指所说的话只是一种与事实相反的主观愿望、假想或建议等。虚拟语气可用于条件状语从句、主语从句、表语从句、同位语从句以及其他结构中。

### 第一节 非真实条件状语从句中的虚拟语气

非真实条件状语从句所表示的假设则是不可能或不大可能发生或实现的，句中的主句与从句都用虚拟语气。



## 一、if 条件状语从句中的虚拟语气形式

在 if 非真实虚拟条件状语从句中,主句和从句谓语动词主要有下面几种形式:

假设类型	条件从句谓语动词形式	主句谓语动词形式
与现在事实相反	动词过去式( be 用 were )	should ( would , could , might ) + 动词原形
与过去事实相反	had + 过去分词	should ( would , could , might ) + have + 过去分词
与将来事实可能相反	动词过去式 或 should + 动词原形 或 were to + 动词原形	should ( would , could , might ) + 动词原形

## 二、if 虚拟条件句的基本用法

### ►► 1. 表示与现在事实相反的假设。

在与现在事实相反的非真实条件句中,从句中的谓语动词用动词过去式或 were。主句中的谓语动词用 should( 第一人称 ),would( 第二、三人称 ),但在美国英语中,主句所有人称都用 would。主句中也可用“ could 或 might + 动词原形 ”。

例 If I knew the fact now , I would tell you.

假如我现在知道事情真相,我就告诉你了。

If there were no gravity , we should not be able to walk.

假如没有引力,我们就不可能行走。

If there were life on Mars , such life forms would be unable to survive on earth.

假如火星上有生命,这种生命形式在地球上是无法生存的。

### ►► 2. 表示与过去事实相反的假设。

在与过去事实相反的非真实条件句中,从句中的谓语动词用“ had + 过去分词 ”。主句中的谓语动词用“ should( 第一人称 )或 would( 第二、三人称 )have + 过去分词 ”。在美国英语中,条件从句中的谓语动词常用“ would have + 过去分词 ”。

例 I wouldn't have known what these were for if I hadn't been told.

假如别人不告诉我,我就不知道这些东西是干什么用的。



If the art dealer had had the money, he would have bought the painting. 假如那位画商有这么一笔钱,他就买那幅画了。

### ▶▶ 3. 表示与将来事实相反的假设。

表示与将来事实相反的非真实条件句,从句中的谓语动词用过去式或“should + 动词原形”或“were to + 动词原形”。主句中的谓语动词用“should( 第一人称 )或 would( 第二、三人称 )+ 动词原形”,主句也可用“could 或 might + 动词原形”。

例 If bargains were prohibited by law our standard of living would immediately rise. 假如廉价商品受到法律的禁止,我们的生活水平就会马上有所提高。

If you were to see Jane, what would you tell her?

假如你要去看珍妮,你会告诉她什么?

This kind of world is hard and dangerous. But if you should succeed, you would become rich.

这样的世界艰难危险,但是假如你成功的话,你会很富有的。

## 三、省略 if 的虚拟条件句的用法

在正式文体中,有时可把虚拟条件句中的连词 if 省去,而将 were, had, should 等助动词(不包括行为动词)提到主语前面,形成主谓倒装。如果句中没有 were, had 或 should 时,既不能省略 if,也不能倒装。

例 Were I to meet him tomorrow ( = If I were to meet him tomorrow ), I should ask him about it.

要是我明天见到他,我就会问他这件事的。

Had I had the money last year ( = If I had had the money last year ), I would have bought the house.

如果我去年有了这笔钱,我就买那栋房子了。

Should there be any trouble with the boiler, the automatic controlling unit would cut off the fuel oil supply.

假如锅炉出问题的话,自控装置会自动切断燃油的供给。

## 四、混合型虚拟条件句

通常情况下,在非真实条件句中的主句和从句所指时间是一致的。



的,主从句中的谓语动词要么都是与现在事实相反,要么都是与过去事实相反等。但有时也可能指不同的时间,这时要根据上下文的意思采用不同的谓语动词形式。

例 If I were you, I would have taken his advice.

我要是你,我就采纳他的建议了。[从句指现在,主句指过去]

If her husband had not been killed in the war, she would not be helping others with the housework now.

如果她的丈夫没有在战争中死去的话,她现在就不会帮助别人做家务了。[从句指过去,主句指现在]

## 五、含蓄虚拟条件句

有时假设的情况并不以条件从句表示出来,而是通过一个介词短语或其他方式表示。常用的词或短语有:without, but for, but that, otherwise or but 等。

►►1. 有时虚拟语气可用 but for, without, under, with 等介词短语引导。

例 Under such circumstances I would probably have done the same.

在这样的情况下,我也可能做出同样的事情。

With better equipment, we could have done it better.

如果有更好的仪器设备,我们也许会做得更好些。

In the absence of the keeper, the house would have been burned down. 如果没有管理员的话,那栋房子也许就被烧毁了。

Without your help ( = If we had not had your help ), we could not have succeeded. 要是没有你的帮助,我们是不会成功的。

But for electricity ( = If there were no electricity ), there would be no modern industry. 要是没电,就不会有现代工业。

►►2. 有时虚拟语气可以由 otherwise, but, or 来引导。

要注意 otherwise 暗含的虚拟条件句中,前一部分是陈述语气,后一部分是虚拟语气。but 暗含的虚拟句中,前一部分是虚拟语气,后一部分是陈述语气。另外,or 也可以用来引导虚拟语气,or 引导的虚拟语气,前一部分是陈述语气,后一部分是虚拟语气。

例 I ran all the way to school, otherwise I would have been late.



我一路跑到学校 ,不然就迟到了。

He felt very tired yesterday ,or he would have helped you.

他昨天很累 ,不然他会帮助你们的。

I ought to have remembered to tell them the decision this morning but I was so busy that I forgot to do so. 我本来应该记得今天早上告诉他们那个决定 ,但是我太忙了 ,把这个事给忘了。

►► 3. but that 也可用来引导虚拟语气。

连词 but that(要不是)引导的虚拟语气结构,从句部分是陈述语气,主句部分是虚拟语气。

例 But that the soldier caught her ( If the soldier had not caught her ), the little girl would have fallen into the river.

要不是那位战士把小女孩拉住 ,她就掉到河里去了。

But that he was short of money at the time , he would have come to help us. 要不是他当时缺钱 ,他也许就来帮助我们了。

►► 4. 分词短语或不定式短语也可引导暗含虚拟条件句。

例 You would have laughed to see him jump aside. ( = If you had seen him jump aside , you would have laughed. )

你要是看到他跳到一边的样子会大笑起来。

This same thing , happening in wartime , would amount to disaster.

( = If the same thing happened in wartime , it would amount to disaster. ) 同样的这种事情 ,如果发生在战时 ,就等于一场灾难。

►► 5. 暗含虚拟条件的简单句中的虚拟语气。

在某些暗含虚拟条件的简单句中 ,虚拟语气可通过上下文表现出来。谓语动词用 should/would be 型和 should/would have been 型虚拟形式。

例 Any man in his position would have done like that.

任何人处在他的位置都会那么做的。

You should ( ought to ) have returned the book earlier.

你本应该早点归还那本书的。

## 六、虚拟语气与祈使语气、陈述语气的混合使用

在有些情况下 ,条件句中的谓语由“ should + 动词原形 ”构成 ,这时



主句的谓语动词既可以是虚拟语气或陈述语气,也可以是祈使语气。

例 If it should rain, the excursion will be put off.

如果下雨,旅行就要延期了。

Should you ( If you should ) change your mind, let us know.

万一改变主意,就通知我们。

Even if ( If ) it should get stormy, I will go.

即使会有暴风雨,我还是要去。

## 七、“ If it were ( had been ) not for. . . ”句型中的虚拟语气

虚拟语气也常用于“ If it were ( had been ) not for. . . ”句型中,意为“要不是……”。

例 If it were not for peace, we could not be living a happy life today.

要不是有了和平,我们今天就不可能过上幸福的生活了。

If it had not been for your advice, I would not have accepted the job.

要不是你的建议,我可能就不会接受那个工作了。

## 第二节 名词性从句中的虚拟语气

在名词性从句中,是否用虚拟语气主要取决于有关的一些词。这些词常用来表示命令、建议、要求、愿望等。

### 一、宾语从句中的虚拟语气

►► 1. 某些动词后的宾语从句中要求用虚拟语气结构,用来表示建议、命令、要求等。其形式为“( should ) + 动词原形”。

例 The general directed that the troops ( should ) attack.

将军命令部队进攻。

They demanded that the company ( should ) make compensation for the loss. 他们要求该公司赔偿损失。

They moved that all civilians should be evacuated.

他们提议所有居民全部撤出。



常这样用的动词有：

ask 要求	advise 劝告	determine 决定
decide 决定	command 命令	insist 坚持
intend 打算	move 提议	prefer 宁愿
propose 提议	order 命令	recommend 推荐
request 要求	require 要求	suggest 建议
urge 主张	demand 要求	desire 渴望
direct 命令		

注：suggest, insist 等动词在不表示建议、要求等解释时，其宾语从句中的谓语动词不需要用虚拟语气形式。例如：

Are you suggesting that I am not suited for the job?

你是在暗示说我不适合那个工作吗？

He insisted that he was innocent. 他坚称自己是无辜的。

►►2. 在以 it 为形式宾语的复合宾语从句中使用虚拟语气。

其形式为：“( should ) + 动词原形”。这一句型中使用的形容词( 宾补 )与主语从句中的虚拟语气所使用的形容词相同。

例 I consider it imperative that a meeting ( should ) be held immediately.

我认为必须马上开个会。

We think it advisable that he ( should ) think deeply before acting.

我们认为他在行动之前好好考虑是非常明智的。

►►3. 在 expect, believe, think, suspect 等动词的否定式或疑问式后面的宾语从句中也可用虚拟语气形式，表示惊奇、怀疑、不满等。其形式为：“should + 动词原形或 should + have + 过去分词”。

例 I never thought that he should be such a brave young soldier.

我从来没想到他是个如此勇敢的小战士。

I never expected that the problem should have been solved that way.

我从来没想到这个问题会那样解决。

►►4. 在表示感情、意志等的 that 从句中使用虚拟语气。

这时意为“竟然……, 居然……”。其形式为：“( should ) + 动词



原形或 should + have + 过去分词 ”。

例 I am surprised that you ( should ) speak in such a way.

我很惊异,你居然用那种口气说话。

I am glad that your story should have won the first prize.

我很高兴,你的小说居然赢得头奖。

►► 5. wish 后面所跟宾语从句中的虚拟语气。

wish 后面如果跟宾语从句的话,要求接虚拟语气结构,其主要形式有三种:

- 表示对现在情况的虚拟 wish + 主语 + 动词过去式或 were
- 表示对过去情况的虚拟 wish + 主语 + had + 过去分词
- 表示对将来情况的虚拟 wish + 主语 + would + 动词原形

例 I wish I knew the answer to the question.

要是我知道那个问题的答案就好了。

They wish they had not lost the chance.

他们为失去这个机会感到惋惜。

I wish I were a bird. 我要是一只鸟就好了。

注:在表示对过去情况的虚拟时,有时也可用下列形式:

“ wish + 主语 + would( could ) + have + 过去分词 ”。

I wish I could have seen her last night.

要是我昨天晚上能够见到她该多好。

## 二、主语从句中的虚拟语气

在主语从句中也可以用虚拟语气,用来表示建议、命令、要求、惊异、失望等。其形式为:“( should ) + 动词原形 ”。

例 It is imperative that you ( should ) take the medicine.

你一定要吃药。

It is essential that you ( should ) win the voters' hearts.

赢得选民的心是绝对必要的。

It was suggested that he should join the club activities.

有人提议他应该参加俱乐部的活动。





It is strange ( surprising , disappointing ) that she shouldn't have been invited. 她竟然没被邀请 ,真是奇怪( 令人惊异 ,令人失望 )。

常这样用的形容词有 :

appropriate 适当的	advisable 适当的 ,合理的
better 较好的	desirable 理想的
essential 必要的	imperative 迫切的
important 重要的	insistent 坚持的
natural 自然的	necessary 必要的
preferable 优越的 较好的	strange 奇怪的
urgent 紧迫的	vital 极其重要的

过去分词有 :desired , demanded , ordered , requested , suggested , recommended , required , etc.

### 三、表语从句和同位语从句中的虚拟语气

在表示建议、命令、主张、目的、愿望等名词后面的表语从句和同位语从句中谓语动词要求用虚拟语气。其形式为“( should )+ 动词原形”。

例 He gave orders that the guests ( should ) be hospitably entertained.

他下令热情款待这些客人。[ 同位语从句 ]

The proposal that he be invited was rejected.

那项邀请他来的建议被否决了。[ 同位语从句 ]

Her suggestion is that we ( should ) give up the plan.

她建议我们应该放弃这个计划。[ 表语从句 ]

His proposal is that we ( should ) get rid of the bad habits.

他提议我们应该戒除这些不良习惯。

常这样用的名词有 :

resolution 决心 决议	pray 恳求	decision 决议
motion 提议	suggestion 建议	preference 选择
proposal 提议	advice 劝告	recommendation 推荐
desire 愿望	demand 要求	requirement 要求
order 命令	necessity 必要性	request 要求
idea 主意 想法		



### 第三节 其他句型中的虚拟语气

#### 一、would rather, would sooner, would just as soon 等句型中的虚拟语气

在 would rather, would sooner, would just as soon, might as well 和 would prefer 等后面所跟的从句中,也可用虚拟语气,表示愿望,意为“宁愿”、“但愿”。其形式为:

(1)“would rather ( would sooner. . . ) + 主语 + 谓语动词过去式”表示现在或将来的情况。

(2)“would rather ( would sooner. . . ) + 主语 + had + 过去分词”表示过去的情况。

例 I'd rather we didn't go to see a film this evening.

我倒希望我们今晚不去看电影。

I'd just as soon you had returned the book yesterday.

我宁愿你昨天归还那本书。

注: would rather 等短语后面也可以直接跟动词。其后谓语动词用动词原形表示现在或将来的愿望,用现在完成时表示过去的愿望。例如:

I'd rather stay at home. 我宁愿呆在家里。

They would rather not have been to the party.

他们宁愿没去参加那个晚会。

#### 二、It is ( high/about ) time ( that ) . . . 句型中的虚拟语气

在句型“ It is ( high/about ) time. . . ”后面也可跟虚拟语气,从句中常用过去式。有时也用“ should + 动词原形”,意为“该是……的时候了”。



例 It is time ( that ) we went home. 我们该回家了。

It is high time ( that ) the weather improved. 天气真该好起来了。

It is time that the boy ( should ) go to school. 这个小孩该上学了。

### 三、if only 引起的感叹句中的虚拟语气

在“ if only ”引起的感叹句中 ,要求用虚拟语气 表示愿望。用过去时或“ would/could + 动词原形 ”表示与现在或未来事实相反的愿望 ;用过去完成时表示与过去事实相反的愿望。

例 If only he were here ! 要是他在这儿就好了。

If only you would listen to reason. 要是你听从道理就好了。

If only I had not been ill last week ! 要是上周我没病该多好啊 !

If only she could marry me. 但愿她能与我结婚。

注 : if only 也可用于虚拟条件句中。例如 :

If only I had more money , I could buy a car.

要是我有更多的钱 ,我就可以买辆车了。

### 四、in case , lest , for fear that 等引起的虚拟语气

连接词“ in case , lest , for fear that ”可用来引起虚拟语气。其形式通常为 : “ ... lest ( in case , for far that ) + 主语 + should + 动词原形 ”。lest , for fear that 句中的 should 可以省去 , in case 句中的 should 通常不省去 ,但是 in case 句中可以不用虚拟语气 ,而用陈述语气。lest , for fear that 后面也可以接其他形式。

例 He took his raincoat with him in case it should rain.

他带着雨衣以防下雨。

He bought several bottles of beer in case his friend came.

他买了几瓶啤酒 ,以备他的朋友来。

He handled the instrument with care for fear that it ( should ) be damaged. 他小心地搬动那仪器 ,生怕把它弄坏。

Care must be taken in using this method lest overflow ( should ) occur. 在使用这一方法时要谨慎小心 ,以免发生溢流现象。



She hid her jewelry for fear that it would be stolen.

她把宝石藏起来,以防被偷。

## 五、as if 和 as though 引起的虚拟语气

as if 和 as though 连接的状态从句,如果主句中的谓语动词为实义动词,要用虚拟语气结构。既可表示对现在、将来时间的虚拟,又可表示对过去时间的虚拟。其形式如下:

主句 + as if (though) + 主语 +	{	① were / was (或动词过去式) → 表示与主句动作同时发生
		② could (would) + 动词原形 → 表示动作可能在将来发生
		③ had + 过去分词 → 表示从句谓语 动作发生在主句动作之前

例 She always talks to me as if she were my sister.

她总是以我姐姐的语气跟我说话。

He walks slowly as if he had hurt his leg.

他慢慢地走,好像腿受伤的样子。

She talks about it again and again as though she would never end.

她反复谈论那件事,好像永远谈不完的样子。

They talked as if they had been friends for years.

他们说话很亲热,就像多年的老朋友似的。

在 as if, as though 引导的从句中,如果主句的谓语动词为系动词(如 appear, sound, feel, smell, taste 等),那么从句中既可用虚拟语气,也可用陈述语气,用陈述语气居多。常用 as if。

例 She looks as if she is going to cry. 看起来她似乎要哭了。

It seems as if we ll have to walk home. 看起来我们只好走路回家了。

It smells as if it had gone bad. 它闻起来好像坏了。

## 六、had hoped 后面所跟虚拟语气

had hoped 表示过去未实现的愿望,意为“想要,希望”。其从句的谓语动词常用“would + 动词原形”。

例 We had hoped that you would stay with us for some time.



我们曾希望你能和我们在一起呆一段时间。

I had hoped that I \_\_\_\_\_ you by talking about my children.

- A. shouldn't bore                      B. wouldn't bore  
C. didn't bore                          D. hadn't bored

答案为 B。译文：但愿我谈论我的孩子没有使你厌倦。

### 七、动词 be, intend, mean, plan, want, hope 等后面所跟的虚拟语气

动词 be, intend, mean, plan, want, hope 等的过去时加动词不定式的完成式,表示过去想做而没有做的事。

例 I intended to have told him the matter, but I forgot.

我本来要告诉他那件事,但我却给忘了。

I was to have come yesterday, but I couldn't.

我本来想昨天来,但我却来不了。

be, intend, mean, plan, want, hope 等这些动词用于过去完成时并加动词不定式也可表示过去想做而没有做的事。

例 She had meant to see you last week, but she was ill.

她上周本打算要来看你,但却病了。



## Exercise 5

### I. 选择题

1. A safety analysis \_\_\_\_\_ the target as a potential danger. Unfortunately, it was never done.  
A. would identify                      B. will identify  
C. would have identified              D. will have identified
2. The millions of calculations involved, had they been done by hand, \_\_\_\_\_ all practical value by the time they were finished.  
A. could lose                              B. would have lost  
C. might lost                              D. ought to have lost
3. There is a real possibility that these animals could be frightened, \_\_\_\_\_ a sudden loud noise.  
A. being there                            B. should there be  
C. there was                               D. there having been
4. If she \_\_\_\_\_ in this uniform, she wouldn't feel so conspicuous.  
A. wasn't dressed                        B. didn't dressed  
C. weren't dressed                       D. don't dress
5. They \_\_\_\_\_ the problem easily if they had not acquired much fundamental scientific knowledge.  
A. hadn't solved                           B. wouldn't have solved  
C. solved                                    D. solve
6. If we had not got everything ready by now, we \_\_\_\_\_ a terrible time tomorrow.  
A. have had                                B. had been  
C. were working                           D. should be having
7. If we \_\_\_\_\_ hard in the past few years, things wouldn't be going so smoothly.  
A. hadn't been working                  B. are working  
C. were working                           D. worked
8. You are making a lot of noise. If only you \_\_\_\_\_ down.  
A. will quiet                                B. have quieted  
C. would quiet                             D. should quiet



· 第五章 虚拟语气 ·

9. If only we \_\_\_\_\_ a phone ! I'm tired of lining up outside the public phone box.  
A. have                      B. had                      C. will have                      D. are to have
10. Things might have been much worse if the mother \_\_\_\_\_ on the right to keep the baby.  
A. has been insisting                      B. had insisted  
C. would insist                      D. insisted
11. \_\_\_\_\_ today , he would get there by Friday.  
A. Would he leave                      B. Were he to leave  
C. Was he leaving                      D. If he leaves
12. He was holding a consultation with his students. Otherwise he \_\_\_\_\_ over to help us.  
A. had come                      B. would come  
C. would have come                      D. was coming
13. Electronic computers must be made very small. Otherwise it \_\_\_\_\_ impossible for them to be put in a satellite.  
A. be                      B. is                      C. would be                      D. was
14. But that he came to help me , I \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. could not have succeeded                      B. could not succeed  
C. did not succeed                      D. can't but succeed
15. His parents didn't want to buy him a motor cycle \_\_\_\_\_ he might have an accident sometime.  
A. in order that                      B. unless  
C. so that                      D. lest
16. But for the leadership of the party , we \_\_\_\_\_ such great achievements.  
A. shall not make                      B. could not have made  
C. should not make                      D. can not have made
17. \_\_\_\_\_ you be interested , I have a book on the subject you might like to see.  
A. Should                      B. Would                      C. Will                      D. Shall
18. \_\_\_\_\_ I realized the consequences , I would never have intended to get involved.  
A. When                      B. If                      C. Had                      D. Unless
19. Given more time and money , he \_\_\_\_\_ better than what it is.  
A. did                      B. had done



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

- C. would have done                      D. would do
20. Your examination results were quite satisfactory ,but \_\_\_\_\_ if you had spent less time in playing football ?  
A. wouldn't they be better              B. won't they be better  
C. wouldn't they have been better      D. won't they have been better
21. I know it will be difficult to pick him out in such a crowd ,but if you \_\_\_\_\_ happen to see him ,give him this note.  
A. might              B. could              C. should              D. would
22. I would have asked him to attend our gathering but I \_\_\_\_\_ his address.  
A. didn't know                              B. hadn't know  
C. don't know                                D. wouldn't known
23. The stubborn young man did not follow the advice that he \_\_\_\_\_ on his behavior since he refused to believe he had done anything wrong.  
A. reflect                                      B. had reflected  
C. would reflect                              D. must reflect
24. It was suggested that a special committee of five members \_\_\_\_\_ to investigate the case.  
A. are appointed                              B. be appointed  
C. appointed                                    D. would appoint
25. In the past men generally preferred that their wives \_\_\_\_\_ in the home.  
A. worked              B. would work              C. work              D. were working
26. The final recommendation was that the employee on probation( 在试用期中 ) \_\_\_\_\_ a special night class for one semester.  
A. has attended      B. attended              C. attends              D. attend
27. I think it advisable that he \_\_\_\_\_ for New York soon.  
A. will leave              B. may leave              C. leave              D. leaves
28. I \_\_\_\_\_ Professor Smith had taught me this question.  
A. believe              B. wish              C. deeply think              D. am guessing
29. If it \_\_\_\_\_ too much trouble ,I'd love a cup of tea.  
A. isn't              B. weren't              C. wasn't              D. hadn't been
30. Most insurance agents would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anything about collecting claims until they investigate the situation.  
A. do              B. didn't do              C. don't do              D. have done
31. He looked as if he \_\_\_\_\_ ill for a long time.





· 第五章 虚拟语气 ·

- A. was                      B. has been                      C. were                      D. had been
32. He talks as if he \_\_\_\_\_ there.  
A. were really                      B. had really been  
C. has really been                      D. would really be
33. I didn't go to the party , but I do wish I \_\_\_\_\_ there.  
A. was                      B. had been                      C. were                      D. went
34. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. I know how to program the new computer  
B. I how know to program the new computer  
C. I knew how to program the new computer  
D. I do know how to program the new computer
35. If the United States had built more homes for the poor in 1955 , the housing problems now in some parts of this country \_\_\_\_\_ so serious.  
A. wouldn't be                      B. wouldn't have been  
C. will not have been                      D. would not have been
36. Tom might have come to school in time for the lecture \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. if he got up earlier                      B. unless he had got up earlier  
C. but he got up rather late                      D. but he had gotten up late
37. " I met Tom and told him about my plan. " \* I would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ him about it. "  
A. hadn't told                      B. not to tell  
C. didn't tell                      D. not to have told
38. It is high time she \_\_\_\_\_ her toys away.  
A. put                      B. puts                      C. has put                      D. is putting
39. I hadn't expected James to apologize but I had hoped \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. him calling me                      B. that he would call me  
C. him to call me                      D. that he call me
40. I intended \_\_\_\_\_ the subject with you , but I was too busy then.  
A. having discussed                      B. to discuss  
C. to have discussed                      D. discussing

II. 改错题

1. If the weather were fine next week , we shall go on a picnic.  
A                      B                      C                      D



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

2. I don't think it advisable that he will be assigned to the job since he has no experience whatsoever.  
A B C D
3. When Edison died , it was proposed that the American people turned off all power in their homes , streets , and factories for several minutes in honor of this great man.  
A B C D
4. I'd rather you would go by train , because I can't bear the idea of your being in an airplane in such bad weather.  
A B C D
5. Without air , we are forced to seek shelter from the sun , as there would be no atmosphere to protect us from the sun's deadly rays.  
A B C D
6. If John were to resign and if Henry were elected to take his place , we should have had more vigorous leadership.  
A B C D
7. Many dead would now be alive if they would not have attempted to return for something.  
A B C D
8. If her grandfather would have lived three more days he would have been 100 years old.  
A B C D
9. Would I have had more time , I would have written a much better and far more attractive resumé for myself.  
A B C D
10. I intend to move that our committee appoints Tom as chairman , and I hope that you will second my motion.  
A B C D
11. If he had laid quietly under the tree as he had been instructed to do , we would have found him.  
A B C D
12. If the terms had been better , the borrower would accept the bank's proposal  
A B



· 第五章 虚拟语气 ·

- even though he disagreed with some of the conditions.  
C D
13. If the resources of forest and water power were more fully developed the  
A B  
economy would not have been so dependent on import.  
C D
14. Had they known the snowstorm would be so treacherous , the traveler  
A B  
did not venture into it without proper equipment.  
C D
15. Educators are now recommending that reasoning skills are emphasized in the  
A B  
classroom since recent tests indicate that many teachers in the past  
C  
have ignored these skills.  
D
16. I often wonder what my life would be like if I didn't go to the beach that  
A B C  
afternoon when I was 14.  
D
17. It is extremely necessary that you will realize that reading is not only a  
A B C  
physical and mental process.  
D
18. You would not feel tired this morning if you would go to bed at a reasonable  
A B C D  
hour last night.
19. If they had only listened to me we would see a most interesting film because  
A B C  
he was prepared to show it to us at that time.  
D
20. He said that the passenger must have had an accident ; otherwise he  
A B  
would arrive by that time.  
C D



## 第六章

# 非限定动词

非限定动词是谓语的非谓语形式,不受人称和数的限制,在句中  
可以作除谓语以外的其他任何成分。非限定动词有三种,即不定式、  
动名词和分词。

### 第一节 动词不定式

不定式具有动词的性质,在句中可有自己的宾语,并可被状语所  
修饰。同时还具有名词、形容词和副词的性质,在句中可作主语、宾  
语、表语、宾语补语、定语、状语等成分。



## 一、动词不定式作主语

- ▶▶ 1. 不定式短语可放在句首作动词 be, seem, appear 等词的主语。

例 To study the structure of the plant is necessary for every student learning agriculture.

对学习农业的学生来说,研究植物的结构是非常必要的。

To become a good teacher was my hope.

成为一名好老师曾是我的愿望。

- ▶▶ 2. 在现代英语中,经常把代词 it 放在句首作形式主语,而把真正的主语(不定式)放在句末。

例 It is impossible for her to buy the car with cash.

要她用现金买那辆车是不可能的。

It took us three weeks to finish the work.

我们花了三周时间才完成了那项工作。

It is very kind of you to help us. 谢谢你来帮助我们。

[ of you 是 to help us 的逻辑主语 ]

## 二、动词不定式作表语

动词不定式可作表语,通常说明或解释主语的内容,也可表示将来的动作。

例 Our purpose is to finish the job in three weeks.

我们的目的就是要在三周之内完成这项工作。

The duties of a postman are to deliver letters and newspapers.

邮递员的任务就是投递信件和报纸。

## 三、动词不定式作宾语

- ▶▶ 1. 英语中有一部分动词常跟不定式作宾语。

例 She hopes to get something from the sales.

她希望从大减价中买到一些好东西。

I guarantee to pay off his debt. 我保证付清他的债务。

The children refused to listen to me. 这些小孩不肯听我的话。



常这样用的词有：

agree 同意	fail 未能	promise 保证
afford 担负得起	forget 忘记	prove 证明
arrange 安排	guarantee 确保	refuse 拒绝
ask 要求	happen 碰巧	resolve 决心
attempt 试图	hesitate 犹豫	seek 试图
bother 麻烦	hope 希望	seem 似乎
care 愿意	learn 学会	tend 倾向于
choose 愿意	long 渴望	threaten 威胁
claim 声称	manage 设法	trouble 麻烦
consent 同意	neglect 忽视	try 努力
decide 决定	offer 提出	undertake 承担
demand 要求	plan 打算	volunteer 志愿
determine 决定	prepare 准备	want 想要
determined 决心	pretend 假装	wish 希望
endeavor 努力	proceed 继续	

- 2. 如果动词不定式作宾语而又跟宾补,这时要用“it”作形式宾语,而将不定式放到补语的后面。

例 I believed it wrong to tell it to her.

我认为把这件事告诉她是错误的。

I feel it an honor to be asked to speak here. 我很荣幸被邀请在此讲话。

#### 四、不定式作宾补

- 1. 有些动词后面常接不定式短语作宾语补足语。

例 She wished those books to be returned sooner.

她希望那些书能尽早归还。

My parents won't allow me to stay out late.

我的父母不允许我在外面待得很晚。

常这样用的动词有：



advise 劝告	command 指挥	force 迫使
allow 允许	encourage 鼓励	instruct 指示
ask 要求	entitle 给……权利	intend 打算要
beg 请求	expect 期望	invite 邀请
compel 强迫	forbid 禁止	like 喜欢
mean 意欲	prefer 宁愿	tempt 引诱
oblige 迫使	remind 提醒	urge 激励
order 命令	request 要求	want 想要
permit 允许	teach 教	wish 希望
persuade 说服		

- ▶▶ 2. 在某些动词短语 vote for , call on , count on , rely on , depend on , long for , wait for 等后面 , 也可以跟 to 不定式作补语。

例 You can't depend on him to come punctually.

你不能指望他准时来。

We are longing for the holiday to come. 我们渴望着假日的来临。

- ▶▶ 3. 在 think , consider , believe , find , feel , know , declare , guess , prove , suppose , imagine 等词后面 , 常跟“to be + 形容词(也可以是名词或反身代词)”结构 , 但是 to be 常可以省去。

例 We sometimes imagine a desert island ( to be ) a sort of paradise , where the sun always shines.

我们有时把荒岛想像成乐园一样的地方 , 那里终日阳光普照。

I consider him ( to be ) my best friend. 我将他视为我最好的朋友。

## 五、不定式作定语

- ▶▶ 1. 不定式用在 the first , the second , the last , the only 等短语后面作定语。

例 He was the first to arrive. 他是第一个到的人。

She was the only one to survive the crash.

她是这次失事中唯一的幸存者。

- ▶▶ 2. 不定式常放在某些名词和代词后面作定语。

不定式作定语与被修饰的中心词之间常表现为主谓关系、动宾关



系、同位关系或动状关系等。

例 I'm not sure which restaurant to eat at.

我还没决定在哪家饭店吃饭。[ 动宾关系 ]

We are in need of nurses to look after the children.

我们需要保育员来照看这些孩子。[ 主谓关系 ]

He gave me a week to make up my mind.

他给我一周的时间来下决心。[ 动状关系 ]

Their decision to give up the experiment surprised us.

他们放弃这个实验的决定使我们吃惊。[ 同位关系 ]

常这样用的名词有：

ability 能力	failure 失败	refusal 拒绝
agreement 同意	intention 打算	reluctance 不情愿
ambition 雄心	hope 希望	resolution 决定
anxiety 焦急	need 需要	tendency 倾向
attempt 意图	plan 计划	threat 威胁
claim 声明	promise 诺言	willingness 愿意
decision 决定	readiness 愿意	wish 希望
determination 决心		

►► 3. 如果作定语的不定式为不及物动词，其后要加介词。

例 They have no happiness to speak of. 他们没有幸福可言。

Children use pencils to write with. 孩子们用铅笔写字。

►► 4. “介词 + which + 不定式”作定语，which 代替前面的中心词。

例 I believe that is a proper standard by which to judge people.

我认为那是衡量人的一个合适的标准。

You have a number of topics from which to choose.

你有许多题目可以选择。

## 六、动词不定式作状语

►► 1. 不定式也可跟在某些形容词后面或动词后面作原因状语。

例 She wept to see him in such a terrible state.

看到他这种可怕的样子她哭了。





He was an idiot not to have realized it.

他真是个白痴,没有意识到这一点。

I have enjoyed my visit here. I'll be very sorry to leave.

我在这儿的访问很愉快,但遗憾的是我就要走了。

常跟不定式作原因状语的形容词有:

happy 幸福	astonished 吃惊	surprised 吃惊
glad 高兴	amazed 吃惊	sad 伤心
overjoyed 极度高兴		

- 2. 不定式作目的状语。不定式作目的状语既可放在句首也可放在句尾;为了加强语气,也可用“so as to do”或“in order to do”结构作目的状语。in order to 既可放在句首也可放在句尾,so as to 只能放在句尾。

例 I worked hard in order for my son to go to hospital.

我努力工作是为了能让儿子上医院看病。

To/In order to master English, you must spend much effort on it.

要掌握英语,你必须花大力气。

They did anything in order to/ so as to make money.

为了赚钱他们什么都做。

- 3. 不定式可与其他词搭配作结果状语。

(1) “too + adj. / adv. + to do”, 意为“太……而不能”。

例 They reached the station too late to catch the train.

他们到火车站太迟了,没有赶上火车。

He was too shrewd a businessman to accept the first offer.

他是个非常精明的商人,不可能接受第一个出价。

The problem was too complicated for us to solve.

那问题太复杂了,以至于我们无法解决。

(2) “only / all + too + adj. / adv. + to do ; too + adj. / adv. + not to do”, 意为“非常”。

例 I am only too pleased to accept your kind invitation.

我非常乐于接受你的盛情邀请。

We are all too willing to help you. 我们很乐于帮助你。



He is too wise not to solve the problem.

他非常聪明必能解决这个问题。

(3) “adj. / adv. + enough + to do”, 意为“足以……”。

例 She spoke slowly enough to make us hear her clearly.

她讲得很慢, 所以能使我们听清楚。

We found the newly-built hall big enough to hold 2000 people.

我们发现这个新建的大厅很大, 足以容纳 2000 人。

(4) “only (just) to do” 表示令人失望的, 不愉快的结果。

例 He hurried to the station just / only to learn that the train had left.

他急忙赶到车站, 结果得知火车已经开走了。

He went home from his holiday only to find that his house had been stolen. 他度假回到家, 结果发现家中被盗了。

(5) “so + adj. / adv. + as to do”; “such + n. + as to do” 表示结果。

例 She spoke so quickly as to make us not understand what she expressed. 她说得如此之快, 以至于我们都不理解她的意思。

He can't have done such a terrible thing as to keep you waiting for so long. 他不会做出这样糟糕的事——让你等这么长时间的。

(6) 有时也可用“介词 + there + be”结构, 不定式短语在句中作结果状语。

例 It was too late \_\_\_\_\_ any taxi.

A. to be                      B. being

C. to have                  D. for there to be

答案为 D。译文: 太晚了, 不可能有出租车了。

句中 for there to be any taxi 是由 there be 句型转换来的特殊形式的带逻辑主语的动词不定式, 作结果状语。

## 七、“连接词 + 动词不定式”的用法

连接词 what, how, when, where, whether 等 + 动词不定式”结构可作主语、表语、宾语等。

例 What to do next remains undecided. 下一步该做什么还未决定。

I wonder whether to write or phone.



我不知道应该写信还是打电话。

I asked him how to learn English. 我问他如何学习英语。

Our difficulty is where to get enough food.

我们的困难是到哪里去弄足够的食物。

注：有时这一结构也可跟在介词后面。例如：

I have no idea of how to solve the problem.

我不知道该如何解决这个问题。

## 八、动词不定式的逻辑主语

不定式在使用中可以有自己的逻辑主语，主要有两种形式。

- 1. “for + 名词(或代词的宾格) + 不定式”，既可放在句首也可放在句尾。

例 It for foreigners to study Chinese is difficult.

外国人学汉语是很难的。

It is important for him to attend the meeting.

出席这次会议对他很重要。

His idea is for us to go in two different cars.

他的想法是让我们分乘两辆不同的车。

- 2. 在表示人物性格、特征等形容词之后，常用 of 引出不定式的逻辑主语，of 引导的不定式短语只能放在后面作主语。

例 It was very nice of you to think so much of us.

你太好了，为我们考虑那么多。

It's very kind of you to help us. 谢谢你对我们的帮助。

How foolish of him to say so! 他说那样的话，多傻呀！

常用的这类形容词有：

absurd 荒唐的	clever 聪明的	good 好心的
bold 大胆的	considerate 考虑周到的	grateful 感激的
brave 勇敢的	courageous 有勇气的	honest 诚实的
careful 细心的	cruel 残忍的	kind 善良的



careless 粗心的	foolish 愚蠢的	nice 正派的
polite 有礼貌的	silly 愚蠢的	wicked 邪恶的
right 正确的	stupid 愚蠢的	wise 明智的
rude 无礼的	thoughtful 考虑周到的	wrong 错误的

## 九、不带 to 的动词不定式

- 1. 在表示感觉的动词如 feel, hear, see, watch, observe, listen to, look at, notice 以及使役动词 let, make, have 等后面作宾补的不定式要省去 to。

例 I felt the house shake. 我感觉房子在颤动。

His neighbor observed a stranger go into his house.

他的邻居看到有一个陌生人进了他的家。

Have you noticed her cry? 你有没有注意她哭了?

但如果变为被动语态时不能省去 to。

例 He was seen to take the money. 有人看见他拿了钱。

He was made to leave school by his father's death.

他父亲的去世使他不得不辍学。

- 2. help 后面的不定式, 可以带 to 也可以不带 to。但是, 当变为被动语态时, 不能省略 to。

例 She helped me ( to ) hang the curtains. 她帮我挂窗帘。

This book can help you ( to ) arrange your time scientifically.

这本书可以帮助你科学地安排时间。

The boy was helped by a woman to collect his scattered coins.

一个妇女帮那个男孩捡散落一地的硬币。

- 3. 不定式通常不能直接跟在介词后面, 但是可以接在介词 but 和 except 后面作宾语。

在这一用法中, 如介词前有实义动词 do, 介词后跟省去 to 的不定式, 否则, 要跟带 to 的不定式。

例 I don't have any choice except ( but ) to give up the plan.

除了放弃这个计划我别无选择。

There was nothing for them to do but remain silent.



除了保持沉默以外,他们没有别的办法。

I did not know what to do with the dying cat except clasp it to my bosom. 对这只快要死去的猫,我除了把它紧抱在怀里,再不知该怎么办。

- 4. 当主语部分有实义动词 do 时,作表语的不定式可以省略 to; 如没有实义动词 do,表语中的 to 不能省去。

例 What we can do is continue to wait. 我们所能做的就是继续等待。  
The thing for them to do is manage to raise enough money for the project. 他们要做的就是设法筹集到这项工程所需的足够的资金。

- 5. 在 cannot but, cannot help but, can't choose but, had better, would ( will, could ) you please, may ( might ) as well, would rather, would sooner 等习惯用法中跟不带 to 的不定式。

例 She cannot help but weep at the painful news.  
听到那令人悲痛的消息,她忍不住哭泣起来。  
I would sooner resign than work under that boss.  
我宁愿辞职也不愿在那个老板手下工作。  
Will you please drive me home? 可否拜托你开车送我回家?  
We had better start at once. 我们最好立刻开始。

- 6. 在用 and, rather than, or, than 等连接两个不定式并且作用相同时,常省略第二个不定式符号 to。

例 He always prefers to start early rather than ( to ) leave everything to the last minute. 他干什么总是尽早开始而不是拖到最后时刻。  
She started to shout and cry. 她开始大哭大叫。  
I intend to sit in the garden and write letters.  
我打算坐在花园里写信。  
I would rather ( sooner ) stay at home than go out with them.  
我与其和他们出去,不如呆在家里。

- 7. 在 why 和 why not 后常接不带 to 的不定式构成问句。

例 Why not come and see me tomorrow? 明天来找我怎么样?  
Why give up the plan? 为什么要放弃这个计划?



- 8. 在下列固定词组搭配中 ,如 let fall( 故意说出 ) ,let go( 放开 ) ,  
let slip( 失言 ,无意说出 ) ,make do( 凑合 ) ,make believe( 假  
装 ) ,hear say/hear tell( 听说 )等 ,要用不带 to 的不定式。

例 Can we make do with canned food tonight ?  
我们今晚能不能将就一下 ,吃罐头食品 ?  
Grant let fall one or two remarks about Rome.  
格兰特偶尔评论一下罗马。  
He made believe he was rich. 他假装富有。

### 十、to 后面省略动词原形的动词不定式

为了避免重复 ,常用省略了动词原形的动词不定式。

例 You may go if you want to ( go ). 如果你想去 ,你就去。  
I won't do it , unless I have to ( do it ).  
除非不得已 ,否则这事我是不会做的。

### 十一、动词不定式的时态

#### ►►1. 一般时。

一般式表示的动作和谓语动词表示的动作同时发生 ,或表示的动作发生在谓语动词表示的动作之后。

例 I heard him talk about it. 我听到他谈论那件事了。[ 同时发生 ]  
He made up his mind to sell the house.  
他下定决心要卖掉房子。[ 之后发生 ]

#### ►►2. 进行时。

不定式的进行时可用于表示该动作正在进行中 ,或与谓语动作同时进行。其形式为 “ to be + 现在分词 ”。

例 He appears/seems to be living in the area. = It appears/seems that he  
is living in the area. 他似乎就住在那里。  
I happened to be standing next to him when he collapsed.  
他突然倒下的时候 ,我恰好站在他身边。  
I promised to be waiting at the door when he came out.  
我答应过 ,当他出来时我将在门口等候。  
They were found to be doing an experiment. 发觉他们在做实验。



He is believed to be living in Mexico. 人们认为他住在墨西哥。

### ►► 3. 完成时。

不定式的完成式形式为“to have + 过去分词”，其用法如下：

(1) 假如不定式所表示的动作在谓语动词所表示的动作或状态之前发生，要用不定式的完成式。

例 She seems to have been ill. 她好像生过病。

We knew him to have once been arrested by the police.

我们知道他曾被警察逮捕过。

I happened to have come across the book once.

我碰巧曾经见过这本书。

He is said to have been a popular singer.

据说他已经是个很红的流行歌手了。

It is a great satisfaction to have revisited the city.

重访该城是件令人愉快的事。

(2) be, wish, hope, mean, intend, plan, want 等动词的过去式以及 would like, should like 与动词不定式的完成式连用，表示过去想做而未做的事。

例 I was to have met her at the station, but I forgot.

我本来要去车站接她，但忘记了。

I wanted to have attended the meeting.

我本来希望能出席那个会议。

I wished to have helped you, but I had no money then.

我本来想帮助你，但那时我没有钱。

He would like to have attended the meeting, but he was ill.

他原打算要去开会的，但却病了。

## 十二、动词不定式的否定形式

动词不定式的否定形式为“not + to do”。

例 They decided not to call off the plan. 他们决定不取消这个计划。

Try not to disappoint your parents. 请别让你的双亲失望。



### 十三、动词不定式的被动结构

---

- 1. 根据句意的需要,不定式常用被动语态。

例 To be obeyed was natural to her. 她生性要别人听命于她。

They will not allow such things to be done.

他们不允许这种事发生。

The matter remains to be discussed. 这件事还有待于讨论。

There are some problems to be solved at once.

有些问题要立刻解决。

- 2. 在 there be 引起的句子中,用来修饰主语的不定式可用被动式,也可用主动式。

例 There is a lot of work to do ( = to be done ) this week.

这周有许多工作要做。

There are some problems to solve ( = to be solved ).

有些问题要解决。

- 3. 当不定式与它修饰的词之间有动宾关系,并且与句子的主语在意思上有主谓关系时,虽然表示的意思为被动,但却用主动形式。

例 We have many difficulties to overcome. 我们有许多困难要克服。

I'll show you right path to take. 我会把正确的路线给你看。

- 4. 当不定式作表语(或宾补)形容词的状语,又与句中的主语(或宾语)有逻辑上的动宾关系时,虽然不定式有被动意义,但只能用主动形式。

例 Some books are interesting to read, but boring to learn.

有些书读起来很有趣,但学起来很乏味。

They found the subject hard to understand.

他们发现这个题目很难理解。





## 第二节 动 名 词

### 一、动名词作主语

- 1. 动名词可直接放在句首作主语。

例 Seeing is believing. 眼见为实。

Learning a foreign language is not easy.

学会一门外语是不容易的。

- 2. 动名词在“ It is no use/no good/ fun / a waste of time/ a good pleasure 等名词 + doing ”结构中作主语, it 为形式主语。

例 It is no good writing to him he never answers letters.

写信给他不妥, 他从不回信。

It is no use complaining; the company won't do anything about it.

抱怨是没用的, 公司是不会管的。

- 3. 动名词在“ It is useless/ nice/ good/ worthwhile 等形容词 + doing ”结构中作主语, it 为形式主语。

例 It is good playing chess after supper. 晚饭后下棋挺好。

It is useless speaking. 光说没用。

- 4. 动名词在“ There is( was )no + doing ”结构中作主语。

例 There is no denying that she is very efficient.

她效率高是不容否认的。

There is no telling what he is going to do. 不知道他准备做什么。

### 二、动名词作表语

动名词也可作表语, 用来表示主语的内容。

例 My hobby is collecting stamps. 我的嗜好是集邮。

Seeing is believing. 眼见为实。



### 三、动名词作宾语

#### ►► 1. 有些动词后面要求跟动名词作宾语。

例 He admitted borrowing the book. 他承认借过这本书。

I don't anticipate meeting any opposition.

我估计不会遇到任何反对意见。

Will you admit having broken the window?

你承认不承认你打破窗户?

I imagined becoming a writer in my childhood.

在孩提时代,我想成为一名作家。

常见要求跟动名词作宾语的动词有:

admit 承认	excuse 原谅	postpone 拖延
anticipate 期望	fancy 想像	practise 练习
appreciate 欣赏	finish 完成	prevent 防止
avoid 避免	forbid 禁止	propose 建议
consider 考虑	forgive 宽恕	recollect 回忆
delay 耽搁	imagine 想像	resent 厌恶
deny 否认	involve 涉及	resist 抵制
detest 厌恶	keep 保留	risk 冒险
dislike 讨厌	mind 在意	save 挽救
dread 害怕	miss 错过	suggest 建议
enjoy 喜欢	pardon 原谅	understand 理解
escape 逃避	permit 允许	

#### ►► 2. 有些动词短语后也要求跟动名词作宾语。

例 He put off making a decision till he had more information.

在获得详情之前,他没有急于作出决定。

The shirt can't stand washing. 这件衬衫不耐洗。

Do you feel like taking a walk? 你要不要去散步?

常这样用的动词短语有:



can't stand 忍不住	can't help 忍不住
feel like 想 欲	give up 放弃
put off 推迟	

►►3. 动名词常在介词或介词短语后面作宾语。

例 We are sorry for not having informed you of the matter.

很抱歉 我们没告诉你那件事。

He should study instead of watching TV.

他应该学习 不应该看电视。

I'm looking forward to seeing you at Christmas.

我盼着在圣诞节见到你。

常这样用的介词短语有 :instead of ,look forward to ,object to ,keep on ,see about ,take to 等。

►►4. 在“ have difficulty( trouble ,problem ,a hard time ,fun ,a good time )( in ) + 动名词 ;be busy( in ) + 动名词 ;waste time( in ) + 动名词 ;be long( in ) + 动名词 ;lose time( in ) + 动名词 ; There is no point( in ) + 动名词 ”等结构中 ,动名词作介词 in 宾语 ,in 常省去。

例 I wasted an hour going to the library only to find it was closed.

我花了一个小时到图书馆 却发现它没开。

He has difficulty fulfilling the task. 他完成这个任务有困难。

The children are busy doing their homework. 孩子们正忙于做作业。

There is not much point ( in ) arguing any further.

再议论下去也没多大意义。

►►5. 在复合宾语中 ,用 it 作形式宾语 将动名词短语放在后面。

例 I consider it a waste of time arguing about it.

我认为争论这事是浪费时间。

He thought it absolutely senseless attempting the impossible.

想做不可能做到的事 他认为是完全没道理的。

►►6. 动名词可接在表示征询意见的 “ How about ... ? ” “ What about ... ? ”后面作宾语。

例 How about listening to classical music ? 听点古典音乐怎么样 ?



What about going to the movies ? 去看电影好不好 ?

#### 四、动名词的逻辑主语

- 1. 动名词前可加一名词所有格、人称代词宾格、形容词型物主代词和名词普通格构成动名词的逻辑主语。

例 My daughter staying up so late worried me.

我女儿睡得很晚令我担心。

I am not in favor of mother selling the old home.

我不赞同母亲卖掉老房子。

Their coming to help was a great encouragement to us.

他们的支援对我们是很大的鼓舞。

I object to his/ him making private calls on the office phone.

我反对他因私事使用办公室的电话。

- 2. 当逻辑主语是无生命的东西时,只能用普通格,不能用所有格。

例 I was afraid of the tent falling down during the night.

我害怕帐篷在夜间倒塌。

I knew nothing about the window being open.

我一点儿也不知道窗户开着。

- 3. 当逻辑主语是不定代词或指示代词时,只用宾格,不用所有格。

例 She was awakened by someone knocking at the door.

她被某人的敲门声弄醒了。

Is there any likelihood of this being true ? 这可能是真的吗 ?

- 4. 当逻辑主语是较长的名词词组时,一般用普通格,不用所有格。

例 The leader insisted on Li Ming, Wang Hai and Zhang Fan attending the meeting. 领导坚持让李明、王海和张帆出席会议。

Is there any chance of the people in the back of the room talking a little louder ? 屋子后面的人讲话能大声一点吗 ?

- 5. 在“there be”结构当中,be 为动名词时,该结构也是一种带逻辑主语的动名词形式。



例 We can imagine there being a lot of fuss about it.

我们可以想像到人们对此大惊小怪。

Were you disappointed at there not having been more gifts?

你对没有更多的礼物感到失望吗?

## 五、动名词的时态

►► 1. 一般式。动名词的一般式所表示的动作与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生,或在谓语动词表示的动作之前或之后。

例 We can't understand his/him acting like that.

我们不明白,为什么他会那样做。

By reviewing the old, you can learn something new. 温故而知新。

They are all interested in climbing mountains.

他们都对登山很感兴趣。

►► 2. 完成式。如果强调动名词表示的动作在谓语动词所表示的动作之前发生,常用动名词的完成式形式。

例 I have no idea of their having done such a thing.

我不知道他们做过这样的事。

Mary regrets having been idle when young.

玛丽很后悔年轻时虚度时光。

## 六、动名词的被动式

►► 1. 根据句意的需要,也可用动名词的被动式。其形式为“being + 过去分词”。

例 He narrowly escaped being run over. 他险些被车压死。

I don't remember having ever been given such a book.

我记不得曾给过我这样一本书。

►► 2. 在动词 need, require, want, deserve 后,用动名词的主动形式表示被动意义。其用法相当于不定式的被动结构。

例 The watch needs repairing. (= The watch needs to be repaired. )

这块表需要修理。

The problem deserves thinking about. (= The problem deserves to be



thought about. ) 这个问题值得考虑。

- ▶▶ 3. 在( be ) worth 后面只能用动名词的主动语态来表示被动意义。

例 That is a good book worth reading.

那是一本非常值得一读的好书。

His suggestion is worth considering. 他的提议值得考虑。

### 第三节 分 词

分词有现在分词( -ing )和过去分词( -ed )两种。它们在语态和时态方面的含义有较大差别。一般说来,现在分词表示的意义是主动和进行,过去分词表示的意义是被动和完成。例如:

running water 自来水

floating wreckage 漂浮着的残骸

dripping taps 滴着水的水龙头

growing crops 生长中的庄稼

the exploited class 被剥削阶级

the flowers gathered this morning 今天早晨采摘的花

fallen leaves 落叶

boiled water 开水

#### 一、分词作表语

现在分词作表语常常表示主动关系或主语的某种特性,过去分词作表语表示被动关系或表示主语处于某种状态。通常情况下现在分词( -ing )意为“令人……的”,过去分词( -ed )意为“感到……”。

例 The situation is encouraging. 形势令人鼓舞。

They were very excited at the news. 听到这个消息,他们非常激动。

The door remained locked. 门锁上了。[ 被动关系 ]

The weather of this summer is disappointing.

今年夏天的天气令人失望。[ 主动关系 ]



## 二、分词作定语

- 1. 分词作定语既可放在所修饰的词之前,作前置定语,也可放在所修饰的词之后,作后置定语。其作用相当于一个定语从句。

例 Where are the reserved seats? (=Where are the seats which have been reserved?) 预订的座位在哪?

This is a pressing problem. (=This is a problem which is pressing.) 这是一个紧迫的问题。

The people working with me ( who work with me ) treat me like their friend. 和我一起工作的人待我就像他们的朋友一样。

Those ( who have been ) elected as committee members will attend the meeting. 当选为委员的人将出席这次会议。

- 2. 分词作后置定语可分为限制性(紧跟在所修饰的中心词之后)和非限制性(用逗号与其所修饰的中心词分开)两种,其作用分别相当于一个限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句。

例 The funds raised ( = which have been raised ) are mainly used for helping the homeless.

筹集的资金主要用来帮助那些无家可归的人。

There are many students waiting ( = who are waiting ) to get examined. 有许多学生等着检查。

This book , written ( = which is written ) in simple English , is suitable for beginners.

本书是用浅显的英语写的,适合初学者。

This book , dealing ( = which deals ) with English composition , was written by a professor. 这本书讲英语写作,是一位教授写的。

- 3. 分词常和形容词、副词或名词构成合成形容词作定语。

例 China is a peace-loving country. 中国是爱好和平的国家。

The flower-carrying girl must be waiting for someone.

那位手持鲜花的姑娘一定在等人。

The air-conditioned rooms are very comfortable in hot summer.

在炎热的夏天,装空调的房间非常舒服。

The newly-built building is our office building.



这座新建的大楼是我们的办公楼。

- 4. 有些不及物动词的过去分词作定语,并不表示被动的意思,而是表示完成。这类过去分词常作前置修饰语。

例 There are a lot of fallen leaves in autumn. 秋天有许多落叶。

The film describes the story about the police who pursue an escaped man. 这部电影描述的是警察抓逃犯的事。

常用的这一类词有:fallen, faded, returned, retired, risen, grown up, vanished 等。

### 三、分词作宾语补足语

- 1. 常跟分词作宾补的动词有:catch, have, get, keep, hear, find, feel, leave, make, want, start, notice, observe, watch, set 等。

例 I could feel my heart beating very fast after playing basketball for an hour. 打了一个小时篮球之后,我能感觉到我的心脏跳得很快。  
[ 现在分词表示主动 ]

When they returned home from the holiday, they found their house stolen. 当他们度假回到家时,发现家中被盗了。[ 过去分词表示被动 ]

- 2. 在复合宾语中,用现在分词作宾补,说明宾语是动作的发出者,形成逻辑上的主谓关系;用过去分词作宾补,表示宾语是动作的承受者,构成逻辑上的动宾关系。

例 There was so much noise that the speaker couldn't make himself heard. 由于太吵,讲话人没法让人听到他的声音。

There is something wrong with the table; I can feel it moving.

这桌子有毛病了,我感到它在动。

When he awoke, he found himself being looked after by an old woman. 当他醒来时,发现有一位老大娘正在照顾他。[ 现在分词的被动式,强调正在进行中的被承受的动作 ]

- 3. have, get 后面跟宾语补足语的几种用法。

(1) have sb. doing sth. “让某人老是做某事”。

例 The boss had Tom running upstairs and downstairs all the time.





老板总是让汤姆楼上楼下跑个不停。

(2) have ... done“ 请人做某事 ,使某事发生 ”。

例 If you don't get out of my house , I'll have you arrested.

如果你不离开我家 ,我要叫人逮捕你。

You'd better have ( get ) your hair cut. 你最好理个发。

They had ( got ) a wedding picture taken yesterday.

他们昨天拍了结婚照。

#### 四、分词作状语

- 1. 分词或分词短语作状语时 ,可以表示时间、原因、让步 ,条件 ,方式或伴随状况。通常可转换成相应的状语从句 ;表示方式或伴随状况时可以转换成并列句或非限制性定语从句。

例 Hearing the knock on the door ( = When they heard the knock on the door ) , they stopped talking. 听见有人敲门 ,他们停止了谈话。

Confined to bed ( = Because she was confined to bed ) , she needed to be waited on in everything. 她卧病在床 ,什么事都需要人伺候。

Studying hard ( = If you study hard ) , you must pass the exam.

如果努力学习 ,你一定会通过考试的。

They stood there waiting for the bus. 他们站在那里等公共汽车。

( = They stood there and waited for the bus. )

The bandits fled into the mountains , pursued by the policemen.

( = The bandits fled into the mountains , who were pursued by the policemen. ) 匪徒向山里逃窜 ,警察在后面追赶着。

- 2. 有时为了强调 ,分词前可带 when , while , if , though , as if , unless 等连词一起作状语 ,以便使句子的意思更清楚、更连贯。

例 You must observe the local conventions when visiting a foreign country. 访问一个国家时 ,你应当遵守当地的风俗习惯。

Almost all English prepositions when turned into Chinese look like verbs. 译成汉语时 ,几乎所有的英语介词看起来都像动词了。

Though tired , he still continued reading.

虽然很累了 ,但他仍然在看书。



### ►►3. 现在分词和过去分词作状语时的用法比较。

不管是现在分词还是过去分词单独作状语,其逻辑主语必须与主句的主语一致。分词作状语通常可转换成一个相应的状语从句,如果状语从句中的谓语动词为被动结构,就用过去分词;如果状语从句中的谓语动词为主动结构,就用现在分词。

例 Working hard ( If you work hard ), you will succeed.

努力工作,你会成功的。

When visiting a strange city ( = When I visit a strange city ), I like to have a guidebook with me.

在一个陌生的城市游览时,我喜欢随身携带一个旅游手册。

Defeated ( = Though he was defeated ), he remained a popular boxer.

虽然被击败了,但他仍然是一位受人喜爱的拳击手。

## 五、分词的独立结构

►►1. 分词作状语时,要特别注意其逻辑主语须和谓语动词的主语一致。否则,分词必须有自己的主语,这种带主语的分词被称为分词的独立结构,或叫独立主格,在句中作状语表示时间、原因、条件等。

例 The project finished, they had a two weeks' leave.

完成那个计划后,他们休了两周假。

Weather permitting, we shall start tomorrow.

如果天气允许,我们将在明天出发。

He being absent, nothing could be done.

由于他缺席,什么事也没法干。

Everything taken into consideration, your work is well done.

从各方面来看,你的工作干得不错。

►►2. 独立结构有时也可用“ with ( without ) + 名词(或代词的宾格) + 分词”的结构,表示伴随情况。

例 They sat there silently, ( with ) their eyes fixed on the lake.

他们静静地坐在那里,眼睛看着湖面。

With him helping me, I felt lucky. 有他帮助我,我很幸运。

They traveled a whole day, without any food eaten.



他们旅行了一整天,没吃任何东西。

## 六、垂悬分词

现在分词作状语,其逻辑主语应与句子的主语一致,但有时现在分词的主语与其所在句中的主语并不一致,这种现在分词就被称为垂悬分词。这种用法常常被认为是一种不规范或错误的用法,容易造成歧义,应尽量避免这一用法。

例 Walking down the street, a tall building came into view.

当我们沿着街走的时候,看见了一座高楼。

Granting these differences, the service was service.

我们姑且承认这些区别,但礼拜还是礼拜。

有时,现在分词用来表示说话人的一种态度,这种现在分词已变成一种固定词组,可以看做是一种句子的独立成分。

例 Judging from what he said, he must be an honest man.

从他所说的来判断,他一定是一个诚实的人。

Generally speaking, women cry more easily than men.

一般而言,女人比男人更容易哭。

常用的这一类分词短语有:

Generally speaking, ... 一般地说, ...

Strictly speaking, ... 从严格意义上来说, ...

Broadly speaking, ... 从广义上来说, ...

Judging from ... , 从...来判断, ...

Allowing for ... , 考虑到, ...

## 七、分词的时态

### ►► 1. 一般式。

分词的一般式表示的动作和谓语动词表示的动作同时发生,或在谓语动词表示的动作之前发生。

例 I saw the two old men playing chess in the park.

我看到有两位老人在公园下棋。

I found the flowers watered. 我发现这些花已经被浇过了。

### ►► 2. 完成式(只有现在分词有完成式)。



现在分词的完成式表示分词的动作发生在谓词动作之前,由“having + 过去分词”构成。

例 Professor Li, having heard the weather forecast, took a raincoat with him. 李教授在听了天气预报后,带了件雨衣。

Not having made adequate preparations, we postponed the sports meet. 由于没有做好充分准备,我们推迟了运动会。

### ▶▶ 3. 延续性动词和终止性动词的现在分词在时间含义上的区别。

延续性动词的现在分词一般表示分词动作和谓语动词的动作同时发生,终止性动词的现在分词一般表示分词动作发生以后,谓语动词动作随即发生。

例 Walking in the street the other day, I came across an old friend of mine. 前几天在街上散步的时候,我碰到了一位老朋友。[ 延续性动词的现在分词 ]

Arriving at the airport, I found my flight had taken off.

我到达机场时,发现飞机已经起飞了。[ 终止性动词的现在分词 ]

### ▶▶ 4. 现在分词的完成式和不定式完成式的区别。

两者都表示某动作发生在谓语动词之前,但前者一般只用作状语,后者则用作除状语以外的任何其他成分,在谓语的复合结构中尤为常见。

例 Having completed my task, I went home.

完成了任务之后我就回家了。

He is said to have studied hard and passed the exam.

据说他学习非常刻苦,并通过了考试。

## 八、现在分词的被动式

由“being + 过去分词”构成,表示某一被动动作正在进行,实际上是由现在进行时被动语态的定语从句变来的。

例 You will find the matter being talked about all over the town. [ 作宾语补 ] 你会发现城里到处都在谈论这件事。

The methods being studied (which are being studied) are very useful.

正在研究的这些方法是非常有用的。

现在分词的被动式作状语时,可以省去 being,因此,与过去分词



作状语的用法无显著差别,一般说来可以通用。

例 The guests entered the office, ( being ) accompanied by the manager.

客人们在经理的陪同下进了办公室。

( Being )observed from the spacecraft, our earth looks like a blue ball.

从宇宙飞船上看,我们的地球像个蓝色的球体。

有时,我们还碰到现在分词的完成被动式。

例 Having been badly damaged by the earthquake, the city has to be rebuilt. 由于在地震中受到严重的破坏,那座城市不得不重新建设。

## 第四节 非谓语动词的用法比较

### 一、动名词作主语与不定式作主语的比较

不定式与动名词作主语一般来说差别不大,有时两者可以互换。但按照传统语法来说,动名词表示说话人的习惯、爱好或是抽象动作;而动词不定式表示具体的、一次性动作。

例 Smoking is prohibited here. 此处禁止吸烟。

It s not very good for you to smoke so much.

你抽那么多烟不太好。

A postman's duty is delivering mails. 邮递员的职责是投递邮件。

Your task this morning is to deliver the papers to Professor Smith.

你今天上午的任务是把这些论文送给史密斯教授。

注:在疑问句中,句首总用动名词,而不用不定式。例如:

\_\_\_\_\_ that mean anything to him?

A. Does our saying

B. Is our saying

C. Does for us say

D. Is for us to say

选 A。译文:我们说这话,对他能起作用吗?



## 二、动名词作宾语与不定式作宾语的比较

- 1. 在动词 start , begin , continue , cease 等后面 , 通常情况下不定式和动名词作宾语区别不大。

例 They start talking/to talk about the matter.

他们开始谈论那件事了。

She never ceased complaining/to complain about the prices.

她从未停止对物价的抱怨。

但是 , 在有些情况下 , begin 和 start 后面只能接不定式。如 : 谓语动词为进行式时 ; 主语为物时 ; 后接 understand 或 feel 等表示感觉或精神活动的动词时。

例 I'm beginning to feel better. 我渐渐觉得好些了。

He started to understand the situation. 他开始了解情况了。

The snow began to melt. 雪开始融化了。

如果表示长期性、习惯性行为的开始 , 则多用动名词。

例 How old were you when you began practicing the piano ?

你几岁开始学钢琴 ?

- 2. 在动词 like , love , hate , prefer 等后面 , 动名词表示抽象、习惯性的动作 , 不定式表示具体的、一次性的动作。

例 I prefer/like/love taking a walk after supper. 我喜欢晚饭后散步。

It is very hot today. I like/love/prefer to swim after dinner.

今天很热 , 我想饭后去游泳。

注 : 但是 , 如果在 like , love , prefer 前有 would , should 时 , 其后只能跟不定式。例如 :

I'd like to take part in the match. 我想参加这场比赛。

I should prefer to stay here. 我宁愿留在这儿。

- 3. 有些动词可接动名词或不定式 , 但意义不同。



例

You must remember to post my letter.

你一定要记住把我的信发了。[ to post 表示未完成的动作 ]

I remember posting the letter.

我记得发了那封信。[ posting 表示已完成的动作 ]

She forgot to tell her mother about it.

她忘了把这件事告诉她母亲。[ to tell 表示未完成的动作 ]

She forgot telling her mother about it.

她忘了曾告诉过母亲这件事。[ telling 表示已完成的动作 ]

I regret to say that I can't come.

我很抱歉 不能来了。[ regret to do 对尚未做的或正在做的事表示遗憾 ]

I regret spending ( having spent ) so much money.

我很懊悔花了这么多的钱。[ regret doing 对所做过的事情表示后悔 ]

He stopped ( quit ) to smoke.

他停下来开始吸烟。[ stop to do 表示停下来去做另一件事。stop/quit 为不及物动词 不定式在此作目的状语 ]

He stopped ( quit ) smoking.

他戒了烟。[ stop doing 表示不再做某事了。stop/quit 为及物动词 动名词在此作宾语 ]

I don't mean to give up the plan.

我不打算放弃那个计划。[ mean to do 表示“打算做……”]

A breakdown on our way would mean our walking for hours.

汽车半路抛锚意味着我们要步行几个小时。[ mean doing 表示“意味着……”]

She proposes to catch the early train.

她打算去赶早班火车。[ propose to do 表示“打算”做…… ]

She proposes catching the early train.

她建议赶早班火车。[ propose doing 表示“建议”做…… ]



I'll try to learn Spanish.

我要设法学会西班牙语。[ try to do 表示“设法做……”]

He tried cleaning the spot with alcohol.

他试着用酒精擦拭那污迹。[ try doing 表示“试着做……”]

After writing, he went on to read.

写完字后,他接着读书。[ go on to do 表示“接着做不同的事”]

He went on working without taking a rest.

他一直工作,没有停下来休息过。[ go on doing 表示“继续做相同的事”]

### 三、既可接动名词作宾语也可接不定式作宾补的某些动词的比较

有些动词(如 advise, allow, forbid, permit, recommend 等)后面既可接动名词,也可接不定式,但其作用完全不同。接动名词作宾语,接不定式作宾补。

例 The teacher didn't permit us to swim in this river.

老师不允许我们在这条河里游泳。

The prison authorities permit visiting only once a month.

监狱当局一月只允许探监一次。

We must not allow these temporary problems to affect our long-term plans. 我们一定不要让这些暂时的问题影响我们的长远计划。

The manager does not allow smoking in the office.

经理不许有人在办公室吸烟。

### 四、动名词作表语与现在分词作表语的比较

动名词作表语表示主语的内容,现在分词作表语表示主语的特征或属性。

例 The only thing that interests him is dancing.

他唯一感兴趣的就是跳舞。[ 动名词表示内容 ]

The book is very interesting.

这本书很有趣。[ 现在分词表示特征 ]





## 五、作表语的现在分词和构成进行时态的现在分词 的比较

作表语的现在分词表示主语所处的状态或特征 构成进行时态的现在分词表示主语正在进行的动作。

例 The present situation is encouraging.

当前的形势令人鼓舞。[ 分词作表语 ]

The present situation is encouraging us to continue our experiment.

当前的形势正在鼓舞我们继续实验。[ 分词构成进行时 ]

## 六、作表语的过去分词和构成被动语态的过去分词 的比较

作表语的过去分词表示主语所处的状态或特征 构成被动语态的过去分词表示主语是动作的承受者 强调的是动作。

例 The cup was broken. 杯子破了。[ 分词作表语 ]

The cup was broken by John.

杯子是被约翰打破的。[ 分词构成被动语态 ]

## 七、分词作宾补与不定式作宾补的比较

动词 see, hear, feel, notice, watch, observe 等既可跟现在分词也可跟动词不定式作宾补。它们之间的区别在于 : 现在分词着重说明动作正在发生 ; 不定式则着重说明动作的全过程。

例 I saw him cross the street. 我看到他穿越马路。

I saw a plane flying to the north. ( = A plane was seen flying to the north. ) 我看到一架飞机正朝北方飞去。

I watched her go out of the room.

我看到她走出房间。[ 强调的是过程 ]

I watched her going out of the room.

我看到她走出房间。[ 强调的是正在进行的动作 ]

## 八、不定式与分词作定语的比较

不定式与分词都可作定语 : 不定式作定语表示将来进行的动作 ;



现在分词作定语指正在进行的动作 ;过去分词作定语指过去进行的动作。

例 The question to be discussed is of great importance.

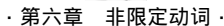
即将讨论的问题非常重要。

The question being discussed is of great importance.

正在讨论问题非常重要。

The question discussed is of great importance.

讨论过的那个问题非常重要。

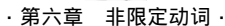


## I. 选择题

- 141



- C. to have been given                      D. to have given
11. Contrast may make something appear more beautiful than it is when \_\_\_\_\_ alone.
- A. seen    B. is seen  
C. to be seen                                      D. having been seen
12. There was a good program on TV yesterday evening , but I was too busy \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. to work at my thesis and to write it  
B. to work at my thesis watching it  
C. working at my thesis to watch it  
D. working at my thesis and watching it
13. My wife suggested \_\_\_\_\_ to Scotland for a holiday , but I favor \_\_\_\_\_ Wales instead.
- A. to go ... to visit                              B. to go ... visiting  
C. going ... visiting                              D. going ... to visit
14. \_\_\_\_\_ so much in the war has made him more thoughtful.
- A. His seeing                                      B. To have seen  
C. Having seen                                      D. For him to see
15. When visiting a foreign country , I sometimes found it difficult \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. making others understand me    B. to make myself understand  
C. to make others understand me    D. to make myself understood
16. Why do you stand and watch the thief \_\_\_\_\_ away ?
- A. running    B. to run                      C. ran                      D. run
17. When \_\_\_\_\_ at the door , she was given a warm welcome.
- A. appear    B. appeared    C. appearing    D. appears
18. If you want to buy an expensive camera , we have several models \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. to be chosen                                      B. to choose from  
C. to choose    D. for choosing
19. \_\_\_\_\_ from space , our earth , with water covering over 70% of its surface , appears as a " blue planet ".
- A. Seeing    B. Having seen    C. To see                      D. Seen
20. So many representatives \_\_\_\_\_ , the conference had to be postponed.
- A. to be absent    B. were absent    C. being absent    D. was absent
21. To see one time is better than \_\_\_\_\_ a hundred times.



- 143



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

- A. no deny      B. no denying      C. not deny      D. not denied
32. You are going to Australia next year. You must practice \_\_\_\_\_ English as much as possible.
- A. to speak                              B. having spoken  
C. speaking                              D. to have spoken
33. Our modern civilization must not be thought of as \_\_\_\_\_ in a short period of time.
- A. being created                              B. to have been created  
C. having been created                              D. to be created
34. The mother didn't know who \_\_\_\_\_ for the broken glass.
- A. blamed                              B. be blamed  
C. to blame                              D. would blame
35. Is there any hope of \_\_\_\_\_ the basket match ?
- A. your class winning                              B. you class winning  
C. your class's winning                              D. you class's winning
36. If the building project \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of this month is delayed ,the construction company will be fined.
- A. being completed                              B. to be completed  
C. is completed                              D. completed
37. Power stations employ \_\_\_\_\_ water to produce electricity.
- A. falling      B. fallen      C. filling      D. filled
38. Commercial banks make most of their income from interest \_\_\_\_\_ on loans and investments in stocks and bonds.
- A. earn      B. earned      C. earning      D. to earn
39. Young people should go and work wherever \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. needs      B. need      C. needing      D. needed
40. It takes about an hour to get there , \_\_\_\_\_ possible traffic delays.
- A. it allowing                              B. its allowing for  
C. to allow to                              D. allowing for
41. She had her arm \_\_\_\_\_ in the accident.
- A. to break      B. to be broken      C. broken      D. breaking
42. \_\_\_\_\_ , she went back to her room.
- A. There is no cause for alarm  
B. Being no cause for alarm



· 第六章 非限定动词 ·

- C. There being no cause for alarm  
D. Without having cause for alarm
43. He has a room of 5 meters long and 3 meters wide \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. which to live                      B. in which to live in  
C. in which to live                      D. which to live with
44. They found the lecture hard \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to understand                      B. for understanding  
C. to have understood                      D. understand
45. The leaders \_\_\_\_\_ us in our discussion , but owing to more important business they couldn't come.  
A. were to join                      B. were to have joined  
C. had been to have joined                      D. was to join
46. Why \_\_\_\_\_ at other shops ? We have the lowest prices in town.  
A. to pay much                      B. having paid much  
C. pay more                      D. for paying more
47. He listened to me \_\_\_\_\_ what Mr. Smith had said the day before.  
A. to repeat    B. to be repeated    C. to repeating    D. repeat
48. While reading the newspaper , \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a colorful advertisement caught my eyes  
B. my attention was attracted by an advertisement  
C. I was attracted by a colorful advertisement  
D. what attracted my eyes was a colorful advertisement
49. The little girl walked quietly into the room \_\_\_\_\_ awake her family.  
A. so as to    B. in order not to    C. so as to not    D. for not to
50. Having missed that last bus , Peter had no alternative \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi home though he did not like the idea.  
A. but take    B. to take out    C. take to but    D. but to take
51. Mr. Smith ran all the way up \_\_\_\_\_ that the train had left ten minutes before.  
A. to only find the station                      B. only to the station find  
C. to the station only to find                      D. the station to only find
52. I found \_\_\_\_\_ to solve all the problems with the time given.  
A. no possibility                      B. there was impossibility  
C. impossible                      D. it possible



53. The revolutionary fighter would rather die with his head high than \_\_\_\_\_ with his knees bent.  
A. to live      B. living      C. live      D. lived
54. Thank you for your cooperation. I'm really sorry to \_\_\_\_\_ your valuable time.  
A. take      B. be taking  
C. have had taken      D. have taken
55. \_\_\_\_\_, he refused to give any explanation.  
A. When asked to comment on the quality of the goods  
B. When he being asked to comment  
C. When asking to comment on the quality of the goods  
D. When he asked comment on the quality of the goods
56. The grandparents \_\_\_\_\_ when they saw the gold medal their grandson had got at the Olympic Games.  
A. couldn't help to smile      B. couldn't help smiling  
C. couldn't help but smiled      D. couldn't help from smiling
57. Henry would never forget \_\_\_\_\_ his mother-in-law for the first time. She was so pleased with the gifts he had brought to her.  
A. meet      B. to meet      C. meeting      D. met
58. The senior citizen wanted a quiet room for one night because he just couldn't stand \_\_\_\_\_ in a noisy room.  
A. sleep      B. and slept  
C. sleeping      D. being slept
59. Would you please \_\_\_\_\_ the listening comprehension script until you have listened to the tape?  
A. not to read      B. don't read  
C. not read      D. don't to read
60. He wasn't appointed chairman of the committee, \_\_\_\_\_ not very popular with all its members.  
A. to be considered      B. considering  
C. being considered      D. having considered

## II. 改错题

1. People cannot but feel puzzling, for they simply cannot understand how he  
A                      B                      C





· 第六章 非限定动词 ·

- could have made such a stupid mistake.  
D
2. Those part-time students expected to offer some jobs on campus during the  
A B C  
coming summer vacation.  
D
3. With production having gone up steadily , the factory needs an ever-increasing  
A B C  
supply of raw materials.  
D
4. He cannot tell the difference between true praise and flattering statements  
A B  
making only to gain his favor.  
C D
5. Beethoven , the great musician , wrote nine symphonies in his life , most of  
A  
them were written after he had lost his hearing.  
B C D
6. Mr. Jankin regretted to blame his secretary for the mistake , for he later  
A B C  
discovered it was his own fault.  
D
7. The Bunsen burner is so named because it is thought to be invented by Robert  
A B C  
Bunsen , who was German by birth.  
D
8. When I consider how talented he is as a painter , I cannot help but believing  
A B C  
that the public will appreciate his gift.  
D
9. The Portuguese give a great deal of credit to one man for having promoted sea  
A B C  
travel , that man was Prince Henry the navigator , who lived in the 15th  
D  
century.
10. Accounts of scientific experiments are generally correct , for those write about  
A B C  
science are careful in checking the accuracy of their reports.  
D
11. Whenever we hear of a natural disaster , even in a distant part of the world ,  
A B



- we feel sympathy for the people to have affected.  
C D
12. Some bosses dislike to allow people to share their responsibilities ; they keep  
A B  
all important matters tightly in their own hands.  
C D
13. Generally speaking , the bird flying across our path is observed , and the one  
A B  
staying on the tree near at hand is passed by without any notice taking of it.  
C D
14. Because of the recent accidents , our parents forbid my brother and me  
A  
from swimming in the river unless someone agrees to watch over us.  
B C D
15. In this way these insects show an efficient use of their sound-produced  
A  
ability , organizing two sounds delivered at a high rate as one call.  
B C D
16. According to Darwin , random changes that enhance a species' ability  
A  
for surviving are naturally selected and passed on to succeeding generations.  
B C D
17. Neither rain nor snow keeps the postman from delivering our letters which we  
A B  
so much look forward to receive.  
C D
18. The more than 50 000 nuclear weapons in the hands of various nations today  
A  
are more than ample destroying every city in the world several times over.  
B C D
19. The purpose of the United Nations , broadly to speak , is to maintain peace  
A B  
and security and to encourage respect for human rights.  
C D
20. Although we are concerned with the problem of energy sources , we must not  
A B  
fail recognizing the need for environmental protection.  
C D
21. Anthropologists assert that many of the early American plains did not engage  
in planting crops but hunt , living primarily on buffalo meat.  
A B C D



· 第六章 非限定动词 ·

22. If we finish all of our business as planning , Helen and I will leave for New York on Monday morning.  
A B C D
23. An organ is a group of tissues capable to perform some special functions , as , for example , the heart , the liver , or the lungs.  
A B C D
24. The bell signaling the end of the first period rang loudly , to interrupt the professor's closing comments.  
A B C D
25. It is extremely important for an engineer to use a computer.  
A B C D
26. Regardless of your teaching method , the objective of any conversation class should be for the students practicing speaking.  
A B C D
27. After reading the essay , he went on writing a letter.  
A B C D
28. After the long summer vacation , John found that not easy to concentrate on his study again.  
A B C D
29. We can supplement our own ideas with information and data gathering from our reading , our observation , and so forth.  
A B C D
30. Reading all the required material , he was able to answer all the questions on the examination.  
A B C D
31. The program was so exciting that the children kept their eyes fixing the television screen.  
A B C D
32. The Conservatives are trying to prevent the bill from passing.  
A B C D
33. Children , she believes , are supposed to answer politely when spoke to by an adult.  
A B C D
34. The holes on the tapes of computers allow electric current getting.  
A B C



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

through easily.

D

35. It is necessary that he guarantee meeting the staff's demands otherwise

A

B

C

they will go on strike.

D



# 第七章 名词

名词是表示人、事物、抽象概念的词。就其词汇意义来说可分为专有名词和普通名词。普通名词又可分为可数名词和不可数名词。本章就名词的数和格的形式及其作用作简要介绍。

## 第一节 不可数名词

### 一、在汉语中属可数范畴,但在英语中为不可数名词的某些词

物质名词、抽象名词、气体名词、液体名词、自然现象等名词均属



不可数名词。前面不能加不定冠词 a ( an ) , 词尾也不能加-s。

例 They bought some new furniture last week.

他们上周买了几件新家具。

I asked my teacher for advice on my future course.

我请老师对我未来的发展方向给些建议。

His advice to me was to work hard. 他给我的忠告是努力工作。

英语中常出现的这类名词如下：

advice 忠告	baggage( luggage )行李
bread 面包	chocolate 巧克力
clothing 衣服	damage 损坏
equipment 设备	food 食物
furniture 家具	hair 头发
homework 作业	housework 家务
information 消息	knowledge 知识
paper 纸	progress 进步
population 人口数	rice 米

## 二、不可数名词的量化表示

- 1. 虽然不可数名词不能直接在词尾加-s 表示数量的多少 ,但是可以用 pieces of 或某些修饰不可数名词的限定词( much , a lot of , an amount of , plenty of , a great deal of. . . )来表示。

例 There are several pieces of new furniture in the house.

房间里有几件新家具。

They have acquired many pieces of information.

他们已经获得了许多消息。

Much/A lot of/An amount of food has been sent to the old people.

已经给那些老人送去了许多食物。

- 2. 不可数名词虽然不能用加 a 或 one 的方式来表示“一 ..... ”, 但是可以通过某些单位词来表示。

例 Let me give you a piece of advice. 让我给你个忠告。

You are only allowed to take one piece of hand luggage onto a plane.



你只可携带一件手提行李上飞机。

There is only a bar of chocolate left. 只剩一块巧克力了。

►► 3. 英语中常用在不可数名词前表示单位的量词有许多。

例 a bag of flour	一袋面粉
a bottle of milk	一瓶牛奶
a bucket of water	一桶水
a burst of applause	一阵掌声
a cake/bar of soap	一块肥皂
a cup of coffee	一杯咖啡
a loaf of bread	一块面包
a lump of sugar	一块糖
a grain of rice	一粒米
a jar of jam	一瓶果酱
a piece/set of furniture	一件/套家具
a piece of paper	一张纸
a sum of money	一笔钱
a piece of work	一件活
a tube of toothpaste	一支牙膏

## 第二节 可数名词单复数变化的特殊形式

可数名词单数变复数通常在词尾加-s 或-es,但是有些名词的变化比较特殊。

### 一、单个名词单复数的特殊形式

►► 1. 以-sis 结尾的外来名词变为复数形式为-ses。

例 He is busy writing his theses which are the requirement to graduate and gain diploma. 他正忙于写论文,这是毕业取得文凭所必需的。  
The diagnoses in the two hospitals are the same.  
两家医院的诊断结果是相同的。  
常这样用的词有:



diagnosis—diagnoses 诊断	analysis—analyses 分析
thesis—theses 论文	axis—axes 轴
basis—bases 基础	emphasis—emphases 强调

►►2. 有些外来词的单复数形式,仍保留原来不规则的复数形式。

④例 Unemployment is a common phenomenon. 失业是一种常见现象。

These phenomena are often seen. 这些现象经常见到。

常这样用的词有:

bacterium—bacteria 细菌	criterion—criteria 准则
datum—data 数据	phenomenon—phenomena 现象
medium—media 媒介介质	child—children 小孩

►►3. 有些名词变为复数形式要变内部的元音。

foot—feet 脚	tooth—teeth 牙(齿)
mouse—mice 老鼠	man—men 男人
woman—women 妇女	

►►4. 有些名词的单复数相同,要根据上下文的意义来确定其单复数形式。

sheep 羊	fish 鱼
buffalo 水牛	deer 鹿
aircraft 飞机	shark 鲨鱼
giraffe 长颈鹿	

►►5. 有些名词虽以“s”结尾,但是单复数没有变化,要根据上下文的语义来决定其单复数形式。

④例 There has been a series of car accidents at the crossing.

在那个交叉路口曾经发生过一连串的车祸。

Several series of mishaps have brought her great loss.

几起连续不断的灾祸使她遭受了巨大的损失。

常这样用的词有:

means 手段,方法	series 系列
species 物种	bellows 风箱





barracks 兵营	headquarters 司令部
works 工厂 作品	

►► 6. 以“o”结尾的名词有些加-s, 有些加-es 构成复数形式。

大部分在词尾加-es	
cargo—cargoes 货物	echo—echoes 回声
hero—heroes 英雄	potato—potatoes 土豆
tomato—tomatoes 西红柿	
但某些外来词, 虽以 o 结尾, 仍只加-s	
auto—autos 汽车	kilo—kilos 公里
piano—pianos 钢琴	photo—photos 照片
以-oo 或元音字母加-o 结尾的词也只加-s	
bamboo—bamboos 竹子	zoo—zoos 动物园
radio—radios 收音机	ratio—ratios 比率

►► 7. 以“f”或“fe”结尾的名词, 多数变-f 为-v 再加-es。

half—halves 半	knife—knives 刀
leaf—leaves 叶	life—lives 生命
thief—thieves 小偷	wife—wives 妻子
但有些直接加-s	
belief—beliefs 信念	chief—chiefs 首领
cliff—cliffs 悬崖	proof—proofs 证据
roof—roofs 屋顶	safe—safes 保险柜

注: 有些名词只有复数形式, 如果单独作主语, 谓语动词用复数形式, 可以用 some 来修饰; 其他名词如果表示“一条(一副, 一把, 一双……)”, 通常要说 a pair of... 若作主语, 谓语动词用单数。如果表示“几条(几双, 几把, 几副……)”, 通常可说 pairs of... 若作主语, 谓语动词用复数。例如:

There are two pairs of black trousers. 有两条黑裤子。

The pair of shoes is expensive. 这双鞋很贵。



常这样用的词如下：

trousers 裤子	pants 裤子
overalls 工作裤	stockings 袜子
gloves 手套	socks 短袜
knickers 短裤	shorts 短裤
breeches 马裤	shoes 鞋
scissors 剪刀	spectacles 眼镜
shears 大剪刀	scales 天平
compasses 指南针	suspenders 吊带

## 二、只能用名词的复数形式

- 1. 有些表示较多数量的名词通常只用其复数形式。

例 My entire savings amount to only 100 dollars.

我全部的存款总计只有 100 美元。

Her wages are 300 dollars a week. 她的工资是每周 300 美元。

常这样用的词有：

ashes 灰尘	remains 遗骸
belongings 财产	savings 储蓄
commons 平民	stairs 楼梯
outskirts 郊区	surroundings 环境
lodgings 住处	wages 工资

- 2. 有些名词虽然形式上是单数,但只用作复数形式。

例 The police are searching the house. 警察正在搜查那所房子。

There were many people in the square. 广场上有许多人。

常这样用的词有：

cattle 畜牲	mankind 人类
militia 民兵	people 人民
police 警察	poultry 家禽
vermin 害虫	



### 三、集合名词的单复数形式

大多数集合名词 既可看做单数( 作为整体 ),也可看做复数( 作为集体的各个成员 )。

例 Her family was well known in the region.

她家在该地区是名门望族。

His family all work in the city. 他的家人都在这个城市上班。

常这样用的词有：

audience 观众	army 军队
class 班级	crowd 人群
crew 全体人员	committee 委员会
couple 对 ,双方	family 家
faculty 学校全体教职工	government 政府
group 小组	public 公众

### 四、合成名词的单复数变化形式

▶▶ 1. 合成名词的复数形式通常在主干词上加“ s ”。

例 brother-in-law—brothers-in-law 内弟

commander-in-chief—commanders-in-chief 总司令

comrade-in-arms—comrades-in-arms 战友

looker-on—lookers-on 旁观者

man-of-war—men-of-war 战舰

passer-by—passers-by 过路人

story-teller—story-tellers 讲故事的人

▶▶ 2. 如果没有主体名词 则在最后一个词尾加“ s ”。

例 grown-up—grown-ups 成年人

go-between—go-betweens 中间人

good-for-nothing—good-for-nothings 无用之人

forget-me-not—forget-me-nots 勿忘草

▶▶ 3. 有个别合成名词 其复数形式要求构成部分都作相应的变化。

例 a woman doctor—women doctors 女医生



a woman driver—women drivers 女司机

a man servant—men servants 男佣人

a man cook—men cooks 男厨师

## 五、具有双重特性的名词

### ►►1. 既可作可数名词又可作不可数名词的词。

有些名词既可作可数名词,又可作不可数名词,在意思上也有所不同。表示具体事物时是可数名词,作为抽象或物质名词时,便成为不可数名词了。常见的有:

a room 房间—room 空间

a chicken 一只鸡—chicken 鸡肉

a lamb 一只羊—lamb 羊肉

### ►►2. 某些不可数名词或可数名词加-s 或-es 后 意思发生了变化。

advice 劝告—advices 通知

green 绿色—greens 青菜

air 空气—airs 神气

good 好事—goods 货物

arm 手臂—arms 武器

iron 铁—irons 镣铐

brain 脑—brains 智力

look 看—looks 外表

authority 权威—authorities 当局

pain 疼痛—pains 努力

cloth 布—clothes 衣服

paper 纸—papers 文件

condition 情况—conditions 条件

regard 尊敬—regards 问候

content 内容—contents 目录

time 时间—times 时代

custom 风俗—customs 海关

water 水—waters 水域

force 力量—forces 军队

work 工作—works 作品

glass 玻璃—glasses 眼镜

### ►►3. 某些不可数名词表示物质或抽象概念时是不可数的,但表示这类或具体事物时是可数的。

beauty 美—a beauty 一个美人

glass 玻璃—a glass 一个玻璃杯

ice 冰—two ices 两杯冰激凌

iron 铁—an iron 一个熨斗

metal 金属—a rare metal 一种稀有金属

tea 茶—three teas 三杯茶



youth 青春—a youth 一个青年

### 第三节 名词的所有格

#### 一、“s”所有格的用法

名词的所有格通常在名词后加“s”构成。

- 1. “-’s”所有格多用于有生命的名词,表示所属关系或类别等。

例 my sister’s glasses 我姐姐的眼镜

children’s books 儿童读物

a manager’s car 经理的车

students’ rooms 学生的房间

- 2. 表示国家、城市等地方的名词,虽是无生命的,也多用“-’s”所有格形式。

例 the country’s industrialization 这个国家的工业化

the city’s parks 城市公园

America’s tax system 美国的税制

- 3. 表示自然现象的名词也多用“-’s”所有格形式。

例 the moon’s surface 月球表面

the earth’s atmosphere 地球的大气层

the sun’s rays 太阳的光线

- 4. 表示时间、距离、度量、金钱的名词,虽是无生命的,也可用“-’s”所有格形式。

例 a year’s time 一年的时间

today’s papers 今天的报纸

three weeks’ journey 三周的旅行

ten pounds’ weight 十磅的重量

a mile’s distance 一英里的距离

five dollars’ value 五美元的价值



- 5. 表示时间、距离、金钱、度量的名词可以和数词一起组成作定语复合结构。有时,该复合结构还可跟一个由连字符连接的形容词。

例 { a three-year study  
a study of three years  
three years' study 三年的研究

- 6. 复合名词的所有格一般是在词尾加“-’s”。

例 the editor-in-chief's office 总编室  
the go-between's words 中间人的话  
my sister-in-law's father 我嫂子的父亲

- 7. “-’s”所有格既可表示名词的所属关系,也可表示人们熟悉的建筑物、商店、理发店等的名称。

例 The reference book is John's. 这本参考书是约翰的。  
Have you been to St. Paul's? 你到过圣保罗教堂吗?  
the doctor's 诊所  
the baker's 面包店  
the stationer's 文具店  
the butcher's 肉店

- 8. “-’s”所有格也可用于人名后或表示人的名词后表示某人的家。但是,要注意人名后面加-s 与人名后面用-s' 所有格的不同意思。

例 We held a party at the Smith's yesterday.  
我们昨天在史密斯的家里举行了一个晚会。  
I often go to my uncle's. 我常到我叔叔家去。  
注意下列比较:

{ the Brown's 布朗的家  
the Browns 布朗一家人  
the Browns' 布朗一家的住处

- 9. 如果用 and 连接两个并列名词,表示共有关系时,只在后一个名词词尾加“-’s”;如果不是共有,则两个名词词尾都要分别加“-’s”。

例 Those are Tom's and Charley's bikes.



那是汤姆和查利的自行车。[ 两辆自行车 ]

Mary and her brother's car is very beautiful.

玛莉和她弟弟的车非常漂亮。[ 一辆车 ]

Japan and America's problems 日美的共同问题

Japan's and America's problems 日本和美国各自的问题

- 10. 当名词对后一个表示事物的名称起分类作用时,通常要用  
“- 's ”所有格。

例 a doctor's degree 博士学位 children's books 儿童书

- 11. 在有些固定搭配中常用“- 's ”所有格。

例 a bird's eye view 鸟瞰

a stone's throw 短距离

a hair's breadth 一发之差

at one's wit's end 不知所措

in one's mind's eye 在某人的心中

at arm's length 疏远

at one's finger's ends 了如指掌

to one's heart's content 尽情地

## 二、s 属格与通格的互用

用名词表示所有关系时,其属格和通格有时可以互用。

例 { her life's career  
her life career 她一生的工作  
{ consumer's goods  
consumer goods 消费品  
{ the Party's policy  
the Party policy 党的政策  
{ a 20 mile's journey  
a 20 mile journey 20 英里的旅程

## 三、of 所有格的用法

凡不能加“s”的名词,都可以与 of 构成短语,来表示所有关系。  
但在有些情况下只能用 of 所有格。



►► 1. 用于无生命的东西。

例 the object of the sentence 句子的宾语  
the end of the road 路的尽头

►► 2. 当定冠词加形容词或分词表示一类人时 ,要用 of 所有格。

例 the need of the sick 病人的需要  
the life of the poor 穷人的生活  
the struggle of the oppressed 被压迫人民的斗争

►► 3. 当名词部分太长或跟有后置修饰语时 ,要用 of 所有格。

例 Do you know the opinion of the committee appointed a few days ago ?  
你知道委员会几天前提出的建议吗 ?  
the statement of Jimmy Carter , the president of the United States  
美国总统吉米 · 卡特的声明

#### 四、双重所有格( of + 名词 s )

兼用“ s ”所有格和 of 所有格的结构被称为双重所有格 ,也称双重属格。

►► 1. 双重所有格所修饰的名词可以和不定冠词 a ( n ) ,any ,some ,  
no ,few 以及 several 等表示数量的词连用 ,表示部分概念 ,但  
不可以和定冠词 the 连用。

例 It was no fault of the doctor s . 那不是医生的错。  
Have you read any books of Dickens s ?  
你读过狄更斯的什么书吗 ?  
He has read some plays of Shakespeare s .  
他读过莎士比亚的几个剧本。

►► 2. 双重所有格所修饰的名词可以和不定代词 this ,that ,these ,  
those 等连用 ,表示某种感情色彩。

例 That silly uncle of yours had told me the same joke five times.  
你的那位傻叔叔把同一个笑话给我讲了 5 遍。  
These remarks of yours are of great value to us.  
你的这些话对我们很有帮助。

►► 3. 双重属格与 of 属格是有区别的。前者表示主谓关系 ,后者常



表示动宾关系。

- 例 { criticism of Tom's 汤姆提出的批评  
 { criticism of Tom 对汤姆的批评  
 { He is a friend of my husband's.  
 { 他是我丈夫的一个朋友。(强调我丈夫不止一个朋友)  
 { He is a friend of my husband.  
 { 他是我丈夫的朋友。(强调对丈夫的友好)  
 { a picture of Tom's 汤姆所保存的照片  
 { a picture of Tom 汤姆本人的照片

## 第四节 名词的性

英语名词的性主要是根据其词汇意义所表示的自然性别划分的。通常有三种形式:阳性、阴性和中性。表示男人和雄性动物的名词为阳性;表示女人和雌性动物的名词为阴性;表示无生命的和抽象概念的名词为中性。

### 一、表示人的名词的性

- 1. 有些名词的性通过词缀的形式来表示。

actor 男演员	actress 女演员
emperor 皇帝	empress 皇后, 女皇
god 神	goddess 女神
hero 英雄	heroine 女英雄
host 男主人	hostess 女主人
landlord 男房东	landlady 女房东
prince 王子	princess 公主
waiter 男招待员	waitress 女招待员
widower 鳏夫	widow 寡妇
salesman 售货员	saleswoman 女售货员

- 2. 有些表示人的名词的性根据其自然属性来表示。



bachelor 光棍汉	spinster 老处女
boy 男孩	girl 女孩
brother 兄弟	sister 姐妹
father 父亲	mother 母亲
husband 丈夫	wife 妻子
king 国王	queen 女王
man 男人	woman 妇女
monk 和尚	nun 尼姑
nephew 侄子	niece 侄女
son 儿子	daughter 女儿
uncle 叔叔	aunt 婶婶

## 二、表示双重性的人的名词

有些名词不分性别，既可表示阳性，也可表示阴性。

adult 成年人	artist 艺术家
comrade 同志	cook 厨师
doctor 医生	enemy 敌人
friend 朋友	guest 客人
lawyer 律师	librarian 图书馆员
musician 音乐家	novelist 小说家
parent 父母	professor 教授
scientist 科学家	spouse 配偶
teacher 教师	writer 作家

## 三、表示动物的名词的性

有些动物的名词根据其自然属性分为阳性和阴性。

buck 雄鹿	doe 雌鹿
bull 公牛	cow 母牛
cock 公鸡	hen 母鸡
lion 雄狮	lioness 雌狮
pig 公猪	sow 母猪



## Exercise 7

### I. 选择题

1. He arrived at the hotel , but his baggage \_\_\_\_\_ still on the way.  
A. was                      B. were                      C. got                      D. had got
2. Harry will be able to begin soon. He has all \_\_\_\_\_ he needs now.  
A. the equipment                      B. the equipments  
C. equipments                      D. of equipment
3. That definition leaves \_\_\_\_\_ for disagreement.  
A. much room                      B. a small room  
C. great small room                      D. not so big a room
4. He bought \_\_\_\_\_ for his father.  
A. some medicine                      B. some medicines  
C. many medicine                      D. enough medicine
5. The Niagara Falls \_\_\_\_\_ great fame in the world.  
A. enjoy                      B. enjoys                      C. is                      D. are
6. When you are at \_\_\_\_\_ end , you should not lose your head.  
A. wit's                      B. dead                      C. your wit's                      D. extreme
7. \_\_\_\_\_ presents a big problem so that we must pay attention to it.  
A. Children education                      B. Child education  
C. Child's education                      D. Children's education
8. If you had been friendly with him , you would have got his belongings that \_\_\_\_\_ left by his father.  
A. were                      B. is                      C. was                      D. has been
9. Would you like to have a cup of tea and \_\_\_\_\_ with me ?  
A. two piece of toast                      B. two toast  
C. two pieces of toast                      D. two piece of toasts
10. There are fifty \_\_\_\_\_ in our department.  
A. woman teachers                      B. woman teacher  
C. women teachers                      D. women teacher
11. There are more than four \_\_\_\_\_ in the university so that some students can play the piano.  
A. pianos                      B. a piano                      C. pianoes                      D. piano



12. These deer \_\_\_\_\_ small compared with other species of deer.  
A. are                      B. do                      C. is                      D. does
13. Emerson was a great man of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. letter                      B. works                      C. letters                      D. agreement
14. \_\_\_\_\_ was wonderful so that it attracted all the students in the class.  
A. The teachers' performance  
B. That performance of the teachers'  
C. That performance of the teachers  
D. The performance of the teachers'
15. Although I'm inferior to you , you shouldn't put on \_\_\_\_\_ with me.  
A. faces                      B. airs                      C. air                      D. face
16. The storm has caused \_\_\_\_\_ to this region.  
A. many damages                      B. much damages  
C. much damage                      D. few damages
17. He gave his son \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a good advice                      B. a good piece advice  
C. some good advices                      D. a good piece of advice
18. I had my hair cut at the \_\_\_\_\_ around the corner.  
A. barber                      B. barbers                      C. barber's                      D. barbers'
19. He invited all his \_\_\_\_\_ to join in his wedding party.  
A. comrades-in-arms                      B. comrades-in-arm  
C. comrade-in-arms                      D. comrades-ins-arms
20. \_\_\_\_\_ is too much for a little boy to carry.  
A. A bike's weight                      B. Bikes' weight  
C. The weight of a bike                      D. The weights of bikes
21. The cattle \_\_\_\_\_ us with nutritious milk.  
A. provides                      B. produce                      C. produces                      D. provide
22. \_\_\_\_\_ is covered with heavy snow.  
A. The earth's surface                      B. The surface of earth  
C. The surface earth                      D. The earth surface
23. We are all working hard to fulfill the \_\_\_\_\_ plan.  
A. country                      B. country's  
C. the country of                      D. of the country
24. Recently , he has lost all his \_\_\_\_\_ at cards.



· 第七章 名词 ·

- A. wage and saving                      B. wages and saving  
C. wage and savings                      D. wages and savings
25. That magnificent \_\_\_\_\_ temple was constructed by the Chinese.  
A. eight-centuries-old                      B. old-eight-centuries  
C. eight-century's-old                      D. eight-century-old
26. As a safety precaution , all city cab drivers carry only enough money to make change for a \_\_\_\_\_ bill.  
A. ten-dollar    B. ten-dollars    C. ten-dollar's    D. ten dollars
27. " What did you buy today , Bruce ?"  
" I bought \_\_\_\_\_. "  
A. two bag of rice                      B. two sacks of rice  
C. two dozen rice                      D. two rices
28. All the \_\_\_\_\_ were shocked at the sudden accident.  
A. passer-bys    B. passers-bys    C. by-passers    D. passers-by
29. We'll go to the sea for \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a holiday month                      B. a holiday of a month  
C. a month holiday                      D. a month's holiday
30. The invention of various \_\_\_\_\_ promotes the exploration of outer space.  
A. spacecrafts    B. aircrafts                      C. spacecraft    D. aircraft
31. Please give my best \_\_\_\_\_ to your parents.  
A. regards        B. regard                      C. remember    D. remembrance
32. After four years in America , he got \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a degree of doctor                      B. a doctor's degree  
C. the degree of a doctor                      D. a doctor degree
33. We called at \_\_\_\_\_ on weekend.  
A. my grandfather                      B. my grandfathers  
C. my grandfather's                      D. my grand fathers'
34. We hope that our government should pay more attention to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the livelihood of the poor                      B. the poor livelihood  
C. the poor's livelihood                      D. the livelihood poor
35. I don't use Kart's car because I don't quite appreciate \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. that car of him                      B. that car of his  
C. that car                      D. his that car



## II. 改错题

1. After many failure , they finally succeeded.  
A B C D
2. The town we visited was a four-days journey from our hotel , so we took the  
A B C  
train instead of the bus.  
D
3. Alexander Graham Bell received a patent in 1880 for the ideas of using light  
A B C  
to relay sound via a telephone.  
D
4. It is difficult to classify mathematics as simply an art or a science because  
A B  
they contain elements of both.  
C D
5. People are usually interested in seeing a famous movie personality just as  
A C C  
they are in real life.  
D
6. The news of the losses suffered by our troops were much worse that expected.  
A B C D
7. In the early intelligent tests , it was possible for a person to get a good mark if  
A B C  
he knew enough root words , suffixes , prefixes.  
D
8. The committee was divided in opinion as to whether the matter should be dealt  
A B C D  
with at once.
9. I have no time going shopping. Would you mind buying me a grain of tooth-  
A B C D  
paste ?
10. Ten years passed , I found she had a few white hair.  
A B C D
11. Mary's and Jane's car is large and comfortable.  
A B C D
12. The workers took great pain to complete their work in advance.  
A B C D
13. For her sake , as well as for John , I hoped fervently that she might still be  
A B C D  
found.



· 第七章 名词 ·

14. Since I loved her very much when she was alive , I prize my mother's-in-law  
A B  
picture and I wouldn't sell it for all the money in the world.  
C D
15. We try to find what the resemblance between Tom and Ed's faces is.  
A B C D
16. The Nazi kept those prisoner-of-wars in their concentration camps.  
A B C D
17. Doctor Adams explained that not all bacteria is harmful.  
A B C D
18. The doctor checked up both Wang's father's-in-law and his brother-in-law's  
A B C D  
hearts.
19. He has only a two-weeks vacation during the year despite the fact that  
A B  
other workers get more time off.  
C D
20. The article deals with the natural phenomenon which are most interesting to  
A B C D  
everyone.
21. All the woman doctors were shocked at the unexpected accident.  
A B C D
22. We might say that the earliest tools were a means of extending  
A B  
the human being own bodily powers.  
C D
23. A team of researchers from the University of Michigan extracted the back part  
A  
of a skull and several teeths of a whale estimated to be 45 million years old.  
B C D
24. They will leave tomorrow. They are making preparation at moment .  
A B C D
25. Though the buildings are not as beautiful as I expect , I am much pleased with  
A B C  
my surrounding.  
D



# 第八章 代词

代词是用来代替名词、名词词组或更高层次的语法结构的词。代词按其特点可分成九类：人称代词、物主代词、反身代词、相互代词、指示代词、疑问代词、不定代词、连接代词、关系代词。

注：连接代词和关系代词将在第十二章和第十三章讲解。

## 第一节 人称代词

### 一、人称代词的形式和作用

人称代词主格	人称代词宾格
I , you , he , she , it , we , they	me , you , him , her , it , us , them





- 1. 人称代词主要指人的代词,分主格和宾格,分别担任主语、宾语。

例 I know I should immediately ask if they d like a cup of tea.  
我知道我应该马上问他们是否愿意喝杯茶。[ 人称代词作主语 ]  
He didn't told me the reason why he didn't attend the meeting.  
他没有告诉我他为什么没有参加那个会议。[ 人称代词作宾语 ]  
We turned to them for help.  
我们求他们帮忙。[ 人称代词作介词的宾语 ]  
That is him over there. 在那里的就是他。[ 作表语 ]

- 2. 人称代词可以作动名词的逻辑主语。

例 I remember him playing the piano very well.  
我记得他钢琴弹得很好。  
I suggested him giving up the plan. 我建议他放弃那个计划。

- 3. 在强调句型中,如果强调的是主语,就用主格;如果强调的是宾语就用宾格。

例 It is her that we are talking about. 我们在谈论的是她。  
It is he who told us the matter. 正是他告诉了我们那件事。

- 4. 人称代词并列时,出于礼貌,第二、三人称在前,第一人称在后。

例 You, he and I have already known about it.  
你、我还有他都已知道了这件事。  
He and I both like collecting stamps. 我和他都喜欢集邮。  
但是,在表示不祥之事、承认错误或自我批评时,说话人一般把自己放在他人之前讲。

例 I and Tom are to blame. 该责备的是我和汤姆。

- 5. 人称代词与表示人的名词并列时,顺序为“名词 + 人称代词”,但 you 常位于名词前。与其他代词并列时,人称代词在前。

例 You, Mary and I must attend the meeting.  
你和我以及玛丽必须参加这个会。

Smith and he were at the meeting. 他和史密斯出席了那个会议。

- 6. 人称代词在 as, than, except/but, like 之后要用主格,口语中常用宾格。



例 He is as good as me/I. 他像我一样好。

No one can do it but he/him. 除了他,无人能干。

►► 7. 常用 she 代替国家、城市、大地、月亮、船只等以表示亲切。故事中把动物拟人化时用 he/she 代替 it。

例 She was the biggest passenger ship of her day.

她是当时最大的客轮。

After India became independent, she chose to be a member of the Commonwealth. 印度独立之后,她愿意成为英联邦的一员。

## 二、it 的用法

►► 1. it 可用来代替小孩和婴儿。

例 She was holding a baby in her arms and it was crying.

她手中抱着婴儿,那婴儿在哭。

She has a child and it is looked after by her parents.

她有一个孩子,由她的父母照看。

►► 2. it 也可代替刚提到的东西(人、物、事)。

例 There is a rose on the table, and it s very beautiful.

桌上有朵玫瑰,很漂亮。

Her mother has just died. It is a terrible shock to her.

她母亲刚去世。这对她打击很大。

►► 3. it 常可用作先行词,代替不定式短语、动名词、从句等作主语、宾语或构成复合结构。

例 It s a wonder seeing you. 见到你真是个奇迹。

It s such a great pleasure that you are here. 太高兴了,你在这儿。

I found it easy enough to catch up with you.

我发现要赶上你很容易。

►► 4. it 也可用来代替天气、时间、距离、季节、事物的状态和自然环境等。

例 It s getting colder and colder. 天越来越冷了。

How is it with Ms. Rose? 罗斯女士怎样了?

►► 5. it 也可用于强调句。



例 It was the President that John watched on TV yesterday.

约翰昨天在电视上看见的是总统。

It was Tom who won the prize. 是汤姆赢得了那个奖。

## 第二节 物主代词

物主代词分为形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词两种。具体如下：

形容词性物主代词	名词性物主代词
my, your, his, her, its, our, their	mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

►► 1. 形容词性物主代词只能放在名词前作定语，不能单独使用。

例 Many of my books were bought in the bookshop.

我的许多书都是在那个书店买的。

Those people are all their schoolmates. 那些人都是他们的同学。

►► 2. 名词性物主代词可单独使用，在句中作主语、表语、宾语等。

例 This is his room and that is mine ( my room ).

这是他的房间，那是我的房间。[ 作表语 ]

My mother is a teacher and hers ( her mother ) is a doctor.

我的母亲是一个教师，她的母亲是一个医生。[ 作主语 ]

There is something wrong with my bike. May I use yours ( your bike ) ?

我的自行车坏了。我可以用你的吗？[ 作宾语 ]

►► 3. 名词性物主代词与 of 连用构成双重所有格，这种结构表示部分概念和一定的感情色彩。

例 A friend of mine had a party yesterday.

我的一位朋友昨天举行了一个晚会。

That dress of hers is too short. 她那件连衣裙太短了。

►► 4. 物主代词与 all 和 both 连用时，需放在 all 与 both 之后。

例 He sent those books to both his classmates.

他把那些书送给了他的两个同班同学。

They are all my best friends. 他们都是我最好的朋友。



### ►► 5. 在“不定代词 + 复数名词”的结构中不同 one's。

在“不定代词” everyone, someone, anyone, somebody, everybody, anybody, each one, no one, one of + 复数名词”的结构中,后面的物主代词要用 his,有时也可用 her,通常不用 one's。

例 Everybody must tell his name and address.

每个人都必须说出自己的名字和地址。

Somebody has left his umbrella. 有人忘记把伞带走了。

## 第三节 反身代词

### 一、反身代词的形式

单 数	复 数
第一人称 myself	ourselves
第二人称 yourself	yourselves
第三人称 himself, herself, itself	themselves

### 二、反身代词的用法

反身代词可在句中作宾语、表语、主语同位语或宾语的同位语、状语等。

例 She has been teaching herself English.

她一直在自学英语。[ 作宾语 ]

I will be myself in no time. 我一会儿就会好的。[ 作表语 ]

You'd better ask the patient himself about his trouble.

关于病人的病情,你最好问他自己。[ 作宾语同位语 ]

You yourself know who wrote the letter.

你知道谁写了那封信。[ 作主语同位语 ]

### 三、反身代词数和人称代词的一致问题

在反身代词的使用中,特别要注意反身代词形式的误用以及反身



例 After he finished his duties , Tom often occupies himself by listening  
A B C  
to music.  
D

译文:下班后,汤姆通过听音乐来打发自己的时间。

He is one of those rare men who are genuinely thoughtful and  
 considerate of fellow-workers without intending to advance himself by

D 错,应改为 themselves。句中反身代词代替的是 those rare men, 所以应用复数形式。

译文 他是少有的这样一位真心体贴别人,关心同伴而又不想通过这种方式来抬高自己的人。

►►1. 反身代词常和某些动词如 enjoy , apply , pride , help , adapt 等连用,形成某种固定搭配。

He has been devoted himself to the research.

他一直专心致力于这项研究。

④ by oneself 单干[ 不要别人帮忙 ]

of oneself 自动地

for oneself 替自己,为自己,独自地,亲自地

in oneself 本性 本身

►►3. oneself 泛指某人自己,可作宾语、同位语或状语,以加强语气。

例 One should not praise oneself. 一个人不应自吹自擂。

Others might think odd what one finds perfectly normal oneself.

一个人自己感到完全正常的事,在他人看来可能很古怪。



## 第四节 相互代词

相互代词是表示相互关系的词。相互代词只有 each other 和 one another 两个。each other 一般指两者，one another 一般指三者以上，它们可作介词、动词的宾语。

例 We bumped into each other and hurt ourselves.

我们互相碰撞，彼此都受伤了。

You should support one another / each other. 你们应该相互支持。

## 第五节 指示代词

### 一、指示代词的形式和作用

指示代词是用来指代人、事物或说明事物的属性、特征的代词，主要有：

	单 数	复 数
近指	this ( book )这个	these ( books )这些
远指	that ( book )那个	those ( books )那些
其他指示代词	such 这样的，same 同样的，so 这样，it ( 指人用 )等	

指示代词可在句中作主语、表语、宾语、定语或状语。例如：

These are my books. 这些是我的书。[ 作主语 ]

You'll never finish your work if you do it like this.

如果你这样干的话，你永远不会完成工作。[ 作宾语 ]

My point is this. 我的意思是这个。[ 作表语 ]

I like that color. 我喜欢那种颜色。[ 作定语 ]

I don't like so that. 我不想要那么多。[ 作状语 ]

### 二、that ,this ,those 等指示代词的几种用法

►►1. 可用 those ,that 指代前面提到的名词( 同种事物 )，以免重复。



those 代替复数名词, that 代替单数名词, 常用 that of 或 those of 的形式。

④ 例 The air of a suburb is cleaner than that of the city.

郊区的空气比城市的空气新鲜。

Today's libraries differ greatly from those of the past.

今天的图书馆与过去的图书馆有很大的不同。

▶▶ 2. this, that 都可用来说前面所说的单词、短语、从句、以避免重复, 但是指下文要叙述的事情时只能用 this, 不能用 that。

④ 例 I want to know this has he been here the whole night?

我想知道, 他整个晚上一直在这儿吗?

[ 指下文提到的事, 不能用 that ]

Her mother was ill. That's why she couldn't come.

她母亲生病, 所以她才不能来。

▶▶ 3. those 在句中用作关系代词的先行词, 后跟定语从句或定语从句的省略形式, 指人时只能用复数。指人的单数形式则需用 anyone who/ the person who / whoever 结构。指物的单数时, 一般用 that which。

④ 例 I have that which you gave me. 我有你给我的那个。

Those who didn't attend the meeting must tell the reason.

那些没有参加会议的人要说明原因。

▶▶ 4. 指示代词在句中相当于形容词时, 其单数形式既可用于可数名词, 也可用于不可数名词。

④ 例 This spoon is more expensive than that one. 这只汤勺比那只贵。

This milk has gone sour. 这牛奶已经酸了。

### 三、such 的用法

▶▶ 1. 指示代词 such 具有名词和形容词的性质, 在句中可作主语、宾语、表语、定语等。

④ 例 I may have offended, but such was not my intention.

我可能有所冒犯, 但这不是我的本意。

His parents believed that he was a clever boy, but he wasn't such in



fact. 他的父母相信他是个聪明的孩子,但事实上他并非如此。

He bought pens, notebooks and such. 他买了笔、笔记本等等。

- 2. a 和 an 通常放在 such 之后,但是 all, no, one, few, several, some, any 等可放在 such 之前。

例 I couldn't answer such a problem. 我无法回答这样一个问题。

There is no such a thing. 没有这种事。

Some such arrangement was necessary. 诸如此类的安排是必要的。

#### 四、same 的用法

指示代词 same 必须和 the 连用,具有名词和形容词的性质,在句中可作主语、宾语、表语、定语等,并且常和 as 或 that 连用。

例 The same might be said of the problem.

同样的说法或许会适用这个问题。

He did me lots of kindness. I'll do the same for him someday.

他帮了我很多忙,我将来有一天会报答他的。

Those children all look the same to me. 那些小孩我看起来一模一样。

We met again at the same place. 我们在同一个地方再次相见。

He speaks the same as his father. 他说话和他父亲一模一样。

### 第六节 疑问代词

疑问代词是用于构成特殊疑问句的代词,主要有 who, whom, whose, which 和 what 等。

#### 一、疑问代词 who, whom 和 whose 的用法

- 1. 疑问代词 who 和 whom 只用于指人,who 通常作主语和表语,whom 作宾语。

例 Who d like to stand up and answer the question?

谁愿意站起来回答这个问题?

Whom do you want to meet? 你想见谁?

在口语中,该用 whom 的地方常用 who 代替,但若前面有介词时,





仍用 whom。

例 Who are you talking about? 你们在谈论谁?

With whom did you go?

你跟谁一起去?(口语中多说: Who did you go with?)

►► 2. whose 指人,是 who 的所有格,可作主语、宾语、表语和定语。

例 Whose shoes are these? 这是谁的鞋?[作定语]

Whose is this? 这是谁的?[作表语]

Whose did he borrow? 他借的谁的?[作宾语]

I don't know whose house to go first.

我不知道该先去谁的家。[与动词不定式连用作宾语]

## 二、疑问代词 what 和 which 的用法

what 和 which 两者都具有名词和形容词特征,都可作主语、宾语、表语和定语。

例 What happened to him? 他出了什么事?

What's your hobby? 你的业余爱好是什么?

What color is the chair? 这把椅子是什么颜色的?

Which school did you go to? 你上的是哪所学校?

## 三、疑问代词的用法与比较

►► 1. which 和 what 的区别。

两者都可作定语,但 which 一般用于有一定选择范围的情况,what 则用于无选择范围或不清楚是什么的情况。

例 Which one do you prefer, this book or that book?

你更喜欢哪本书,这本还是那本?

What harm does it do after all? 它究竟会有什么害处?

►► 2. who 与 what 的区别。

who 多指姓名、关系等,what 多指职业、地位等。

例 Who is that tall woman? 那个高大的女人是谁?

What is she? 她从事什么职业?

►► 3. who 与 which 的区别。



who 和 which 都可用来代替人,但是 who 对人数未加限制;which 对人数有限制,指在一定对象中的哪一个,因此后面常接 of 短语或表示对象的语句。

例 Who knows what will become of the world in fifty years ?

谁晓得 50 年以后世界会变成什么样子?

Which of the two were you talking about ?

(当时)你们在谈论两个当中的哪一个?

Which of you come from the south ? 你们当中哪些人是南方人?

#### 四、疑问代词的强调作用

疑问代词 what ,which ,who 和 whom 可与 ever 连用,加强语气。

例 Whatever do you like ? 你到底喜欢什么?

Whichever side can win ? 到底哪一方能赢?

Whoever told you such a stupid story ?

到底是谁告诉你这么愚蠢的事?

### 第七节 不定代词

不定代词是不指明替代任何特定的名词和形容词的代词。具体如下:

普通不定代词	a ) some , any , no b ) somebody , anybody , nobody , someone , anyone , no one , something anything , nothing c ) one , none
个体不定代词	all , every , each , other , another , either , neither , both , half , everybody , everyone , everything
数量代词	many , much , few , little , a few , a little , a lot of , lots of , a great deal , a great many

不定代词多数都能作主语、表语、宾语和定语,但代词 none 以及含有 some ,any ,no ,every 的合成代词不能作定语,而 every 和 no 只能作



定语。

不定代词的用法复杂,注意区别运用意义相近而用法又不同的不定代词。

### 一、all 和 both 的用法

- 1. 两者都具有名词和形容词的特点,可作主语、宾语、定语、同位语等。

例 All my friends like her latest album.

我所有的朋友都喜欢她最新的唱片。

He spent all his money. 他把他的钱全部都花完了。

All of my brothers like basketball. 我的兄弟都喜欢篮球。

They can both speak English fluently.

他们两个英语都讲得很流利。

- 2. all, both 作主语同位语时,它们位于行为动词之前,be 动词之后。

例 They all/both came here. 他们都到了。

They are all tired. (= All of them are tired. ) 他们都疲倦了。

- 3. 若宾语为人称代词时,使用“both/all + of + 人称代词”和“人称代词 + both/all”两种句型都可以。

例 I'll invite all of you. (= I'll invite you all. ) 我将邀请你们全体。

I invited both of them. (= I invited them both. )

他们两个我都邀请了。

- 4. 当 all 用作复数时,意为“全体人员,所有东西”;当视为单数时,意为“全部,所有的事(物)”。

例 All of my brothers like baseball. = My brothers all like baseball.

我的兄弟都喜欢棒球。

All of my clothes are ready-made. = My clothes are all ready-made.

我的衣服全部都是成衣。

All I want is a room of my own. 我所要的只是属于我自己的房间。

### 二、each 和 every 的用法

each 用来强调两个或两个以上的人或事物中的每一个都各有自



己的特点,意为“各自,每人”,既可作定语,也可作主语、宾语、同位语。every 只用于三个或三个以上的人或物,意为“任何一个”,只能在句中作定语。都作“每一个”解时,each 强调个体,every 强调整体;each 可跟 of 短语,every 只能作定语。

例 I have read every book he lent me. 我读完了他借给我的所有书。

Each of us has strong and weak points. 我们每个人都有优缺点。

Each has his own task. 每个人都有自己该做的工作。

They each have different opinions about it.

他们对那事各有不同的看法。

### 三、no one 和 none 的用法

no one 指人,动词用单数,none 可指人或物。no one = not any one, 意为“连一个也不”,比 none 语气强。none 通常与 of 短语连用作主语,如果后面接复数名词,谓语动词可用单数或复数;如果接不可数名词,谓语动词要用单数。

例 None of us are/is wrong. 我们谁也没错。

None of us has/have ever been abroad.

我们之中没有人曾到过国外。

None of this money is his. 这笔钱没有一点儿是他的。

There was no one to look after the child. 没有人照看孩子。

►► 要注意 none 的几个习惯搭配。

(1) none other than 不外乎是,正是,就是

The man was none other than my husband.

那个人(不是别人)正是我的丈夫。

It was none other than his wife who told him the matter.

告诉他那件事的不是别人正是他的妻子。

(2) none + the + 形容词比较级 + (for) ... 仍然,依然,没有更.....

For all his years, he is none the less vigorous and active.

他虽然年老,但仍然生气勃勃,精力旺盛。

He was none the better for the remedy.

他虽然接受了治疗,却一点也没好转。

(3) none but 只有



None but the aged and the sick stayed at home.

只有年老和生病的人留在家里。

#### 四、some 和 any 的用法

- 1. any 多用于否定句、疑问句和条件句。可替代单数可数名词,意为“任何一个”,也可替代复数名词,意为“任何一定的个数”,也可替代不可数名词,意为“任何一定的量”。some 多用于肯定句,可替代复数可数名词,意为“一些人或物”,也可替代不可数名词,意为“一定的量,一部分”,在句中可作主语、宾语或定语。

例 Some of the milk has been sour. 有些牛奶已经酸了。

If you have any questions, ask your teacher.

如果你有什么问题,问你的老师。

Some students are doing experiments. 一些学生在做实验。

I don't get any letters from her these days.

这一阵子我没有收到过她的任何来信。

- 2. some 有时可修饰单数可数名词,相当于 a certain,意为“某,某个”。

例 I have read it in some magazine. 我在某本杂志上看过这个。

She is talking with some boy. 她正和一个男孩说话。

- 3. 当说话者心中的肯定意识较强时,或实际上表示请求或劝诱时,这时句子虽然是疑问句或条件句,通常不用 any,而用 some。

例 If you have some money, please lend me.

如果你有钱,就请借给我一些。

Why don't you eat some pie? 吃点馅饼怎么样?

#### 五、few a few little a little 的用法

	代替可数名词	代替不可数名词
表肯定	a few	a little
表否定	few	little

这一组词具有名词和形容词的性质,在句中可用作主语、宾语、定



语等。few, a few 用来代替或修饰可数名词,若作主语时,谓语动词都要用复数形式。a few 为肯定的用法,意为“少数的,几个”;few 为否定的用法,意为“几乎没有,很少的”。little, a little 用来代替或修饰不可数名词,若作主语,谓语动词都要用单数形式。a little 为肯定的用法,意为“少许,稍微”;little 为否定的用法,意为“几乎没有”。

例 There are few differences between the two.

这两者之间几乎没有什么差距。

There are a few differences between the two.

这两者之间有一些差距。

A little care probably could have prevented the traffic accident.

当时稍微小心一点就可能防止了那次车祸。[作定语]

There is a little wine left in the bottle. 瓶子里还剩一点酒。

There is little wine left in the bottle. 瓶子里没剩下多少酒。

## 六、everyone 和 every one 的用法

everyone 既可指人也可指物,可跟 of 短语。everyone 与 everybody 同义,只能指人,不可跟 of 短语。

例 Every one of us has to attend the meeting.

所有的人都得参加那个会议。

Everyone over eighteen has a vote.

每个 18 岁以上的人都有选举权。

## 七、either 和 neither 的用法

either 和 neither 具有名词和形容词的性质。可作主语、宾语、定语。either 指“两者中任何一个”,neither 指“两者之中都不”。作主语时,在正式文体中与单数动词连用,在非正式文体中或美国英语中可与复数动词连用。

例 Either of the plans is/are equally dangerous. 两个计划同样危险。

You may read either of the books. 这两本书,你看哪一本都可以。

There is no post office on either side of the street.

那条街的两边都没邮局。

Neither of the books is/are very interesting. 这两本书都不是很有趣。



Neither seat is occupied. 两个位子都空着。

## 八、other 和 another 的用法

两个词都具有名词和形容词的性质，在句中可以作主语、宾语、定语。

- 1. another 是“an + other”的意思，所以不和复数形式连用，但是后面附加 two, three 等的数词或是 few，就可与复数形式连用，表示许多里面的另外几个。another 的复数形式是：some others, any others.

例 I wish you could remain in London for another few ( three ) weeks.

我希望你能在伦敦再逗留几(三)个星期。

Would you like another cup of coffee? 你还想来杯咖啡吗?

He finished his sandwich and asked for another.

他吃完了三明治，然后又要了一个。

I don't like the shoes. Please give some others.

我不喜欢这些鞋，请再给我拿些来看看。

- 2. another 和专有名词连用表示“第二”的意思。

例 He is another Einstein. 他是爱因斯坦第二。

He is another Leifeng of our time.

他是我们时代的又一个雷锋式人物。

- 3. other 表示“另外的人或物，其他人或物”，其复数形式是 others。the other 表示“两者中的另一个”，the others 表示“其余的人或物”，others 指别人。

例 Susie is here, but the other girls are still out in the playground.

苏西在这里，但其他的女孩还在运动场。

He held an apple in one hand and a pear in the other.

他一只手拿个苹果，另一只手拿个梨。

I don't like this tie; show me some others, please.

我不喜欢这条领带，请让我看看别的。

Some of the boys went swimming, while the others sat on the beach for sunbathing. 一些男孩去游泳，其余的坐在沙滩上沐日光浴。



## 九、one 的用法

- 1. one 可用来代替上文出现过的单数可数名词,其复数形式为 ones。one 和 ones 前可用 some, any, the next, which, any 等限定词和其他修饰语。可作主语、宾语、定语等。

例 He gave me some big apples, but I prefer small ones.

他给了我一些大苹果,但我更喜欢小的。

One of my friends got married to an American.

我的一位朋友和美国人结了婚。

- 2. 在使用不定代词 one 时的注意点。

1) 不定代词 one 不能用来代替不可数名词 2) 在基数词后面不用不定代词 one 代替前面所说的名词 3) 不用于形容词性物主代词或所有格之后 4) this (that) 之后可接 one, 但 those (these) 之后不可接 ones。

例 [ × ] This is his house and that is my one.

这是他的房子,那是我的房子。

[ × ] If you haven't got fresh milk, I'll take tinned one.

如果没有鲜牛奶,我就来点罐装牛奶。

[ ✓ ] This is his house and that is mine (my house).

[ ✓ ] If you haven't got fresh milk, I'll take some tinned.

- 3. one 也可作人称代词,意义相当于“人”,所有格形式为 one's (英国)或 his (美国)。

例 No one can do it. 没有一个人会做这件事。

One must do his (one's) duty. 每个人必须尽自己的义务。

Let's finish this exercise so we can go on with the next one.

让我们完成这个练习,这样我们就能继续下一个了。

- 4. one 与时间名词连用,表示某种不确定的时间。

例 One day he'll understand his mistake. 总有一天他会明白他的错误。

One summer evening I went for a stroll in the park.

一个夏天的夜晚,我去公园散步。

- 5. one 后面也可以接一个定语从句或短语对其进行修饰。

例 This picture is the one I wanted to have so much.





这幅画是我非常想要的。

Lend me the book ,the one with a red cover.

请借给我那本有红色封面的书。

▶▶ 6. one 或 ones 有时可省略。

例 That red tie belongs to Bob. Mine is the black(one).

那个红领带是鲍勃的 ,我的是黑的。

## 十、someone ,something 等合成代词的形式和用法

不定代词 some ,any ,no 与-one , -body , -thing 可组成不同的合成代词。

▶▶ 1. 一般来说 ,不定代词 someone ( somebody ,something )以及 everybody( everyone ,everything )用于肯定句 ,nobody( no one )用于否定句 ,anybody( anyone ,anything )用于疑问句、条件句或否定句。

例 Somebody has told him the matter. 已经有人告诉他那件事了。

Nobody can help him under the circumstances.

在这种情况下没有人能够帮助他。

There is something wrong with his computer.

他的计算机出了故障。[ 固定用法 ]

▶▶ 2. 形容词修饰不定代词时 ,通常要放在不定代词的后面。

例 We ll discuss something important. 我们将讨论一些重要的事情。

I think I d come and see if they had anything new.

我想我会来看看他们有没有什么新东西。

▶▶ 3. else 常置于 some ,any ,no 以及 with -body , -one ,place ,thing 结合而成的代词之后。else 也可跟在与 where 结合而成的副词之后 ,wh-疑问词之后 ,all ,much ,little 等不定代词之后。

例 Nothing else happened. 没有其他的事情发生。

We must find somebody else to do the work.

我们必须另外找人来做这项工作。

There is little else you can do to improve yourself.

除此之外 ,能使你进步的方法几乎没有。



What else did she say about me ?

除此之外,她还提到过有关我的事情吗?

- ▶▶ 4. -one 和-body 之后也可用-'s 所有格。

例 Everybody's business is nobody's business. 事关大家无人管。

His hair is longer than anyone else's. 他的头发要比别人的长。

- ▶▶ 5. anybody, somebody, everybody, anyone, someone 和 everyone 等不定代词通常视为单数形式,其相应的代词形式为 he( his, him, she, her ) 通常多用 he 或 his 作通性代词,但在口语中或反意疑问句中也有接复数代词的情形。这些不定代词若作主语,谓语动词用单数。

例 Everybody gets their ( his or her ) legal rights by birth.

每个人一出生便享有合法权利。

Everyone began to wave his hand. 大家都开始挥手。

If anybody asks for me, tell them I'll be back by 5 o'clock.

如果有人来找我,就说我会在 5 点以前回来。

Someone was absent from the English classes, weren't they?

有人没上英语课,是不是?

- ▶▶ 6. 不定代词常和其他一些词构成固定搭配。

something like 有点像

or something 类似

something of 若干,多少,有些

nothing but 只不过,只有

anything but 并不,根本不

She is something like her mother. 她有点像她母亲。

Mr. Smith is an engineer or something. 史密斯大概是个工程师。

She is nothing but a dancer. 她只不过是跳舞的。

He was anything but pleased when he heard this.

当他听到此事时,他并不高兴。

## 十一、much 和 many 的用法

这两个词都有名词和形容词的性质,在句中可作主语,宾语,定语等,都意为“许多”;“大量”;many 只能指代或修饰复数可数名词,



much 一般只能指代或修饰不可数名词。

例 There are many who can speak two languages here.

这里有很多人会说两种语言。

He failed many times. 他失败了很多次了。

There was so much food and we couldn't eat it all.

食物很多, 我们无法吃完。

## 十二、more 和 most 的用法

- 1. more 具有名词和形容词的性质, 在句中可作主语、宾语、定语等。more 作为 many 的比较级时视为复数, 作为 much 的比较级时视为单数。

例 More people are going abroad these days. 近来出国的人越来越多。

More of them wanted to go swimming than to go hiking.

他们之中去游泳的人要比去远足的人多。

He never says more than is necessary. 没有必要的话, 他从不多说。

- 2. most 具有名词和形容词的性质, 在句中可作主语、宾语、定语等。

例 As for records, he has the most among us.

在我们当中他拥有的唱片最多。[ 作宾语 ]

Father has the most sense of humor in our family.

在我们家, 父亲是最具幽默感的人。[ 作定语 ]

Most of us thought the same about it.

我们之中大多数人对那件事有相同的想法。[ 作主语 ]

- 3. 在 most of 结构中, 若 most of 作主语, 在 of 之后的名词或代词若为复数则视为复数, 若为不可数名词则视为单数。

例 Most of her money is spent on clothing.

她大部分的钱都花在衣服上了。[ 作主语 ]

Most of them want to study abroad.

他们之中大多数人都想出国读书。

## 十三、不定代词的否定形式

不定代词的否定可分为全部否定和部分否定两种。



- 1. 不定代词 none , neither , nobody , nothing 等在句中表示全部否定。

例 Nothing can compensate for the loss of one's health.

失去健康是无法补偿的事。

Nobody will listen to him. 没有人和他共舞。

He did none of his work. 他丝毫没有做自己份内的工作。

- 2. 不定代词 all , every , each , both , many , much , everybody , everyone 等与 not 一起构成部分否定。not 可置于上述各词之前,也可放在谓语中。

例 Not everyone is kind. 并非每个人都很亲切。

Everybody can not be a singer. 并非每个人都可以成为歌手。

All metals do not conduct electricity equally well.

并非所有金属都有同样好的导电性能。

Not every student can be hardworking.

并不是每个学生都很努力用功。



## Exercise 8

### I. 选择题

1. \_\_\_\_\_ student with a little common sense should be able to answer the question.  
A. Each            B. Any            C. Either            D. One
2. The teacher asked \_\_\_\_\_ who had finished their homework to leave the classroom as quickly as they could.  
A. them            B. those            C. these            D. they
3. You can't expect a baby to take care of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. him            B. himself            C. herself            D. itself
4. Alone in a deserted house, he was so busy with his research work that he felt \_\_\_\_\_ lonely.  
A. nothing but    B. anything but    C. all but            D. everything but
5. A good writer is \_\_\_\_\_ who can express the commonplace in an uncommon way.  
A. that            B. one            C. this            D. which
6. Between you and \_\_\_\_\_, I didn't like that party.  
A. him            B. he            C. I            D. me
7. They talked about the problem among \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. them            B. each other            C. themselves            D. one another
8. "How much tea is left in the pot?"  
"\_\_\_\_\_."  
A. None            B. Not some            C. Nothing            D. No one
9. Will you buy me \_\_\_\_\_ stamps when you go out?  
A. some            B. any            C. a little            D. a few of
10. "May I help you with some shoes, sir?"  
"Yes, I'd like to try on those brown \_\_\_\_\_. "  
A. one            B. ones            C. two            D pair
11. He was informed that it was \_\_\_\_\_ who wanted the interview.  
A. I            B. me            C. myself            D. mine
12. I know of no other person in the club who is as kindhearted as \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. he            B. him            C. his            D. himself



13. "What is Mary?" "Was it \_\_\_\_\_ you were referring to?"  
A. he                      B. they                      C. her                      D. she
14. "I had to pay ten dollars for this book."  
"It's probably \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. worthy it      B. worth them      C. worth it      D. worthy them
15. "I need a black dress for the concert next week."  
"I'm sure Emily will let you wear \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. one of her      B. her                      C. hers                      D. her one
16. Wagner and Strauss were such good friends that they frequently exchanged gifts with \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. each one      B. each other      C. the other      D. one another
17. China is a wonderful place and there is \_\_\_\_\_ to see and enjoy.  
A. a lot of      B. many                      C. much                      D. many more
18. "What do they eat there in Honolulu?"  
"\_\_\_\_\_ eat rice rather than potatoes."  
A. Most of people                      B. The most of people  
C. The most people                      D. Most of the people
19. "Were all three people in the car injured in the accident?"  
"No, \_\_\_\_\_ only the two passengers who got hurt."  
A. it was      B. there is      C. it were      D. there was
20. \_\_\_\_\_ will carry out the experiment.  
A. You, I and John                      B. You, John and I  
C. You, John and me                      D. John and you
21. Look at the little baby. \_\_\_\_\_ is crying again.  
A. It                      B. He                      C. She                      D. That
22. What I require of you is \_\_\_\_\_. You should finish the task in 2 hours.  
A. that                      B. it                      C. this                      D. those
23. To the finalists, \_\_\_\_\_, the last high jump was the most important.  
A. he and I      B. him and I      C. he and me      D. him and me
24. \_\_\_\_\_ the students came late today.  
A. Nobody of      B. No one of      C. None of      D. Neither
25. "Someone is at the door." "\_\_\_\_\_?"  
A. What is it                      B. Who is it  
C. Who is he                      D. Which one is it



· 第八章 代词 ·

26. He talks a lot and he's never interested in what \_\_\_\_\_ has to say.  
A. one B. anyone else  
C. nobody else D. some body else
27. Everybody in the class must give in \_\_\_\_\_ exercise book within the given time.  
A. their B. her C. our D. his
28. \_\_\_\_\_ should visit the plant. The cast machine tools there will interest you all.  
A. He and you and the draftsman B. You and he and the draftsman  
C. He and the draftsman and you D. The draftsman and he and you
29. The dictionary is \_\_\_\_\_ ; the one over there is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. my , our B. mine , you C. mine , yours D. my , yours
30. After this matter the relationship between them reached \_\_\_\_\_ highest point.  
A. its B. their C. they D. theirs
31. " Do you want these pens ? " I don't like \_\_\_\_\_. "  
A. them all B. all them C. all they D. all every
32. When science , business , and art learn something of \_\_\_\_\_ goals , the world will have come closer to cultural harmony.  
A. one another's B. each other's  
C. themselves D. one another
33. \_\_\_\_\_ is cleverer than any other child.  
A. His that child B. That his child  
C. That child of his D. That child of him
34. The grammar and sound systems of any language are as complex as \_\_\_\_\_ of any other language.  
A. what B. those C. that D. whose
35. Let me know \_\_\_\_\_ train you'll be arriving on.  
A. which B. what C. that D. whose
36. John and Smith \_\_\_\_\_ in this short story.  
A. and both teachers were B. they were both teachers  
C. were both teachers D. both were teachers
37. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ bananas ?  
A. any B. some C. little D. none
38. Whom do you know better , \_\_\_\_\_ ?



- A. his or her friends                      B. her or his friends  
C. his friends or her                      D. her or his
39. They laughed at \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. my brother and I falling off the bicycle  
B. my brother and me falling off the bicycle  
C. my brother's and my falling off the bicycle  
D. my brother and me fall off the bicycle
40. Is the climate of England \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. somewhat like that of Florida    B. similarly like that of Florida  
C. somewhat similar to Florida    D. so much like Florida
41. " I don't like this ink. Do you like it ? " " No , I like \_\_\_\_\_ ink. "  
A. the other    B. some other    C. another    D. some others
42. " Did Mary and Carl understand her ? "  
" No , \_\_\_\_\_ of them is very bright. "  
A. Not neither    B. Not one    C. Neither    D. No one
43. " Which bus should I take to go to the bookstore ? "  
" Either of these buses \_\_\_\_\_ to the stadium. "  
A. going    B. go    C. goes    D. will go
44. " How embarrassed we are nowadays ! "  
" The next war will be more cruel \_\_\_\_\_ can be imagined. "  
A. which    B. as    C. than    D. that
45. \_\_\_\_\_ will be punished for being late for class.  
A. George , Simpson and I    B. George , Simpson , and me  
C. I , George and Simpson    D. Me , George and Simpson
46. This furniture is different from \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. that    B. that one    C. those    D. those ones
47. She can't seem to help \_\_\_\_\_. And no one else can help her either.  
A. him    B. himself    C. her    D. herself
48. It is a pity that \_\_\_\_\_ of her two husbands has been capable of understanding her.  
A. either    B. neither    C. both    D. each
49. It is one thing to enjoy listening to good music , but it is quite \_\_\_\_\_ to perform skillfully yourself.  
A. any other    B. another    C. other thing    D. some other





· 第八章 代词 ·

50. We considered \_\_\_\_\_ logical that not all plants can be put into practice.  
A. it                      B. that                      C. what                      D. which

II. 改错题

1. Some people make more money than we teachers , but few gain as much satisfaction from his work.  
A                      B                      C                      D
2. It is obvious that inaccurate or indefinite words may make that difficult for the listener to understand the message which is being transmitted to him.  
A                      B                      C                      D
3. Although Alice has been to the mountains many times before , she still loves visiting it.  
A                      B                      C                      D
4. The managing director refused to accept either of the four proposals made by the contractors.  
A                      B                      C                      D
5. You have to hurry up if you want to buy something because there is hardly something left.  
A                      B                      C                      D
6. Most of we know that conductors direct their orchestras with a baton but how many are aware that they also direct with their faces , hands and shoulders ?  
A                      B                      C                      D
7. If someone were to look through the window , what they would see was only an empty room.  
A                      B                      C                      D
8. Some of the plants in this store require very little care , but this one needs much more sunlight than other ones.  
A                      B                      C                      D
9. Most Charles Dickens' novels deal with the universal problems of evil as represented by family disintegration and degeneration.  
A                      B                      C                      D
10. This kind of worm can hold itself straight out from a branch so that looks like  
A                      B                      C                      D



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

- a small twig.
11. Each man and woman must sign their full name before entering the examination room.  
A B C D
12. I hope all of you enjoy you visit to our country.  
A B C D
13. That present at the meeting included the mayor and the mayoress and the local member of parliament.  
A B C D
14. These televisions are quite popular in Europe , but those ones are not.  
A B C D
15. When Jonathan went to Spain with his sister , he bought a leather coat for her and another for him.  
A B C D
16. The men and women who pushed the frontier westward across America probably never thought of them as brave pioneers.  
A B C D
17. Education on environmental issues it should include not only physical problems like pollution but also social problems caused by pollution .  
A B C D
18. Let me give you two of the consequences of which I would guess that one will shock you while another may perhaps surprise you more favorably.  
A B C D
19. I don't think we've met before. You are confusing me with anyone else.  
A B C D
20. My wife and I reached the agreement that everything is more important for us than building a solid bank account.  
A B C D
21. When we entered the hall , he wrote down our all names.  
A B C D
22. The words used by the speaker may stir up unfavourable reactions in the listener which , interfere with their comprehension.  
A B C D
23. People in this area live on wild berries and roots because they had  
A B



· 第八章 代词 ·

- anything else to eat.  
C D
24. As we have finished the first lesson , now we will read the second one.  
A B C D
25. In every large city there are lonely men who seldom leave their own homes ;  
A B C  
usually it is bachelors.  
D
26. The air of the hills is cooler than the plains.  
A B C D
27. In the early morning , the first thing that both my brother and me did was to  
A B C D  
go out to see the pony.
28. I don't take John's pen because I don't like that his of pen.  
A B C D
29. Many people have died from accidents caused by drunk drivers , and the  
A  
police will try their best to prevent these accidents before they happened.  
B C D
30. You said the books were on the desk but there were no one there.  
A B C D



# 第九章 冠词和数词

## 第一节 冠 词

### 一、冠词的种类

冠词可分为不定冠词 a ( n )、定冠词 the 和零冠词( 即不用任何冠词的情况 ) 三种。冠词与名词的搭配情况如下 :

冠 词	单数可数名词	复数可数名词	不可数名词
a ( n )	book		
the	book	books	rice
Ø		books	rice



## 二、不定冠词的用法

不定冠词与数词 one 同源,相当于汉语的“一”,但不强调数目概念,用于单数可数名词之前,泛指某一些人或物中的“任何一个”。在辅音音素(而不是字母)前用 a,在元音音素前用 an。例如:

a B. A. 一位文学士                      an apple 一只苹果  
a European country 一个欧洲国家      an honor 一种荣誉  
a unit 一个单元                          an umbrella 一把伞

►►1. 不定冠词用在单数名词前,起泛指作用,表示同类事物中的代表。

例 A car has a steering wheel. 汽车有方向盘。

A bird has wings. 鸟有翅膀。

►►2. 不定冠词表示一个人或事物。

例 I met her in a coffee shop near the station.

我在车站附近的一家咖啡馆和她碰面。

A student came to visit me. 有个学生来看我。

►►3. 不定冠词 a(n) 用在抽象名词前表示一个具体的特征。

例 To offer your seat to the old, that's a kindness, indeed.

你把座位让给老年人,真是好心。

I heard a crashing in the kitchen in the midnight.

我在半夜里听到厨房里有东西碎裂的声音。

►►4. 与物质名词(不可数名词)连用,表示种类,一杯之量等。

例 Bring me a coffee, please. 请给我一杯咖啡。

This is an excellent wine. 这是一杯上等的葡萄酒。

►►5. 与 of 连用,表示“同一 相同”。

例 They are people of a kind. 他们是同类人。

These swords are of a length. 这些剑一样长。

►►6. 当单数可数名词之前的形容词有 too, so, as, however, how 等词修饰时,不定冠词应放在形容词之后。

例 I have never seen so amusing a film.

我从来没看过这么有趣的电影。



This is too difficult a job for them to do.

这个工作对他们来说是太难了。

- ▶▶ 7. 不定冠词在与 half, quite, such, what, rather 等词连用时, 通常要放在这些词之后。但是, 当 rather 和 quite 所修饰的名词前有形容词修饰时, 不定冠词 a 也可放在 quite 和 rather 之前。

例 She is quite a good actress. ( She is a quite good actress. )

她是一个相当好的女演员。

That job is rather a bore. 那份工作相当无聊。

It is rather a cold day. ( = It is a rather cold day. )

那是个相当寒冷的日子。

- ▶▶ 8. 某些固定搭配中要求用不定冠词。

come to an end 结束	as a rule 通常
all of a sudden 突然	as a result 因此
have a good( bad ) time 玩得愉快( 不愉快 )	
have a rest( sleep/swim ) 休息( 睡/游 ) 一会	
have a cold 患感冒	have a cough 咳嗽
in a hurry 匆忙地	in a way 有些
in a sense 从某种意义上讲	in a word 总之
keep an eye on 注意着	make a living 谋生
make a fool of 愚弄	make a fortune 发大财
make a study of 研究	put an end to 结束
take an interest in 对……感兴趣	with a will 决心

### 三、定冠词的用法

定冠词 the 用于各类名词前( 单数可数名词、复数可数名词和不可数名词 )表示特指。其基本意义是“这, 那”。

- ▶▶ 1. 表示上文提及到的人或事物, 或由前后关系或情况而知道所指为何物或何事的名词前, 要加定冠词。

例 He was with a boy and a girl. The boy looked about three years old and the girl looked about seven. 他带着一个男孩和一个女孩。那男孩看起来差不多三岁, 那女孩差不多七岁。



Let's go to the station to see her off. 让我们到车站去送她。

- ▶▶ 2. 用于指独一无二的自然现象,或表示方位、左右等的名词之前。

例 Which is farther from the earth, the sun or the moon?

太阳和月亮哪一个离地球远些?

The sun rises in the east and sets in the west. 日出于东而落于西。

注:如果这些表示自然现象的名词前有形容词加以描述时可用不定冠词,例如:

A new moon is hanging in the sky. 一轮新月高悬于空中。

- ▶▶ 3. 与单数可数名词连用,代表一类人或物。

例 The ox is a useful animal. 牛是有用的动物。

The compass was first invented in China.

指南针是中国首先发明的。

- ▶▶ 4. 与某些形容词或分词连用,代表整个类别或某一抽象概念。

例 The old are apt to catch cold. 老年人容易感冒。

The beautiful can never die. 美是永恒的。

- ▶▶ 5. 定冠词加在表示单位的名词前,意为“每,每一”的意思。

例 I rented the house by the month. 我按月租用那房子。

Pencils are sold by the dozen. 铅笔是按打买的。

- ▶▶ 6. 由普通名词组成的专有名词前通常要加定冠词 the。

例 the Orient Express 东方快车

the White House 白宫

the United States 美国

- ▶▶ 7. 定冠词加在表示人体某一部位的名词前,形成一习惯用法。

例 The man took me by the arm. 那男人抓住我的手臂。

Her mother smacked her on the hand. 她母亲拍打她的手。

- ▶▶ 8. 在形容词最高级、序数词和 only 之前,通常要加定冠词 the。

例 This is the most expensive of all the clothes.

这是所有衣服中最贵的一件。

This is the second time that I have seen the film.



这是我第二次看这部电影。

Mr Brown is the only person able to do it.

布朗先生是唯一会做那件事的人。

►► 9. 在乐器前通常要加定冠词 the.

例 My mother always tells me that I'll be glad not to have given up practicing the piano.

我母亲总是告诉我,我将会很高兴没有放弃练习钢琴。

Would you play a tune on the flute?

请你用长笛为我们吹奏一曲好吗?

►► 10. 定冠词在与 whole 连用时,要放在 whole 的前面。但是,当定冠词与 all, both, half, much 等连用时,要放在其后面。

例 The whole text is not difficult to understand. 整篇课文不难理解。

All the trees have lost their leaves. 所有的树叶都已经掉了。

Both the books are interesting. 这两本书都很有趣。

►► 11. 定冠词 the 用于逢“十”的复数数词前,指世纪中的年代。

例 He was not in China in the 1950s. 20 世纪 50 年代他不在中国。

►► 12. 用在姓氏的复数形式或民族名称前,表示全家或整个民族。

例 The Turners are sitting at lunch table. 特纳一家正吃午饭。

The Chinese are a brave and hardworking people.

中华民族是勤劳勇敢的民族。

►► 13. 在江河、海洋、山脉、群岛、海峡、海湾、沙漠等名词之前要加定冠词。

例 the Pacific( Ocean ) 太平洋

the South-China Sea 南中国海

the Panama Canal 巴拿马运河

the Maldives 马尔代夫群岛

the Himalayas 喜马拉雅山脉

the Sahara 撒哈拉沙漠

the Persian Gulf 波斯湾

►► 14. 某些固定搭配中要求用定冠词。

例 beside the question 离题      by the way 顺便提一句





in the dark 在暗处	in the future 未来
in the end 最终	in the open 在露天
in the sun 阳光下	on the contrary 相反
on the increase/rise 增长	on the decrease/fall 下降
on the spot 当场	on the whole 总的来说
out of the question 不可能	to the point 切题
play the fool 做傻事	set the fashion 标新立异
in the morning ( afternoon/evening ) 在上午( 下午/晚上 )	

#### 四、零冠词的用法

零冠词,即不用冠词。表示名词的泛指或一般概念。它主要用于物质名词、抽象名词、复数可数名词,也能用于某些单数可数名词。

►►1. 物质名词、抽象名词或复数名词前,通常要用零冠词。

例 Blood is thicker than water. 血浓于水。

Wisdom is better than strength. 智慧胜于力量。

Books are what I like best. 书籍是我最喜欢的东西。

►►2. 在与 by 连用的交通工具名称之前,通常用零冠词。

例 I used to go to school by bus. 我过去常乘公共汽车上学。

They are going to travel by train. 他们打算乘火车去旅行。

►►3. 在科学名称、球类运动、棋类游戏、竞赛技能等名词前,通常用零冠词。

例 Students play basketball every afternoon. 学生每天下午都打篮球。

I like playing chess. 我喜欢下棋。

►►4. 在一个以“普通名词 + as”开始的让步状语从句中,此普通名词前用零冠词。

例 Child as he is, he seems to know everything.

他虽然是个孩子,但他似乎什么都知道。

►►5. 有些名词如 bed, church, class, college, court, hospital, market, prison, school, society, space, town, university 等与介词连用时,通常用零冠词。

例 He was thought to be a danger to society.



他被认为是社会的危险人物。

The murderer was sent to prison. 那个杀人犯被关到监狱。

- ▶▶ 6. 表示家庭成员或 nurse, cook(厨师), teacher 等用作称呼的名词前用零冠词。

例 Mother says that we should help him. 妈妈说我们应该帮助他。

Teacher was pleased with our work. 老师对我们的作业感到满意。

- ▶▶ 7. 表示日常饮食方面的名词前用零冠词。

例 Have you had your lunch? 吃过午饭了吗?

注:但如果是特指或指具体的饮食时,可用定冠词。例如:

The lunch we are having was prepared by father.

我们正吃的午饭是爸爸准备的。

- ▶▶ 8. 表示季节的名称前用零冠词。

例 Winter in South China is not so cold. 华南的冬季不这么冷。

注:但如果季节的名称在句中含有特定的时间概念,应有定冠词。例如:

I met him in the winter of 1989. 我在 1989 年的冬天遇到过他。

- ▶▶ 9. 呼唤语以及表示感叹意味的名词前用零冠词。

例 Stay where you are, boy! 小伙子,呆在那里别动!

Young man, mind! A car is approaching! 年轻人,当心!车来啦!

- ▶▶ 10. 单数可数名词用作紧密联系的并列结构或作列举之用时,一般用零冠词。

例 He was covered with snow from head to foot. 他浑身上下都是雪。

We are brother and sister. 我们是兄妹。

- ▶▶ 11. 在作同位语或补足语表示正式的或独一无二的职位、头衔的名词之前,常用零冠词。

例 Mary is captain of the team. 玛丽是这个队的队长。

He has been elected chairman of the students union.

他已当选为学生会主席。



William Faulkner, American novelist, was awarded the Nobel Prize for Literature in 1949.

美国小说家威廉·福克纳, 1949 年被授予诺贝尔文学奖。

- ▶▶ 12. turn 作系动词用, 后接职业、职位时, 用零冠词。

例 He has turned scientist. 他成了科学家。

He has turned chairman of the committee. 他成了委员会的主席。

- ▶▶ 13. 在某些固定用语中, 要求用零冠词。

at anchor 在抛锚	in sight of 看见……
at hand 在手头	in hospital 住院
at first 起初	keep in mind 记在心上
at present 目前	take place 发生
by chance 碰巧	take care of 照顾
at bottom 在底部	in face of 面对……
in peace 平安, 平静	in place of 取代……
at last 最后	learn by heart 记忆
in trouble 有麻烦	take part in 参加
by accident 偶然	

## 五、冠词用法的其他问题

- ▶▶ 1. 如果两个名词代表着两个人或物, 通常在各个名词前都要加冠词。

例 The teacher and the parents of the boy were discussing his case.

男孩的教师和父母那时正在讨论他的情况。

Have you seen the red and the white roses in the garden?

你看见花园里的红玫瑰和白玫瑰了吗? [指两种玫瑰花]

- ▶▶ 2. 有些名词常成对出现视为一体, 一般只用一个冠词。

例 There is a horse and cart in front of the house. 房前有一套马车。

类似的情况还有 a knife and fork 一副刀叉, a cup and saucer 一套茶具, a watch and chain 一块带表链的手表, 等等。

- ▶▶ 3. 如果指同一人(物)或整体的一部分, 一般只用一个冠词。

例 Have you a French and English dictionary? 你有法英词典吗?



Have you seen the red and white roses over there ?

你看到那里红白相间的玫瑰花了吗？

►► 4. 某些名词前使用不同冠词时意义有差异。

- 例 { My son has gone to school. 我儿子上学去了。  
 { I am going to the school to see the headmaster. 我要去学校见校长。  
 { My daughter usually goes to bed at nine o'clock.  
 { 我女儿通常 9 点上床就寝。  
 { Lie down on the bed. 躺在这床上。  
 { His father was sent to prison. 他父亲被关进监狱。  
 { We drove past the prison. 我们从监狱旁驶过。  
 { —Can you finish reading the book in a month ?  
 { —你能一个月读完这本书吗？  
 { —Yes, it's out of question. 一是 没问题。  
 { —No, it's out of the question. 一不 根本不可能。  
 { You can ask him for help in case of need. 需要时 你可让他帮忙。  
 { This is the case with me. 这就是我的情况。  
 { Those garments are no longer in fashion. 那些衣服不再流行了。  
 { He can speak French in a fashion. 他马马虎虎能讲一点法语。  
 { The children have taken quite a fancy to their teacher.  
 { 孩子们十分喜欢他们的老师。  
 { The exhibition took the fancy of the visitors.  
 { 展览品吸引着这些参观者。

## 第二节 数 词

数词可分为基数词和序数词两种。

### 一、基数词

基数词表示人或物的数量。如 three books 三本书 ten teeth 十颗牙。

►► 1. 十位数与个位数之间要用连字符“-”。

- 例 ninety-nine 九十九                      forty-five 四十五



- ▶▶2. 百位数与十位数之间,英国英语中用 and ,而美国英语中一般不用。

例 three thousand two hundred and twenty-one 三千二百二十一

- ▶▶3. 英语中无“万”级词,要用 ten thousand 表示。

例 sixty thousand 六万                      twenty thousand 二万

- ▶▶4. 基数词在修饰名词时不加-s。

例 four hundred people 400 人      three thousand students 三千学生  
但是,当基数词在与 of 连用时,就要加-s。

例 hundreds of people 数百人

thousands of... 数千.....

tens of thousands of... 成千上万的.....

hundreds upon hundreds of... 成千上万的.....

millions of... 数百万.....

- ▶▶5. 数词常与名词构成复合定语。这些构成成分间要用连字符,且只用名词的单数形式。

例 a two-hundred-page book 一本 200 页的书  
a ten-month leave 一次 10 个月的休假

## 二、序数词

- ▶▶1. 序数词表示人或事物的次序,通常要与定冠词 the 连用。

例 This is the second time that I've met you. 这是我第二次见到你。

I was second in the race. 我在比赛中得第二。

[ 序数词作表语时不加冠词 ]

- ▶▶2. 序数词如果表示的是“又一次或再一次”时,前面就要用不定冠词 a(n)。

例 They have a second house. 他们另外有一栋房子。

You'd better take a second pair of pants.

你最好再带一条备用的裤子。

- ▶▶3. 基数词变序数词的特殊形式。

例 one—first	two—second	three—third
five—fifth	eight—eighth	nine—ninth



twelve—twelfth

其余都是在基数词词尾加 th。

- 4. 十位整数的基数词变为序数词时,先将基数词词尾 ty 中的 y 变成 i,然后加 eth。其余两位数的基数词变为序数词时,只需将个位数变为序数词,十位数不变。

例 twenty—twentieth                      fifty—fiftieth  
forty-two—forty-second              eighty-five—eighty-fifth

### 三、分数

分数是由基数词和序数词合成的,分子用基数词表示,分母用序数词表示。分子是“1”的情况下,分母不加-s。除了分子是1的情况外,作为分母的序数词要用复数形式。

例 one-third 三分之一                      two-fifths 五分之二  
three-fourths 四分之三              one and two-fifths 一又五分之二

### 四、倍数

英语中倍数增减表示法种类繁多,其含义与汉语不尽一致,使用时应特别注意。

- 1. 表示倍数的方法。

表示倍数的常用方法有:

- (1) 主语 + be + times + 形容词或副词比较级 + than + 被比对象
- (2) 主语 + be + times + as + 形容词或副词原级 + as + 被比对象
- (3) 主语 + be + times + n. + of + 被比对象
- (4) 主语 + be + times + that of + 被比对象

例 The volume of the earth is 49 times larger than that of the moon.

地球的体积比月球的体积大 49 倍。

The oxygen atom is nearly 16 times as heavy as the hydrogen atom.

氧原子的重量几乎是氢原子的 16 倍。

The earth is 49 times the size of the moon.

地球是月亮大小的 49 倍。

The volume of the plastic container is three times that of the metal one. 塑料容器的容积是金属的 3 倍大。



►► 2. 表示倍数增减的方法。

英语中也常用一些动词来表示倍数的增减。常用的方法为：

主语 +  $\begin{cases} \text{increase( go up ,rise ,raise. . . )} \\ \text{decrease( go down ,reduce ,drop ,fall. . . )} \\ \text{+ } \begin{cases} \text{by( 净增减多少 )} \\ \text{to( 增减到多少 )} \end{cases} \end{cases}$  + 百分数( 数字 ,倍数 ) + 被比对象

例 The production of detergent has been increased by 3 times since 1990.

1990 年以来 ,洗涤剂的生产增加了三倍。

The total consumption of coal in this city has decreased to 300 ,000 tons. 这座城市煤的总消耗量下降到 30 万吨。

This year the consumption of electricity has gone up by 52 per cent as compared with that of last year.

今年与去年相比耗电量增加 52%。

有时倍数也可用 double ,triple 等词来表示。

例 He doubled his income in three years. 三年内他收入增加了一倍。

The grain output is quadrupled. 粮食产量翻了两番。



## Exercise 9

### I. 选择题

1. I'll come in \_\_\_\_\_ minute ; in fact , I'll come \_\_\_\_\_ second I'm through.  
A. a , the      B. a , a      C. the , a      D. the , the
2. I saw \_\_\_\_\_ waiting in line applying for the only position.  
A. a lot of unemployment      B. unemployment  
C. a lot of the unemployed      D. a lot of unemployee
3. There used to be \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful old bridge , but during the war  
\_\_\_\_\_ bridge was blown up.  
A. the , the      B. a , the      C. a , a      D. the , a
4. The committee have decided by \_\_\_\_\_ majority to ask you to remain.  
A. a      B. an      C. /      D. this
5. When we saw her face , we knew \_\_\_\_\_ was bad.  
A. the news      B. some news      C. a news      D. news
6. \_\_\_\_\_ is very important in daily life.  
A. Friendship      B. The friendship  
C. Friendships      D. A friendship
7. " What musical instrument do you like to play ?"  
" \_\_\_\_\_ ."  
A. The violin      B. A violin      C. Violin      D. Violins
8. " Make yourself \_\_\_\_\_ and help yourself to some candy. " Mary said to me.  
A. at the home      B. in the home      C. at home      D. in home
9. The man was put \_\_\_\_\_ for theft.  
A. in the prison      B. at the prison      C. in prison      D. into prison
10. In the ancient time , sailors believed they went in \_\_\_\_\_ power of the mighty  
spirit of \_\_\_\_\_ sea.  
A. a , a      B. the , the      C. a , the      C. the , a
11. I'll never forget \_\_\_\_\_ of 1983 when I entered college.  
A. a summer      B. summer      C. the summer      D. summers
12. I went to \_\_\_\_\_ bed to pick up some papers that I had left on it.  
A. the      B. a      C. a small      D. /
13. There is a truck \_\_\_\_\_ the classroom.





· 第九章 冠词和数词 ·

- A. in the front of                      B. in front of  
C. in front                                D. at the front of
14. His honesty is \_\_\_\_\_. He can be always trusted.  
A. out of question                      B. out of the question  
C. not the question                      D. in the question
15. \_\_\_\_\_ students \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting held the day before yesterday.  
A. The number... attend                B. A number of... attended  
C. The number of... attended          D. A number... attend
16. On Sundays they often go to \_\_\_\_\_ to hear music.  
A. a church    B. the church    C. church    D. some churches
17. The dancer and \_\_\_\_\_ has arrived already.  
A. singer    B. a singer    C. the singer    D. singers
18. \_\_\_\_\_ are a brave and hardworking people.  
A. Chinese    B. The Chinese    C. A Chinese    D. Some Chinese
19. I'll keep \_\_\_\_\_ eye on the baby when she is away.  
A. the            B. one            C. an            D. much
20. Mercury freezes if it is cooled to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a too low temperature                B. too low temperature  
C. a low too temperature                D. too low a temperature
21. I am determined to go there \_\_\_\_\_ instead of taking a bus.  
A. on the foot    B. on foot    C. by foot    D. on two feet
22. I think you should have \_\_\_\_\_ before you go to work.  
A. sleep                                      B. a good sleep  
C. the sleep                                  D. some good sleep
23. I haven't read \_\_\_\_\_ book but I read half of it. At least I know something about the subject now.  
A. whole    B. all            C. all of            D. the whole
24. Thank you, sir. You have done me \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. kindness    B. a kindness    C. kind    D. the kindness
25. Boys often take \_\_\_\_\_ in teasing girls.  
A. a pleasure    B. pleasure    C. the pleasure    D. pleased
26. \_\_\_\_\_ as he is, Tom couldn't have done such a thing.  
A. A fool    B. Fool    C. The fool    D. Fools
27. A young man cannot have \_\_\_\_\_.



- A. experience of world                      B. experience of the world  
C. the experience of the world    D. the experience of world
28. My bike has been stolen , so I will have to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. buy a new one                      B. buy the one  
C. buy the other                      D. buy the other one
29. He is \_\_\_\_\_ expert in Chinese history but he is also interested in \_\_\_\_\_ history of Japan.  
A. a ,the              B. an ,the              C. an a              D. a /
30. “ What is he ?”“ He is \_\_\_\_\_. ”  
A. a poet and novelist                      B. a poet and a novelist  
C. poet and novelist                      D. the poet and novelist
31. “ How did you pay the workers ?”“ As a rule ,they were paid \_\_\_\_\_. ”  
A. by an hour    B. by the hour    C. by a hour    D. by hours
32. \_\_\_\_\_ more to be pitied than blamed.  
A. Uneducated are                      B. Uneducated is  
C. The uneducated are                      D. The uneducated is
33. \_\_\_\_\_ teacher and \_\_\_\_\_ guardian of the child were discussing his case.  
A. A a              B. The a              C. A the              D. The the
34. People believe in the resurrection of \_\_\_\_\_ of a soul which will experience.  
A. the dead and the possession    B. the deaths and possession  
C. deaths and possessions    D. dead and the possession
35. \_\_\_\_\_ is very important in daily life.  
A. Honesty    B. The honesty    C. An honesty    D. Honest
36. By 2010 ,the number of the students in this university is expected to double \_\_\_\_\_ of 1990.  
A. one              B. that              C. what              D. which
37. \_\_\_\_\_ Air and Space Museum has the highest attendance record of all the museums in world.  
A. A              B. An              C. The              D. /
38. “ Do you ever see any channel ?”“ Yes ,I’ve been to \_\_\_\_\_ Channel. ”  
A. the English    B. English              C. an English    D. England
39. At least he was there in time to tell his adventures to Jim while Jim did \_\_\_\_\_ of the work.  
A. three-fourths    B. three-fourth    C. threes-fourths    D. threes-fourth



· 第九章 冠词和数词 ·

40. She often showed herself off by playing \_\_\_\_\_ piano in public.  
A. /                      B. the                      C. a                      D. an
41. It has long been known that there is \_\_\_\_\_ electric field inside \_\_\_\_\_ earth.  
A. a ,/                      B. an , the                      C. the , /                      D. an , /
42. The population of many Alaska cities has \_\_\_\_\_ in the past three years.  
A. more than doubled                      B. more doubled than  
C. much than doubled                      D. much double than
43. We have produced \_\_\_\_\_ this year as we did in 1993.  
A. as much cotton twice                      B. as twice much cotton  
C. much as twice cotton                      D. twice as much cotton
44. The wheels of the old wagon are nearly \_\_\_\_\_ those of a modern car.  
A. three times the size of                      B. three times size of  
C. three times size of                      D. three time the sizes of
45. Strings of the same thickness made of nylon are \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. five times stronger than those                      B. five times strong than those  
C. five times strong than those                      D. five times strong as those

II. 改错题

1. Two-thirds of the town's housing have been renovated.  
A                      B                      C                      D
2. The chemistry teacher explained the experiment in such of a way that it  
was easily understood.  
C                      D
3. Since beginning of photography , inventors have tried to make photographs that  
duplicate natural colours.  
A                      B                      C                      D
4. In that city most of all a people often go hunting over there.  
A                      B                      C                      D
5. Long Island , a island that forms the southeastern part of New York , has a  
greater population than that of forty-two of the fifty states.  
A                      B                      C                      D
6. Wind power is a ancient source of energy to which people may return in the  
near future.  
A                      B                      C                      D



7. Our culture is the people's culture. It reflects the struggle and the aspirations of the people.  
A B C D
8. Today is such beautiful day that many people go for an outing.  
A B C D
9. George has taken place of Edward as captain of the team.  
A B C D
10. The harder you work , the more likely you are to qualify as doctor by the time you are thirty.  
A B C D
11. Roy was severely scolded by his father for running in the front of the car while chasing his ball into the street.  
A B C D
12. A good exercise program helps teach people to avoid the habits that might shorten the lives.  
A B C D
13. At dawn we got up and climbed to the top of the mountain to enjoy sunrise.  
A B C D
14. Magazines provide the great variety of advertisements and entertainment as well as information.  
A B C D
15. Having brought up ten children of their own , the Smith's may be considered expert on child behavior.  
A B C D
16. She was very excellent at her work and as the result of this , she finished the work ahead of time.  
A B C D
17. The new tax program by a government led to a series of demonstrations throughout the country.  
A B C D
18. All books in the resources room of the English Department are arranged in alphabetic order.  
A B C D



· 第九章 冠词和数词 ·

19. The world situation is most favorable to the cause of the peace , national  
liberation and socialism.  
A B C D
20. Although adult education in China began in 1950s , its chief growth has taken  
place since the open university on TV came into being.  
A B C D



# 第十章 形容词与副词

## 第一节 形 容 词

形容词是用来描写或修饰名词与代词的,表示人或事物的性质和特征,在句中作定语、表语或补语。

### 一、形容词的种类

- 1. 根据其含义,可分为品质形容词和关系形容词。前者可以与 *than* 连用构成比较级形式,后者则不能这样用,但后者可与其他词搭配构成比较级形式。

例 This problem is more complicated than that.



这个问题要比那问题复杂。

This engine is superior in many aspects to that.

这台发动机在很多方面要比那一台好。

品质形容词 new, bad, difficult, complicated, healthy...

关系形容词: superior, inferior, possible, prior, major, minor, senior, junior...

- 2. 形容词还可分为动态形容词和静态形容词。前者可用于进行时态和祈使句中,表示暂时的某种特征,或表示说话人的看法,后者则不能。

例 He was being generous. Don't believe in him.

他只是那会儿很大方,别相信他。

Be more careful next time. 下次细心点。

动态形容词: careful, brave, generous, honest...

静态形容词: white, small, great, pleasant...

## 二、表语形容词和定语形容词

- 1. 形容词在句子中主要用作定语、表语和补语等。

例 The old man was too feeble to walk.

那位老人太虚弱了,不能行走。[作定语]

The door is open. 门开着。[作表语]

They found the book very interesting.

他们发现这本书很有趣。[作宾语补语]

The room was found empty. 发现房间是空的。[作主语补语]

- 2. 大部分形容词既可用于表语,也可用作定语,但有些形容词只能用作表语或定语。

1) 有些形容词(特别是以 a-开头的形容词)只用作表语。常见的只用作表语的形容词有:

afraid 害怕的	alive 活着的	unable 不能的
ahead 在前的	aware 意识到的	sorry 抱歉的
alone 单独的	ashamed 羞愧的	glad 高兴的
alike 相似的	akin 类似的	lit 照亮的
asleep 睡着的	well 健康的	proof 耐得住的
awake 醒着的	content 满足的	



例 The children were asleep at 7 , but now they are awake.

孩子们 7 点就睡着了 ,但现在他们醒了。

They look so alike. 他们看起来很像。

2) 有些形容词只用作定语。常见的只用作定语的形容词有 :

outer 外部的	little 小的	inner 内部的
golden 黄金般的	daily 每天的	spare 空闲的
former 以前的	weekly 每周的	live 活的
latter 后面的	right 右边的	elder 年长的

例 In former times people lit their homes by gas , not electricity. The latter is considered safer.

过去人们用煤气在家里照明 ,不用电。电比煤气要安全。

The doctor has a little experience of a heart transplant surgery.

那位医生对心脏移植手术有一点经验。

### 三、名词化的形容词

有些形容词加定冠词 the 起名词作用 ,表示某一类人或事物 ,没有复数形式 ,用于指人时 ,具有复数概念 ,作主语时谓语动词用复数形式 ;用于指物或抽象概念时 ,表示整体 ,作主语时谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。

例 The wise look to the wiser for advice.

聪明的人向比他们更聪明的人请教。

The homeless have no money to buy what they need.

那些无家可归的人没有钱买他们所需要的东西。

The good in him outweighs the bad. 他的优点多于缺点。

The true is to be distinguished from the false. 真伪要辨明。

### 四、形容词在句中的位置

►► 1. 形容词作定语通常放在被修饰的名词前面。

例 This is a very important meeting. 这是一个非常重要的会议。

The emotional impact on the children can be significant.

这对孩子们情感上的冲击也是很大的。





- 2. 形容词作定语修饰 some ,any ,no ,every 和-body ,thing 等构成的复合不定代词时 ,应放在其后面。

例 Is there anything wrong with your bicycle ?

你的自行车有毛病吗？

I'd like to show you something interesting.

我想给你看些有趣的东西。

Anyone intelligent can understand it.

任何有头脑的人都能理解这一点。

- 3. 以前缀 a-开头的某些表语形容词( 如 alike , alive , alone , afraid , awake , aware , alight , afloat , asleep 等 )必须放在后面作定语。这一结构相当于省去了关系代词和系动词的定语从句。

例 He was the only person ( that was ) awake at the moment.

他是那时唯一醒着的人。

The house ( which was ) ablaze is next door to me.

那幢着火的房子就在我隔壁。

- 4. 以后缀-ible 或-able 结尾的某些形容词( 如 acceptable , adaptable , available , eligible , imaginable , obtainable , possible , suitable 等 )放在所修饰的名词前或名词后意义不变。但是 ,当这些词所修饰的名词前有形容词最高级或有 only 修饰时 ,要放在后面。

例 I doubt whether we can complete our contract in the time available ( in the available time ).

我不确定我们是否能在现有的时间内完成我们的合同。

This is the only book available. 这是仅有一本书了。

The school offers courses in every imaginable subject ( in every subject imaginable ).

这所学校在各种能想到的学科方面开设了课程。

That is the greatest difficulty imaginable.

那是所能想象得到的最大的困难。

- 5. 形容词短语作定语一般要后置 ,相当于一个省略了关系代词和系动词的定语从句。



例 A man ( who is ) so difficult to please must be hard to work with.

一个如此难以取悦的人一定很难共事。

She is only a girl ( who is ) three years old.

她只是一个三岁的女孩。

- 6. 英语中有些形容词既可作前置定语,也可作后置定语,但所表达的意思不同。如 concerned, involved, present, proper, responsible 等。

例 The doctor concerned is on holiday. 主管医师在休假。

The concerned doctor rang for an ambulance.

心情焦虑的医生打电话叫救护车。

This is a very involved explanation. 这是一个非常复杂的说明。

We have discussed the issue with the people involved.

我们已经与有关的人讨论了这个问题。

This is a proper question. 这是一个恰当的问题。

The question proper has not been answered.

问题本身没有得到回答。

the present member 目前的成员

the member present 当时在场的成员

the responsible man 可依赖的人

the man responsible 应负责的人

## 五、前置形容词的排列顺序

当几个形容词同时修饰一个名词,一般来说,意义较具体的或与名词关系较密切的形容词通常放在最靠近被修饰的名词。次序排列如下所示:

限定词 + 一般描绘性形容词 + 表示大小、形状的形容词

+ 表示年龄、新旧的形容词 + 表示色彩的形容词

+ 表示国籍、地区、出处的形容词 + 表示物质材料的形容词

+ 表示用途、类别的形容词或名词 + 名词

例 a few new major urban highways 几条新的主要城市公路

a weak small spare old man 一个瘦弱的小老头

a pair of beautiful little Russian riding boots 一双漂亮的俄国小马靴



a large antique brown and white German beer-mug

一只德国古代棕白两色的大啤酒杯

## 六、几组易混淆的同源形容词

1. alone 独自的—lonely 孤独的
2. alive 活着的[作表语]—living 有生命的—live 活的 ;现场直播的[作定语]
3. clean 清洁的—clear 清澈的
4. considerate 体贴人的 ;体谅的—considerable 应考虑的 ;相当大的
5. continual 频繁的—continuous 连续不断的
6. comical 好笑的—comic 喜剧的
7. desirable 合意的—desirous 渴望的
8. dead 死的—deadly 致命的—deathly 死一般的
9. distinct 清晰的—distinctive 有特色的
10. economical 节俭的—economic 经济上的
11. efficient 效率高的 ;能干的—effective 有作用的
12. electrical 电的 ;与电有关的—electric 电的 ;带电的
13. hard 艰苦的—hardy 能吃苦耐劳的
14. healthful 有益于健康的—healthy 健康的 ;卫生的
15. historical 历史的—historic 有历史意义的
16. honorary 名誉上的—honorable 可尊敬的
17. imaginary 虚构的—imaginable 可以想象的—imaginative 富有想象力的
18. immortal 不朽的—immoral 不道德的
19. industrial 工业的—industrious 勤劳的
20. intelligent 聪明的—intelligible 可理解的 ;清楚的
21. intense 强烈的—intensive 集中的 ;加强的
22. like 相像的[作定语]—likely 可能的—alike 相像的[作表语]
23. popular 流行的—populous 人口稠密的
24. practical 讲究实际的—practicable 能实行的
25. respectable 值得尊敬的—respectful 礼貌的—respective 分别的 ;各自的



26. sensitive 敏感的—sensible 感觉到的 明智的  
 27. successful 成功的一—successive 连续的  
 28. uninterested 不感兴趣的一—disinterested 无私的  
 29. valueless 无价值的一—worthless 无价值的一—valuable 有价值的  
 的一—invaluable 无法估价的一—priceless 无价的

## 第二节 副 词

副词则用来修饰动词、形容词和副词,还可修饰介词短语和句子,在句中作状语。

### 一、副词的种类

根据其意义,副词可分为如下七类。

- 1. 时间副词 表示动作发生的时间范围。常用来回答“when”这一类问题。

yesterday	now	before	afterward
today	soon	ago	later
tomorrow	already		

- 2. 地点副词 表示动作发生的位置或方位。

here	above	down	downstairs
there	below	around	upstairs
everywhere	up		

- 3. 频率副词 修饰动词,表示动作发生的频率程度。常用于回答“how often...”等问题。

always	often	occasionally	hardly
generally	frequently	rarely	never
usually	sometimes	seldom	

- 4. 程度副词 修饰形容词和副词。

completely	entirely	precisely	extremely
fully	exactly	quite	highly
really	mainly	partially	rather



almost                  fairly                  somewhat                  slightly  
largely                  relatively

- 5. 方式副词 :修饰动词 ,表示动作进行的方式。

quietly , suddenly , carefully , fast , easily

- 6. 语气副词 :也称评注性副词 ,表示讲话者的态度 ,修饰整个句子。

certainly , surely , indeed , probably , maybe , obviously

- 7. 逻辑连接副词 :修饰整个句子 ,表示该句与上下文的逻辑关系。

besides                  however                  whereas                  therefore  
moreover                  nevertheless                  thus                  otherwise

## 二、副词的用法

- 1. 主要用作状语 ,修饰动词、形容词及副词 ,还可修饰介词短语和句子。

例 I have already prepared my lesson.

我已准备好功课了。[ 修饰动词 ]

He has been extremely busy these days.

他这几天非常忙。[ 修饰形容词 ]

You translated the article quite well.

这篇文章你译得相当好。[ 修饰副词 ]

She stood exactly in the middle of the room.

她站在屋子的正中央。[ 修饰介词短语 ]

Obviously , you are wrong. 显然 ,你错了。[ 修饰句子 ]

- 2. 有时 ,副词也可用作表语或定语 ,作定语时通常后置。

这类词常见的有 :

above                  away                  here                  out  
abroad                  back                  home                  there  
afterward                  below                  in                  yesterday  
ahead                  downstairs                  on

例 Is your sister in ? 你姐姐在家吗 ? [ 作表语 ]

The girl there is my friend.



在那儿的那个女孩是我的朋友。[ 作定语 ]

The good news soon got around. 好消息很快就传开了。

I met him on my way home.

我在回家的路上遇见了他。[ 作定语 ]

- 3. 有些副词( rather, quite 等 )通常可以放在名词前用于增强语气,其形式为“副词 + 不定冠词 + 名词”。但是,当名词前有形容词时,不定冠词可放在这类副词之前。

例 That job is rather a bore. 那份工作相当无聊。

We held a quite good party ( quite a good party ).

我们举行了一个不错的晚会。

This is rather a difficult task ( a rather difficult task ).

这是一个相当困难的任务。

### 三、副词的位置

- 1. 副词的位置比较灵活,有的副词( 如 sometimes, often, soon, perhaps 等 )可置于句首、句中、或句末。

例 Sometimes he comes early.

He sometimes comes early. } 有时他来得很早。

He comes early sometimes. }

- 2. 程度副词通常位于所修饰的那个词之前。

例 This problem is too difficult for me to solve.

这个问题对我来说太难解决了。

You spoke so fast. 你讲得太快了。

注:enough 通常位于它所修饰的形容词或副词后面。例如:

Be kind enough to reply early. 最好早些回信。

- 3. 频度副词( 如 often, always, never, seldom 等 )通常位于行为动词的前面,系动词、助动词和情态动词的后面。

例 I usually get up very early. 我通常起得很早。

He was never absent from the class last term.

他上学期从未缺过课。

I shall always remember it. 我将永远记住这件事。



You cannot always be right. 你不可能永远都对。

注: often 放在行为动词后面时, 要加 very 或 quite 修饰。例如:

[ × ] He comes here often.

[ ✓ ] He comes here very /quite often.

- 4. 多数副词都置于谓语动词之后, 如有宾语, 则置于宾语之后。  
但是, 当宾语太长时, 也可将副词放在宾语之前。

例 The world is moving forward. 世界在前进。

He left the room quietly. 他悄悄地离开屋子。

You must discuss carefully the proposals that were put forward at the meeting. 你们必须仔细讨论会上所提出的那些提案。

- 5. 几个副词同时出现在一个句子中时, 一般次序是: 程度副词 + 方式副词 + 地点副词 + 时间副词。时间副词通常放在句后, 有时为了强调, 也可放在句首。

例 They arrived there early yesterday. 他们昨天早早就到了那里。

Yesterday they all worked very hard there.

昨天, 他们在那儿都干得很卖力。

- 6. 语气副词和逻辑性副词位置较为灵活, 可位于句首、句中或句末, 通常用逗号隔开。

例 Certainly, I parked outside your door.

I, certainly, parked outside your door.

I parked outside your door, certainly.

没错, 我曾在你门口停过车。

#### 四、几组同源副词的对比

有些副词具有两种形式: 一种与形容词同形, 另一种在其后加上 -ly。有的两者意义相同, 但用法不同; 有的意义和用法都不同。这类副词在使用时容易出错, 应加以注意。

- 1. 形式意义相同, 但用法不同的同源形容词。

一般说来, 形容词形的副词在句中作用相当于表语或补语, 或多用于口语中; 以 -ly 结尾的副词在句中作用相当于程度或方式状语。



有时两者也可互换。常见的这类副词有：

cheap/cheaply 便宜地	right/rightly 正确地
clear/clearly 清楚地	slow/slowly 慢慢地
close/closely 紧密地	tight/tightly 牢固地
fair/fairly 公正地	wide/widely 广泛地
firm/firmly 坚定地	wrong/wrongly 错误地
loud/loudly 响亮地	deep/deeply 深深地
quick/quickly 迅速地	

例 We must stand firm. 我们必须站稳立场。

They fixed the post firmly in the ground.

他们将那根柱子牢牢地固定在地上。

►► 2. 有些形式相异的副词,意义差别也较大,需牢记。

例 I dug deep before I found water. 我挖得很深才找到水。

I deeply regret your misfortune.

对你的不幸我深感遗憾。

The hawk was circling high in the sky.

那只鹰高高地在天上盘旋着。

They spoke highly of him. 他们对他评价很高。

I must go direct home. 我必须直接回家。

He is directly responsible for the work. 他直接负责这项工作。

常见的这类副词有：

direct 径直地 —directly 立刻

free 免费地 —freely 自由地

hard 努力地 —hardly 几乎不

high 高高地 —highly 高度地

just 正好 —justly 公正地

late 迟 晚 —lately 最近

most 最 —mostly 大部分

near 近 —nearly 几乎

pretty 相当地 —prettily 优美地

sharp 突然地 急剧地 —sharply 严厉地





short 唐突地,突然—shortly 马上

## 五、几组形、意相近副词的区别

### ▶▶ 1. all together 和 altogether.

副词词组 all together 意为“一起,总共”;副词 altogether 意为“完全”(= entirely); 总的来说 (= in general)。

例 All together thirty students have been admitted to the class.

该班总共收了 30 名学生。

It is altogether out of the question. 那是完全不可能的。

Altogether, it wasn't a very interesting excursion.

总的来说,那不是一次很有趣的郊游。

### ▶▶ 2. anyhow, somehow 和 somewhat.

anyhow 意为“无论如何,以任何方式”,相当于“anyway”; “at any rate”; somehow 意为“以某种方式”(= in some way or other)或“由于某种原因”; somewhat 意为“从某种意义讲,有几分”,相当于“in a way”, “rather”; “a little”。

例 The house was empty and I couldn't get in anyhow.

房子是空的,但我无论如何都进不去。

We shall get to the station somehow.

我们总会想办法到达火车站的。

I was somewhat surprised at the result. 我对这个结果有些惊讶。

### ▶▶ 3. rather 和 fairly.

两者都有“相当地,颇”的意思,有时可互用。但是,有时它们表示的含义不同, rather 常修饰贬义的词, fairly 常修饰褒义的词。

例 We know him fairly/rather well. 我们相当了解他。

He is fairly rich, but his brother is rather poor.

他还算有钱,可是他的兄弟相当穷。

注: rather 可与比较级和 too 连用,而 fairly 则不行。例如:

This hat is rather more expensive than that.

这顶帽子比那顶贵得多。

He was rather too late for school. 他上学太晚了。



►►4. very ,much 和 quite.

very 修饰形容词(包括由分词转化来的形容词)和副词,意为“非常”,程度意味较强,much 修饰 V-ed 以及形容词和副词的比较级,very much 修饰肯定句中的动词,如在否定句中,只用 much ,quite 意为“还算可以”,程度比 very 弱,但在修饰表示完全概念的形容词或副词(如 right ,wrong ,perfect ,certain ,empty ,full 等)时,意为“完全地”(= completely )。

例 His argument is very convincing. 他的论点很有说服力。

English is very much used in many countries.

英语在很多国家被广泛使用。

He was very excited by the news of success.

得知这个成功的消息他非常兴奋。

I very much prefer football to basketball.

我非常喜欢足球而不喜欢篮球。

The bottle is quite empty. 这个瓶子空空的。

I quite understand how to use the machine.

我完全了解该怎么去使用那部机器。

注:在使用 much 时要注意下面几个惯用法:

(1) much 常用来修饰 too 或 rather ,意为“大大地”、“非常”、“极其”。例如:

I quite understand how to use the machine.

我完全了解该怎么去使用那部机器。

That s much too nice. 那真是太好了。

I d much rather not go out. 我不想出门。

(2) too much“太多”、“(价)太高”、“太过分”。

His parents' expectation just got to be too much for him.

父母亲的期望已变成他无法承受的重担。

You have given me too much. 你给我太多了。

(3) much( still ,even )less“更不用说”,用于否定句。例如:

I am so tired that I cannot walk any more , much less run.

我太累了,无法再走,更不用说跑了。



She hasn't cleaned her own room, still less mine.

她连自己的房间都还没打扫,更何况我的房间。

(4) much (still) more “更不用说,更何况”,用于肯定句。

例如:

He can do it well, much more can you.

他都能做好,更何况是你。

We should thank him for his advice, still more for his financial help.

我们应该感谢他的忠告,更要感谢他在经济上的帮助。

►► 5. most, mostly 和 almost.

most“最”,修饰形容词和副词的最高级;mostly“通常,在多数情况下”;almost“几乎”。

例 This is the most exciting film I have ever seen.

这是我看过的最刺激的一部电影。

He mostly gets up late on Sunday. 他通常在星期日起床晚。

She slipped, almost fell. 她滑了一下,几乎摔倒。

►► 6. still, yet 和 already.

still 表示无变化的延续性;yet 表示“尚”,与 already 相对,常用于否定句和疑问句;already 表示“已”,常用于肯定句。

例 The guests are already here. But the meat is not ready yet. It still has to be cooked for another five minutes.

客人已经到了。但是肉还没有好,还需再烧5分钟。

在使用 still 和 yet 时,要注意其位置,yet 通常放在句末,still 放在实义动词、情态动词或助动词之前,放在系动词之后。

例 I still can't decide where to go. 我仍无法决定去哪。

I still use the watch you gave me. 我还在用你给我的那块表。

I haven't done it yet. 我还没做好。

注:already 有时用于疑问句中,表示“惊奇”的意味。例如:

Is it 5 o'clock already? 已经5点钟了吗?



►► 7. so 和 too。

so 和 too 一样常用作程度副词作状语,修饰形容词和副词。在修饰“形容词+名词”时结构是:

too/so + 形 + a ( n ) + 名

例 Don't go too/so fast. 别走得太(那么)快。

I've never seen so amusing a film. 我从来没有看过这么有趣的电影。

It was too difficult a book for her. 那本书对她来说太难了。

注:形容词 such 在表示类似含义时,可用如下结构:

such + 形 + { ① 名词复数  
② 名(不可数)

such + a ( n ) + 形 + 名

例 such hot days

such hot water

such a hot day

但有限定性形容词(many, much, little, few)修饰名词时,则仍用so。试比较:

so many books 如此多的书

such good books 如此好的书

so little water 如此少的水

such clean water 如此干净的水

### 第三节 形容词与副词容易误用的几种情况

#### 一、系动词之后应用形容词,不用副词

系动词及半系动词,其后应接形容词作表语,切勿误用副词。

例 The flower smells good. (勿用 well) 这朵花闻起来挺香。

Regular exercises can help you stay healthy.

经常锻炼身体能帮助你保持健康。



## 二、以-ly 结尾的形容词和副词

- 1. -ly 是常见的副词词尾,但有些形容词也以-ly 结尾,应避免误用。

常见的这类形容词有:

lively 活泼的	fatherly 慈父般的	costly 昂贵的
lovely 可爱的	cowardly 胆小的	earthly 现世的尘世的
lonely 孤独的	ugly 丑陋的	silly 愚蠢的
friendly 友好的		

- 例 The car is too costly for me to buy. 这辆车太贵了,我买不起。  
That was a lively discussion. 那是一个非常热烈的讨论。

- 2. 有些以-ly 结尾的词,既是形容词,又是副词。

常见的这类词有:

likely 很可能(的)	deathly 死一样(的)	monthly 每月(的)
kindly 仁慈(的)	early 早(的)	weekly 每周(的)
cleanly 清洁(的)	yearly 每年(的)	daily 每日(的)
deadly 致命(的)		

- 例 I shall very likely be here again next month. [ 副词 ]  
It is very likely that I shall be here again next month.  
我下个月很可能再来此地。[ 形容词 ]  
I am paid on a daily basis. 我领的是日薪。[ 形容词 ]  
The old man goes to the park daily to feed the birds.  
那位老人每天去公园喂鸟。[ 副词 ]

## 三、既可作形容词也可作副词的词

有些形容词也可作副词用,应根据它在句中的作用来辨别。常见的这些词有:

fast 快,迅速	firm 坚定(的)	near 近(的)
clean 清洁的	hard 艰难(的)	quick 快(的)
clear 清楚(的)	high 高(的)	slow 慢(的)
close 接近(的)	late 迟(的)	straight 直(的)



deep 深(的)	long 长久(的)	tight 紧(的)
direct 直接(的)	low 低(的)	wrong 错(的)
enough 足够(的)	much 许多(的)	wide 广阔(的)
far 遥远(的)		

例 Put a clean sheet on the bed.

在床上铺上干净的床单。[ 形容词 ]

The students swept the classroom clean.

学生们把教室打扫得很干净。[ 副词 ]

The smoke rose straight up. 青烟直直地往上升。[ 副词 ]

The little boy drew a straight line.

小男孩画了一条直线。[ 形容词 ]

#### 四、词形相近的形容词和副词

有些形容词与副词虽只差一个词尾,但意义却大相径庭。常见的这类词有:

hard 坚硬的—hardly 几乎不

like 相像的—likely 很可能

bare 赤裸的—barely 仅仅,勉强

bad 坏的—badly 非常,很

practical 实际的—practically 事实上,几乎

scarce 稀少的—scarcely 几乎不

例 She is practically a member of the family.

她简直就是这家庭的一份子。[ 副词 ]

You should find a more practical method of getting better grades.

你应该找到一个更实际的方法来获得较好的成绩。[ 形容词 ]

### 第四节 形容词和副词的比较结构

英语中的形容词和副词可以划分为三个等级,即:原级、比较级和最高级。如:



原级	比较级	最高级
young	younger	youngest

## 一、形容词和副词的原级(同级)比较

►► 1. 用原级进行比较可以有以下两种形式,即:

肯定形式为“... as + 形容词或副词的原级 + as...”意为“前者 and 后者一样……”。

否定形式为“... not as / so + 形容词或副词的原级 + as...”意为“前者不如后者……”。

上述两种结构中,第一个 as 作为副词,修饰后面的形容词或副词,而第二个 as 为连词,连接比较的一方。

例 This electronic computer works as well as that one.

这台电子计算机运转起来同那台一样好。

English is not as (so) difficult as Latin. 英语不像拉丁语那么难。

在形容词原级比较结构的句子中,可以加上数量词作状语,表示倍数关系。

例 We've produced twice as much cotton this year as we did two years ago. 今年我们生产的棉花是两年前的 2 倍。

Their house is about 3 times as big as ours.

他们的房子是我们的三倍大。

►► 2. 使用原级比较应注意的问题。

(1) 同级比较的否定形式为“not so... as...”或“not as... as...”但在 TOEFL 考试中,不用“not as... as...”,而用“not so... as...”。

例 Jeffrey is nearly not so tall as his father now.

杰弗里现在几乎不与他父亲一样高了。

She can't run so fast as I. 她不像我跑得那么快。

(2) 在“as... as”或“not as/so... as...”结构中,第二个 as 为连接词,如果在其后面是人称代词,通常用主格。

例 His brother is as handsome as he. 他的弟弟和他一样英俊。

They are not so willing as us to have this picture hung in the corridor.

A

B C

D



C 错,改为 we。

译文:他们不像我们那样愿意把这幅画挂在走廊里。

但是,在口语中,as 后面的代词也可用宾格。

例 He plays tennis as well as me.

他网球打得跟我一样好。

(3) not so much ... as... 意为“与其说是……不如说是……”。

例 He is not so much a novelist as a critic.

与其说他是小说家,不如说他是评论家。

## 二、形容词和副词的比较级

►► 1. 形容词和副词比较级(和最高级)的构成方法。

(1) 一般单音节词和少数双音节词在词尾加 -er 或 -est 构成比较级和最高级。例如:

fast—faster—fastest      early—earlier—earliest

(2) 两个以上或部分两个音节构成的形容词和副词原级前加 more 和 most, 分别构成比较级和最高级。例如:

famous—more famous—most famous

beautiful—more beautiful—most beautiful

(3) 但英语中有一部分形容词和副词的比较级和最高级构成是不规则的,如下表所示:

原级	比较级	最高级
far	farther	farthest
	further	furthest
good, well	better	best
bad, ill	worse	worst
late	later	latest
little	less	least
many, much	more	most
old	older	oldest
	elder	eldest





注：从上表可以看出，同一形容词或副词的比较级或最高级可能  
有两种形式，但其意义并不相同，要注意根据具体语境正确  
使用。

① far 的比较级 further 表示程度上“更远”、“进一步”的意思，  
farther 表示距离上的“更远”、“较远”。

例 No further action has been taken. 没有进一步采取行动。

I can't walk any farther. 我再也走不动了。

② little 表示“大小”时没有比较级和最高级。

例 a dear little girl 一个可爱的小女孩

So that's your little trick! 原来是你耍的小花招!

③ poor 作“差”讲时，其比较级和最高级变化形式是不规则的，即  
poor-worse-worst；但作其他含义讲时，其变化形式是规则的。

④ elder/eldest 指家庭成员的长幼关系，只能指人，不能指物，而且  
只能作定语，不能作表语，而 older/oldest 既可以指人也可以指物，older  
既可作定语又可作表语。

例 The eldest son died in infancy. The oldest child now living was her  
third.

她第一个儿子幼年夭折。现在活着的最大的是她第三个孩子。

My eldest brother lives in the oldest house in the city.

我大哥住在城里最古老的房子里。

⑤ late(较迟的), latest(最迟的,最近的), 表示时间的先后。latter  
(后者的), last(最后的), 表示顺序的先后。

例 He came here later than I. 他比我来得晚。

The latest issue is the best. 最新的消息是最好的。

Of ham and beef, the latter is cheaper today.

今天火腿和牛肉相比较，牛肉较便宜。

He was the last man to leave classroom. 他最后离开教室。

## ▶▶ 2. 形容词和副词比较级的用法。

形容词和副词的比较级是对两者进行比较，一般用来表示“比  
.....更.....”这类概念，通常用的句子结构是“形容词(副词)比较级



+ than. . . ” than 在句中作连词。

例 The book is more interesting than that one.

这本书比那本书有趣。

He runs faster than I ( me ). 他比我跑得快。

She speaks English more frequently than I. 她说英语比我流利。

►► 3. even , much , still 等用来修饰比较级。

( 1 ) 若要对形容词或副词的程度作进一步修饰 , 还可以在形容词或副词比较级前加表示程度的状语 , 如 all the ( so ) very much , much , many , far , even , still ( quite ) , a lot ( just ) a bit a great deal , rather 等。但不能单独用 very 修饰。

例 This house is still bigger than that one.

这所房子比那所房子要大得多。

This job is so much harder than my last one that I've decided to quit.

这活比我上次干的要难得多 , 以至于我决定不干了。

Milk is a lot more nutritious than beef. 牛奶比牛肉营养丰富。

( 2 ) 当 more 后面接复数名词时 , 不能用 much 来修饰 , 这时可用 many 或 far 来修饰。

例 We need many more books than you have bought us.

我们所需要的书比你给我们买的要多得多。

They have much more milk than we. 他们的牛奶要比我们多得多。

►► 4. 形容词比较级中的特例。

并不是所有的形容词表示比较时都必须与 than 搭配 , 英语中有几个以 -or 结尾的源于拉丁语的形容词 , 由于原级已具有比较含义 , 后面不接 than , 而是接 to。这几个形容词可以归纳为以下三组 :

( 1 ) 表示时间、位置先后的 : anterior/prior 在 ..... 之前 , posterior 在 ..... 之后。

( 2 ) 表示优劣比较的 : superior 比 ..... 好 / 优 , inferior 比 ..... 差 / 劣。

( 3 ) 表示长幼、等级比较的 : senior 较年长的 , 等级较高的 ; junior 较年幼的 , 等级较低的。

例 He thinks he is superior to his classmates because his father is an important person.



他自认为优于他的同班同学,因为他父亲是位重要人物。

He is 3 years senior to me. 他年长我三岁。

He is several years junior to Mrs Cooper. 他比库珀太太小几岁。

### 三、比较级的其他用法

- 1. 形容词的比较级结构前加数量词也可以用于表示倍数。

It was one fourth cheaper than the market price.

它比市场价低 1/4。

Cotton output was 2 percent higher than in the previous year.

棉花产量比上年高 2%。

- 2. 通常情况下,形容词或副词的比较级前面都不加 the,但若对两者进行比较,句中又无 than 出现,则常用“the + 比较级 + of + 比较范围(只有两者)”结构。

例 She is the taller and the more beautiful of the two sisters.

她是两姐妹中较高较漂亮的一个。

He is the cleverer of the two boys.

他是两个孩子中比较聪明的一个。

- 3. 使用比较级时要特别注意的几点。

(1) 比较级的重叠。

[ × ] It is less colder today than the day before.

[ ✓ ] It is less cold today than the day before.

今天的天气没有昨天冷。

(2) 比较对象的重叠。

[ × ] Mary is more beautiful than any girl in the class.

[ ✓ ] Mary is more beautiful than any other girl in the class.

玛丽要比班里的任何其他女孩漂亮。

(因为 any girl in the class 也包括 Mary 自己)

(3) 不合逻辑的比较。

[ × ] The climate of Japan is milder than Canada.

[ ✓ ] The climate of Japan is milder than that of Canada.

日本的气候要比加拿大的气候宜人。

(4) 搭配错误。



- [ × ] This book is the same like that one.  
 [ ✓ ] This book is the same as that one.  
 这本书与那本书相同。

►►4. 除“形容词(副词)比较级 + than...”结构外,还有几种常用的句型。有的句型形式相近,但意义相差甚远,使用时应特别注意区别其不同含义。

(1)“the + 比较级... the + 比较级”意为“越……越……”表示一方的程度随另一方的改变而改变。

例 The sooner, the better. 越早越好。

The greater ( is ) the resistance, the less ( is ) the current.

电阻越大,电流越小。

注:在使用这一句型时,不要将 more 和后面的形容词、副词及名词分开。例如:

The more people you know, the less time you have to see them.  
 你认识的人越多,见他们的时间就越少。

(2)“more than”有时不表示比较关系,而表示“不只是,极其”等意思。在这种情况下,“less... than”所表示的意思恰好与“more than”相反。

例 My visit to Beijing was more than sightseeing.

我去北京不只是为了观光。

They were more than glad to help. 他们非常愿意帮忙。

(3)“more + 原级 + than”比较一个事物的两种性质,可译为“与其……不如……”。这里对于任何形容词一般只用“more + 形容词”的形式,而不用 -er 的形式。

例 She was more mad than stupid. 与其说她愚蠢倒不如说她疯了。

除了连接形容词和副词外,“more... than”在表达此意时,还可与其他词连用。

例 It is more a poem than a picture.

与其说它是一幅画,倒不如说是一首诗。

(4)“no more... than...”意为“not... any more than...”与“……同样不是,与……不一样”。



例 He is no wiser than you. 他跟你一样不聪明。

I can no more play bridge than you. 我和你一样不会打桥牌。

A whale is not a fish any more than a horse.

正如马不是鱼一样,鲸也不是鱼。

(5) “not more than”是一种普通比较结构,是“more than”的否定形式,表示“不比……更……”。

例 She can't be more than thirty. 她不可能超过三十岁。

#### 四、形容词和副词的最高级用法

►►1. 最高级用于三者或三者以上的比较。使用最高级时通常用 in, among 或 of 引导的介词短语说明比较的范围。

例 He is the best student in our class. 他是我们班上最好的学生。

Among all of us he did the experiment most carefully.

在我们当中,他做这个实验是最仔细的。

►►2. 与比较级一样,为了表示强调,最高级的前面也可以使用一些状语。这类常用的词语有 much, by far, easily, nearly, almost, yet, ever, far and away, out and away, the very 等。

例 He is by far the biggest wrestler. 他显然是身材最高的摔跤者。

Professor Smith is easily the most interesting lecturer of all.

史密斯教授确实是所有教师中最风趣的一个。

►►3. 形容词最高级中的特例。

(1) 一般情况下,形容词最高级前要带 the,但当形容词的最高级作表语又不和其他事物相比较时,前面可以不加 the。

例 He is the busiest worker in the factory.

他是工厂里最忙的人。[与工厂里的其他人相比]

He is busiest in December. 他十二月最忙。[与自己本身进行比较]

(2) “the most + 形容词(副词)原级”结构中,most 表示“最……”,但在“a + most + 形容词(副词)原级”结构中,most 表示“非常”的意思。

例 It is a most touching story. 这是一个很动人的故事。

(3) 用比较级形式表示最高级含义。



形容词或副词的比较级与某些表示否定含义的词相结合,可以表示最高级含义,一般结构为“否定式……比较级”。

- 例 I do not know any profession in the world that is better than dentistry.  
= I think dentistry is the best profession in the world.  
我认为世上没有比从事牙科工作更好的职业了。

## 第五节 使用比较级时应注意的问题

### 一、替代问题

在比较状语从句中,名词或动词和主句中相应的名词或动词完全一样时,可用 one, that, those, do 来代替重复的名词或动词。one 和 ones 为泛指,that 和 those 为特指。

- 例 This novel is as interesting as the ones we have read.

这本小说跟我们读过的那些小说一样有趣。

I speak English more fluently than I did in the past.

我现在说英语比过去流利多了。

TV sets made this year are of better quality than \_\_\_\_\_ last year.

- A. that one                      B. the ones  
C. that                          D. those

应选 D。译文:今年生产的电视机比去年生产的质量高。

注:在使用过程中要注意这些词的不同替代。

(1) that 可用来代替可数名词和不可数名词,但常用于替代不可数名词和特指可数名词,其复数形式为 those。通常使用 that of, those of 形式。

(2) one 和 ones 只代替泛指可数名词,that 和 those 替代一个词组。

(3) 助动词 do (did) 可用来替代重复的谓语动词。



例如：

He reads better than I do. 他比我读得好。

The steel output of this year will be bigger than that of last year.  
今年钢产量将比去年高。

The white dresses go with the hat better than the blue ones.  
白色套装比蓝色套装更配这顶帽子。

Our rules are quite different from ( than ) those of other organizations. 我们的规章制度和别的机关大为不同。

Never had Peterson a more difficult journey than that he took  
A B C D

across the snow-capped Rocky Mountains.

C 错。改为 the one。

译文 彼得逊所经历的旅程中没有一次比他越过白雪覆盖的落基山脉那次更难了。

## 二、主句和从句对比的一致性问题

在比较状语从句中，要特别注意主句和从句的比较范围要一致。

[ × ] Her room is more comfortable than I.

[ ✓ ] Her room is more comfortable than mine ( my room ).

她的房间比我的房间舒适。

[ × ] The output of coal this year is twice as much as last year.

[ ✓ ] The output of coal this year is twice as much as that of last year.

今年煤的产量是去年的两倍。

Anderson has never been out of the United States , yet his accent is  
A B

very similar to an Englishman.  
C D

D 错。改为 that of an Englishman 。

译文 安德逊从未离开过美国，但他的口音却几乎跟英国人一模一样。



### 三、比较结构中的名词位置问题

- 1. 在 as...as 或 more than 结构中,通常将名词置于比较结构中。

例 There is much less difficulty than I thought.

困难比我过去想像的要少得多。

I can't drink as sweet coffee as this.

= I can't drink coffee as sweet as this.

我不能喝像这样甜的咖啡。

I haven't seen as old a car as this for years.

= I haven't seen a car as old as this for years.

好多年我都没有见过这样一部老车。

- 2. 在 as many...as 和 as much...as 结构中,名词只能置于比较结构中间。

例 We can let you have as many copies as you need.

你需要多少复制品,我们就可以让你有多少。

There is as much clean water in this bucket as in that one.

这个桶和那个桶里有一样多的清水。

- 3. 当 as...as 与复数可数名词搭配时,比较结构通常置于所修饰的名词之后。

例 He smokes \_\_\_\_\_ he can afford.

A. cigarettes as expensive as

B. as expensive cigarettes as

C. as more expensive cigarettes as

D. as much expensive cigarettes as

应选 A。译文 他抽能买得起的烟。

- 4. 在 as...as 结构中,当句中的名词与 some, little 等限定词搭配使用时,比较结构要置于被修饰的名词之后。

例 Fetch me some water as clean as this. 给我拿些像这一样清的水。

I need \_\_\_\_\_ this.

A. as transparent a little cellophane as

B. as a little transparent cellophane as





· 第十章 形容词与副词 ·

C. a little cellophane as transparent as

D. cellophane a little as transparent as

应选 C。译文 我需要一点像这张一样透明的玻璃纸。

►► 5. 当 more than 比较的是不同类别的单复数可数名词时,比较结构通常置于所修饰的名词之后。

例 There are men more intelligent than He. 有比他更聪明的男人。



## Exercise 10

### I. 选择题(1)

1. That trumpet player was certainly loud. But I wasn't bothered by his loudness \_\_\_\_\_ by his lack of talent.  
A. so much as    B. rather than    C. as    D. than
2. Hot objects emit more visible rays than \_\_\_\_\_ cold objects.  
A. that    B. such    C. do    D. emit
3. "Do you regret paying five hundred dollars for the painting?"  
"No, I would gladly have paid \_\_\_\_\_ for it."  
A. twice so much    B. twice as much  
C. as much twice    D. so much twice
4. When I saw her, she was reading \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. an exciting, old, detective story  
B. an old, exciting, detective story  
C. an exciting, detective, old story  
D. a detective, old, exciting story
5. Bill speaks English \_\_\_\_\_ he writes it.  
A. more badly as    B. more badly than  
C. as bad as    D. worse than
6. This watch is \_\_\_\_\_ all the other watches on the market.  
A. more superior than    B. superior than  
C. most superior of    D. superior to
7. London has a larger population than \_\_\_\_\_ in the United Kingdom.  
A. any city    B. any cities    C. any other city    D. all other city
8. He knows little of mathematics, and \_\_\_\_\_ of chemistry.  
A. even more    B. still less    C. no less    D. still more
9. In no country \_\_\_\_\_ Britain, it has been said, can one experience four seasons in the course of a single day.  
A. other than    B. better than    C. more than    D. rather than
10. The heart is \_\_\_\_\_ intelligent than the stomach, for they are both controlled by the brain.  
A. not so    B. not much    C. much more    D. no more



· 第十章 形容词与副词 ·

11. Do you enjoy listening to records ? I find records are often \_\_\_\_\_ or better than an actual performance.  
A. as good as    B. as good    C. good    D. good as
12. I couldn't find \_\_\_\_\_ , and so I took this one.  
A. a coat enough large    B. an enough large coat  
C. a large coat enough    D. a large enough coat
13. His salary as a bus driver is much higher \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. in comparison with the salary of a teacher  
B. than a teacher  
C. than that of a teacher  
D. to compare as a teacher
14. Nuclear science should be developed to benefit the people \_\_\_\_\_ harm them.  
A. more than    B. rather than    C. other than    D. better than
15. You sang well last night ; we hope you'll sing \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. more better    B. still better    C. best    D. more good
16. You can't be \_\_\_\_\_ careful in making the decision as it was such a critical case.  
A. very    B. quite    C. too    D. so
17. This is \_\_\_\_\_ to answer.  
A. rather a difficult question    B. the rather difficult question  
C. rather difficult question    D. a question rather difficult
18. We are taught that a business letter should be written in formal style \_\_\_\_\_ personal one.  
A. rather than    B. other than    C. better than    D. less than
19. Iran is one of the world's leading \_\_\_\_\_ oil producers.  
A. raw    B. crude    C. rough    D. primitive
20. If a baby bird stays \_\_\_\_\_ for two or three weeks after leaving the nest , it has a fair chance of becoming an adult.  
A. live    B. lively    C. alive    D. living
21. Clever and intelligent as he is , he can never solve the problem \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. alone    B. lonely    C. lone    D. lonely
22. You should spend \_\_\_\_\_ in the study of the various senses and uses of the common words.



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

- A. much time as you can                      B. as time much as you can  
C. time as many as you can                  D. as much time as you can
23. Disneyland is \_\_\_\_\_ as I have ever seen.  
A. as a park interesting                      B. as interesting a park  
C. an as interesting park                      D. as an interesting park
24. This year will be difficult for the organization because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. they have less money and volunteers than they had last year  
B. it has less money and fewer volunteers than it had last year  
C. the last year it did not have as few and little volunteers and money  
D. there are fewer money and volunteers than in the last year there were
25. College enrollment was 9 000 000 last year. That was \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. more than 20 per cent in 1990  
B. 20 per cent more than 1990  
C. 20 per cent more than that in 1990  
D. more than 20 per cent that in 1990
26. The oil output this year is \_\_\_\_\_ five years before.  
A. as much as twice                              B. twice as much as  
C. twice so much as                              D. as twice much as
27. He is \_\_\_\_\_ but not \_\_\_\_\_ as you.  
A. so wise , so diligent                          B. wiser , so diligent  
C. wiser , less diligent                          D. more wise , as diligent
28. My radio is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. as good as , if not better than , Anne's  
B. as good as , if not better than Anne's  
C. as well as , if not better than Anne's  
D. as well as , if not better than Anne's
29. \_\_\_\_\_ are waiting for the result of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. The concerned people , the present talk  
B. The people concerned , the talk present  
C. The concerned people , the talk present  
D. The people concerned , the present talk
30. That \_\_\_\_\_ lady is our French teacher.  
A. beautiful young foreign                      B. young beautiful foreign  
C. young foreign beautiful                      D. foreign young beautiful



· 第十章 形容词与副词 ·

31. Wool is \_\_\_\_\_ characteristic on which to classify breeds of sheep.  
A. most obviously                      B. the most obvious  
C. obviously the most                  D. most obvious
32. They say Tom is unfriendly. And I think he is \_\_\_\_\_ than unfriendly.  
A. shyder              B. shy                  C. more shy rather    D. more shy
33. Young adults \_\_\_\_\_ older people are more likely to prefer pop songs.  
A. other than    B. less than        C. more than    D. rather than
34. Whether you agree or not ,this was the \_\_\_\_\_ plan Tom has made recently.  
A. perfect        B. perfectest        C. most perfect    D. more perfect
35. A vice president is \_\_\_\_\_ a president in position.  
A. inferior to                      B. inferior than  
C. more inferior than              D. more inferior to
36. The harder the shrub is to grow \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the higher the price is              B. the higher price it is  
C. the higher price it would have    D. higher the price is
37. Her manner and attitude toward him were quite \_\_\_\_\_ they had always been.  
A. the same as    B. same like        C. as same as    D. the same
38. My teacher often says that a person should aim \_\_\_\_\_ and never speak \_\_\_\_\_ of himself.  
A. high , high                      B. highly , highly  
C. high , highly                      D. highly , high
39. Of those fashionable coats , she chose \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the less expensive                  B. the one most expensive  
C. the most expensive of them        D. the least expensive
40. She knows little of Chinese \_\_\_\_\_ of Japanese.  
A. no less than    B. as well as        C. still more        D. still less
41. His writing style is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. more complicated as it appears to be  
B. more complicated than it appears to be  
C. much more complicated as it is to be  
D. as complicated than it appears to be
42. Why did you ask him for help instead of Tom ?  
He is \_\_\_\_\_ helpful than Tom.  
A. no more        B. not more        C. any more        D. some more



43. Output of coal was \_\_\_\_\_ that of last year.  
A. as great as four times                      B. four times as great as  
C. four times so great as                      D. as four times great as
44. Strawberries can , of course , be frozen but they taste best when bought and eaten \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. fresh                      B. freshly                      C. more freshly D. fresher
45. The students are \_\_\_\_\_ young people between ages of 16 and 20.  
A. mostly                      B. almost                      C. most                      D. at most
46. She traveled a great deal \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. so most of her friends did                      B. as did most of her friends  
C. most of her friends did so                      D. most of her friends did it
47. It is \_\_\_\_\_ work of art that everyone wants to have a look at it.  
A. a so unusual                      B. such an unusual  
C. so unusual                      D. such unusual
48. Alexander Graham Bell once told his family that he would rather be remembered as a teacher of the deaf \_\_\_\_\_ of the telephone.  
A. than inventing                      B. than as the inventor  
C. the invention                      D. as the inventor
49. This is \_\_\_\_\_ opportunity to be lost.  
A. too good                      B. too a good                      C. too good an D. a too good
50. Although she is \_\_\_\_\_ intelligent , she is \_\_\_\_\_ lazy.  
A. rather , fairly                      B. much , rather  
C. fairly , much                      D. fairly , rather
51. The little man was \_\_\_\_\_ one meter fifty high.  
A. almost more than                      B. nearly more than  
C. hardly more than                      D. as much as
52. The more you study during the semester , \_\_\_\_\_ you have to study the week before exams.  
A. the less                      B. the lesser                      C. less                      D. the little
53. Frost occurs in valleys and on low grounds \_\_\_\_\_ on adjacent hills.  
A. more frequently as                      B. as frequently than  
C. more frequently than                      D. frequently than
54. The reason why so many people sit before the television tonight is that there will be a \_\_\_\_\_ show.



· 第十章 形容词与副词 ·

- A. living      B. live      C. alive      D. lived
55. This pair of shoes isn't good , but that pair is \_\_\_\_\_ better.
- A. rather      B. over      C. hardly      D. less

选择题( 2 )

1. All the key words in the article are printed in \_\_\_\_\_ type so as to attract readers' attention.  
A. dark      B. dense      C. black      D. bold
2. If this kind of fish becomes \_\_\_\_\_ , future generations may never taste it at all.  
A. minimum      B. short      C. seldom      D. scarce
3. By law , when one makes a large purchase , he should have \_\_\_\_\_ opportunity to change his mind.  
A. accurate      B. urgent      C. expressive      D. adequate
4. There were some \_\_\_\_\_ flowers on the table.  
A. artificial      B. false      C. unnatural      D. unreal
5. He was \_\_\_\_\_ of having asked such a silly question.  
A. sorry      B. ashamed      C. guilty      D. miserable
6. In general , the amount that a student spends for housing should be held to one-fifth the total \_\_\_\_\_ living expenses.  
A. acceptable      B. advisable      C. available      D. applicable
7. Free medical treatment in this country covers sickness of mind as well as \_\_\_\_\_ sicknesses.  
A. normal      B. regular      C. average      D. ordinary
8. The shy girl felt \_\_\_\_\_ and uncomfortable when she could not answer her teacher's questions.  
A. amazed      B. curious      C. awkward      D. amused
9. They took \_\_\_\_\_ measures to prevent poisonous gases from escaping.  
A. fruitful      B. valid      C. beneficial      D. effective
10. Our new house is very \_\_\_\_\_ for me as I can get to the office in five minutes.  
A. adaptable      B. convenient      C. comfortable      D. available
11. Writing is a slow progress , requiring \_\_\_\_\_ thought , time and effort.  
A. significant      B. enormous      C. considerable      D. numerous



12. It is our \_\_\_\_\_ policy that we will achieve unity through peaceful means.  
A. consistent B. continuous C. considerate D. continual
13. Young people are not \_\_\_\_\_ to stand and look at works of art ;they want art they can participate in.  
A. conservative B. content C. confident D. generous
14. What you have done is \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor's orders.  
A. attached to B. responsible to  
C. resistant to D. contrary to
15. I'm not sure whether I can gain any profit from the investment , so I can't make a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ promise to help you.  
A. exact B. defined C. definite D. sure
16. She is very \_\_\_\_\_ secretary :she never forgets anything or makes a mistake.  
A. anxious B. adequate C. effective D. efficient
17. Physics is \_\_\_\_\_ to the science which was called natural philosophy in history.  
A. alike B. equivalent C. likely D. uniform
18. It is quite necessary for a qualified teacher to have good manners and \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge.  
A. extensive B. expansive C. intensive D. expensive
19. In order to show his boss what a careful worker he was , he took \_\_\_\_\_ trouble over the figures.  
A. extensive B. spare C. extra D. supreme
20. Your excuse that an elephant fell on you and made you late is just \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. inevitable B. indispensable C. incredible D. incurable
21. The patient's health failed to such an extent that he was put into \_\_\_\_\_ care.  
A. tense B. intensive C. rigid D. tight
22. The words of his old teacher left a \_\_\_\_\_ impression on his mind. He is still influenced by them.  
A. long B. lively C. lasting D. liberal
23. He is \_\_\_\_\_ about his chances of winning a gold medal in the Olympics next year.  
A. optimistic B. optional C. outstanding D. obvious
24. It is said that the math teacher seems \_\_\_\_\_ towards bright students.





· 第十章 形容词与副词 ·

- A. partial      B. beneficial      C. preferable      D. liable
25. As a mother , she is too \_\_\_\_\_ toward her daughter ; she should let her see more of the world.  
A. hopeful      B. modest      C. protective      D. confident
26. It doesn't alter the fact that he was the man \_\_\_\_\_ for the death of the little girl.  
A. accounting      B. responsible      C. guilty      D. obliged
27. She cooked the meat for a long time so as to make it \_\_\_\_\_ enough to eat.  
A. mild      B. slight      C. light      D. tender
28. The president made a \_\_\_\_\_ speech at the opening ceremony of the sports meeting , which encouraged the sportsmen greatly.  
A. vigorous      B. tedious      C. flat      D. harsh
29. Since the matter was extremely \_\_\_\_\_ , we dealt with it immediately.  
A. tough      B. tense      C. urgent      D. instant
30. Although they plant trees in this area every year , the tops of some hills are still \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. blank      B. hollow      C. vacant      D. bare
31. It is reported that \_\_\_\_\_ adopted children want to know who their natural parents are.  
A. the most      B. most of      C. most      D. the most of
32. Convenience foods which are already prepared for cooking are \_\_\_\_\_ in grocery stores.  
A. ready      B. approachable      C. probable      D. available
33. Purchasing the new production line will be a \_\_\_\_\_ deal for the company.  
A. forceful      B. favorite      C. tremendous      D. profitable
34. Though he was born and brought up in America , he can speak \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese.  
A. fluid      B. fluent      C. smooth      D. flowing
35. Petrol is refined from the \_\_\_\_\_ oil we take out of the ground.  
A. crude      B. fresh      C. rude      D. original
36. In the Chinese household , grandparents and other relative play \_\_\_\_\_ roles in raising children.  
A. incapable      B. indispensable      C. insensible      D. infinite



37. My brother's plans are very \_\_\_\_\_ ; he wants to master English , French and Spanish before he is sixteen.  
A. arbitrary    B. aggressive    C. ambitious    D. abundant
38. The statistical figures in that report are not \_\_\_\_\_. You should not refer to them.  
A. accurate    B. fixed    C. delicate    D. rigid
39. The football game comes to you \_\_\_\_\_ from New York.  
A. lively    B. alive    C. live    D. living
40. William Penn , the founder of Pennsylvania , \_\_\_\_\_ defended the right of every citizen to freedom of choice in religion.  
A. peculiarly    B. vigorously    C. indifferently    D. inevitably
41. I shall have a companion in the house after all these \_\_\_\_\_ years.  
A. single    B. alone    C. sole    D. lonely
42. Floods cause billions of dollars worth of property damage \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. relatively    B. annually    C. actually    D. comparatively
43. They claim that \_\_\_\_\_ 1 ,000 factories closed down during the economic crisis.  
A. sufficiently    B. considerably  
C. approximately    D. properly
44. The rain was heavy and \_\_\_\_\_ the land was flooded.  
A. consequently    B. constantly    C. continuously    D. consistently
45. Our journey was slow because the train stopped \_\_\_\_\_ at different villages.  
A. unceasingly    B. gradually    C. continuously    D. continually
46. It is \_\_\_\_\_ impossible to find a good educational computer program in this part of the country.  
A. barely    B. merely    C. hardly    D. nearly
47. Not \_\_\_\_\_ , the process of choosing names varies widely from culture to culture.  
A. obviously    B. particularly    C. surprisingly    D. normally
48. The man to whom we handed the forms pointed out that they had not been \_\_\_\_\_ filled in.  
A. consequently    B. comprehensively  
C. regularly    D. properly
49. Frankfurt , Germany , is in one of the most \_\_\_\_\_ populated regions of



· 第十章 形容词与副词 ·

Western Europe.

- A. densely      B. enormously      C. vastly      D. largely
50. We welcome rain , but a ( an ) \_\_\_\_\_ large amount of rainfall will cause floods.  
A. extensively      B. specially      C. extremely      D. constantly
51. The computer revolution may well change society as \_\_\_\_\_ as did the Industrial Revolution.  
A. certainly      B. insignificantly  
C. fundamentally      D. comparatively
52. The relationship between employers and employees has been studied \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. originally      B. violently      C. extremely      D. intensively
53. These goods are \_\_\_\_\_ for export , though a few of them may be sold on the home market.  
A. essentially      B. completely      C. necessarily      D. remarkably
54. He is quite sure that it's \_\_\_\_\_ impossible for him to fulfill the task within two days.  
A. absolutely      B. exclusively      C. fully      D. roughly
55. The ship's generator broke down , and the pumps had to be operated \_\_\_\_\_ instead of mechanically.  
A. manually      B. artificially      C. automatically      D. synthetically

II. 改错题

1. On the whole , ambitious students are much likely to succeed in their studies  
A B  
than are those with little ambition.  
C D
2. A great many teachers firmlly believe that English is one of the poorest-taught  
A B C  
subjects in high schools at present.  
D
3. John's chance of being elected chairman of the committee is far greater  
A B C  
than Dick.  
D
4. I must confess that her knowledge of English literature is more superior to mine.  
A B C D



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

5. Philosophy teaches them to feel uncertain about the things that seem to them self-evidently.  
A B C D
6. Farther information will be issued by the weather bureau as the situation develops.  
A B C D
7. The harder she tried , the more badly she danced before such a large audience.  
A B C D
8. He was dismissed by his boss not because he was inexperienced but because he was not enough careful.  
A B C D
9. The husband tried to be more considerable of his family , his wife and his children than ever before.  
A B C D
10. No metal is so more commonly used in our daily life as steel.  
A B C D
11. The population of China is larger than any other country in the world.  
A B C D
12. This chair is similar in design as the other , but they are different from each other in colour.  
A B C D
13. People who get married when both husband and wife are under 20 are as three times likely to get divorced as other people.  
A B C D
14. If only man had been a bit less greedier , more bird and animal species might have avoided extinction.  
A B C D
15. That product of lower price is the more inferior to the one that we sell at a slightly higher price.  
A B C D
16. Alan , returning home very lately from his club , found an angry wife waiting for him.  
A B C D
17. The harder you work , the likely you are to qualify as a doctor by the time you  
A B C D



· 第十章 形容词与副词 ·

- are thirty.
18. He got up , walked across the room , and with a sharp quick movement flung  
A B C  
the door widely open.  
D
19. Are you such naive as to imagine this is not taking place elsewhere ?  
A B C D
20. He tried to make it little easier for the students to understand.  
A B C D
21. The scientists , concerned about the potential hazards , wanted the latest  
A B  
research finding made publicly.  
C D
22. To people from the northern parts of the country , tropical butterflies may  
A B C  
seem incredible big.  
D
23. The Department of Fine Arts and Architecture has been criticized for  
A  
not having much required courses scheduled for this semester.  
B C D
24. In other words , the new tenant would pay substantially higher rent than the  
A B C  
previous tenant does.  
D
25. The results of the test proved to Fred and me that we needed to study harder  
A B C  
and watch less movies on television if we wanted to receive scholarship.  
D
26. Since it was so difficult for American Indians to negotiate a peace treaty or  
A B  
declare war in their native language , they used a universal understood form of  
C D  
sign language.
27. The life expectancy of blacks in 1850 was shorter than white Americans , yet it  
A B  
was much longer than the life expectancy of the United States city dwellers.  
C D
28. He took down the largest of the two dictionaries and began to search for the  
A B C  
word he had misspelled.  
D



# 第十一章 介 词

介词是用于名词、名词词组或相当于名词词组的结构之前,表示词语之间意义关系的词类。介词能和不同的词语搭配,表示不同的意义。

## 第一节 介词的种类

按照介词的结构,可将介词大致分为三类:简单介词、双重介词和短语介词。



## 一、简单介词

英语中的很多简单介词与其他词连用构成了不同的表达法。常用的简单介词有 :about ,above ,across ,after ,again ,along ,among ,at ,before ,behind ,below ,beneath ,beside ,between ,beyond ,but ,by ,despite ,down ,during ,except ,in ,on ,for ,from ,like ,near ,of ,over ,past ,round ,since ,till ,to ,through ,toward( s ) ,under ,until ,up ,with ,inside ,outside ,throughout ,into ,without ,within 等。

例 After much consideration we accept his offer.

经过多方面考虑 ,我们接受了他的报价。

She came to Beijing at eighteen. 她十八岁时来到了北京。

Given his support , I think we'll win the election.

如果获得了他的支持 ,我想我们会赢得这次选举。

I hear he is more than 70 , but he is still strong considering his age.

据说他已经超过 70 岁了 ,但从他的年龄来看 ,他仍然很硬朗。

## 二、双重介词

由于上下文的需要 ,有时两个不同的介词放在一起使用 ,这类介词就称为双重介词。常用的双重介词有 :from among , up to , from behind , from within 等。

例 Laughter burst out from among the audience when the lecturer made a joke. 演讲者讲笑话时 ,全体听众发出一阵哄堂大笑。

She was here up to a few minutes ago. 她直到数分钟前还在这里。

The 1985 figure was eight percent , in between France and the United States. 1985 年的统计数字是百分之八 ,介于法国和美国之间。

## 三、短语介词

短语介词在英语中占很大的比例 ,而且出现的频率也比较高 ,只有牢记才能运用自如。常用的短语介词有 :according to ,ahead of ,along with ,apart from ,as to ,because of ,due to ,except for ,prior to ,thanks to ,together with ,up to ,by means of ,by way of ,for the sake of 等。

例 According to the TV , it will be fine today.



根据电视报道 ,今天会是个晴天。

He was late as a result of the traffic jam.

由于交通阻塞 ,他迟到了。

The children were all tired and went to bed of their own accord.

这些小孩都累了 ,所以都自动上床睡觉了。

In respect of this problem , we don't have to draw a conclusion here.

关于这个问题 ,我们没有必要在此作出决定。

## 第二节 介词的作用

介词和介词短语一起构成的短语在句中可作表语、状语、定语、补语等。

例 I have seen him on two occasions since the beginning of the new term. 自从新学期以来 ,我已在两个场合见过他。[ 作状语 ]

He has worked in the factory for twenty years.

他已经在这个工厂工作了二十年了。[ 作状语 ]

Those students are from the south. 那些学生是南方来的。[ 作表语 ]

They gave up all hope of his recovery.

他们对他的康复已经不抱任何希望了。[ 作定语 ]

They found themselves in a difficult situation.

他们发现自己面临一个很困难的局面。[ 作宾补 ]

## 第三节 介词的意义

介词按其在句中的语义关系 ,可表示时间、原因、方式、让步、条件、对比、伴随、地点、目的等。如何准确地使用 ,要靠学习者在不断的理解过程中逐步地掌握。下面对部分介词的用法进行讲解。

### 一、表示时间关系的介词

英语中有些介词可用来表示时间 ,不同结构运用不同的介词 ,有





的介词是表示时间的某一点,有的介词是表示时间的延续。常用来表示时间的介词有 :at, in, on, by, during, till, until, before, after, since, from, to, for 等。

⑧例 We were very happy at that time. 我们那时非常幸福。

You should be more careful from now on.

从今以后你应更加小心。

I waited until five o'clock, but he didn't come.

我一直等到五点,但他没来。

## 二、表示地点、位置和方向的介词

不同的介词所表示的地点不同,位置和方向也不同。常用来表示地点、位置和方向的介词有 :in, inside, at, on, within, over, under, beneath, underneath, among, opposite, around, into, out of, through 等。

⑧例 The post office is at the fourth intersection from here.

邮局在从这里算起的第四个十字路口。

Stay within hearing distance of the house.

不要跑得太远,免得家人叫不到。

The waitress stood opposite me. 那女服务员站在我对面。

The train went through some tunnels. 火车穿过了几个隧道。

## 三、表示原因的介词

根据上下文的需要或搭配关系,常用不同的介词或介词短语来表达相同的意思。常用来表示原因的介词有 :for, from, of, through, because of, with, owing to, as a result of, thanks to, due to, on account of 等。

⑧例 She was surprised at what he said.

她听到他的话之后感到很惊奇。

Housekeeping was made much easier through the use of electrical appliances. 由于使用电器,家务事变得轻松多了。

He died from a chronic disease. 他死于慢性疾病。

With all the noise I couldn't concentrate. 这么吵,我无法专心。



#### 四、表示方式或手段的介词

by, in, to 等介词或由此构成的介词短语可用来表示方式,由这类介词所构成的短语,通常在句中作状语。常用来表示方式的介词或介词短语有:by means of, to the advantage, on behalf of, under (the direction of), according to, in one's opinion 等。

④ We knew the matter through the Ford Foundation.

我们通过福特基金会获悉这件事。

I go to school by bus, but my father goes to the office by car.

我乘公共汽车上学,但我父亲开车上班。

Thoughts can also be expressed by means of music.

思想也可以借音乐表达。

In my opinion, he shouldn't accept the task.

我认为,他不应该接受这个任务。

#### 五、表示目的的介词

常用来表示目的的介词及介词短语有 for, on, to, for the purpose of, for the sake of, on behalf of, in honor of, with a view to 等。

④ He does everything only for money. 他做什么都是为了钱。

She gave a piano recital on behalf of a charity.

她为某慈善机构举行了一场钢琴独奏会。

He went to town on purpose to sell one of his paintings.

他为了卖一幅自己的画,特地进城去。

He went to Japan with a view to buying a piece of equipment.

他为了买一台设备而到日本去了。

#### 六、表示让步的介词

常用来表示让步的介词或介词短语有 despite, in spite of, regardless of, notwithstanding, for (all), with (all) 等。

④ He got drunk at the party notwithstanding his wife's warning.

他不管妻子的警告,仍然在宴会上喝得烂醉。

He says what he thinks, regardless of other people's feelings.



他想说什么就说什么,从不考虑别人的感受。

She can't see very well in spite of her spectacles.

她尽管戴着眼镜,还是不能够看得很清楚。

## 七、表示条件的介词

---

常用来表示条件的介词有 without, but for, in case of, in the event of 等。

⑧ Without your help we would not have succeeded.

没有你的帮助我们也许不会成功。

But for electricity there would not be modern industry.

没有电,就不可能有现代工业。

In case of any problems, please call me.

万一出现什么问题,请给我打电话。

## 八、表示相关的介词

---

常用来表示相关的介词有 :about, of, on, regarding, as for, as regards, in terms of, with respect to, as to, in respect of/ to, with / in reference to, on / with regard to, in relation to 等。

⑧ Don't concern yourself over such trivialities.

不要为这芝麻小事操心。

Concerning his proposal, there were pros and cons.

关于他的提案,有赞成和反对两种意见。

We all passed the examination, but as for him, he alone failed.

我们考试都及格了,但至于他么,只有他一个人不及格。

I spoke with him about the matter. 关于那件事我和他谈过了。

## 九、表示排除的介词

---

常用来表示排外的介词有 :but, except, besides, except for, in addition to, apart from, aside from, with the exception of 等。

⑧ I would join you except for my headache.

要不是我头痛的话,我会和你们一起去的。

He goes to the library every day except when he is not well.



他除了身体不舒服外,每天都去图书馆。

Apart from several faults, he is a trustworthy teacher.

除了有几个缺点外,他是个值得信赖的老师。

She speaks English in addition to Japanese.

除了日语外,她还会说英语。

## 十、表示工具和材料的介词

常用来表示工具和材料的介词有 from, of, out of, with 等。其中, of 和 out of 表示制成的材料仍保持原材料的性质, from 表示制成品已失去了原材料的性质。

例 Cheese and butter are made from milk.

乳酪和奶油是由牛奶制作成的。

Water consists of hydrogen and oxygen.

水是由氢和氧组成的。

The cake was made with fruit.

这个蛋糕是用水果制作的。

## 十一、表示对象的介词

常用来表示对象的介词有 at, for, to 等。

例 She looks young for her age. 考虑到年纪,她看起来算是年轻的。

He is awfully bad at mathematics. 他的数学非常糟糕。

I often talk to my neighbor. 我常常和邻居谈话。

## 十二、表示对比或比例的介词

常用来表示对比和比例的介词有 with, to, against, beside, in/by comparison with, in contrast with/ to 等。

例 Living in the country is cheaper in comparison with the big cities.

与大都市相比,在乡下生活较便宜。

The air pressure varies with the height, and the water pressure varies with the depth. 气压随着高度变化,水压随着深度变化。

They won the game by two to nothing. 他们 2 比 0 胜了那场比赛。

The picture shows up well against the white wall.



这幅画在白墙的衬托下很显眼。

## 第四节 几组意义相近的介词的区别

### 一、in 和 after 在表示时间时的区别

in 是以现在为中心,表示“从今……之后”,after 是以现在以外的时间为中心,表示“从那以后”。

例 I'll come back in a week. 我(从今天)一个礼拜后将回来。

He came back after a week. 他在(从那时)一个礼拜之后回来。

### 二、in, on, at 在表示时间和地点时的区别

►► 1. in, at 和 on 都可用来表示时间。

in 表示比较长的时间,at 表示时间的某一点,on 表示某一个早上、中午、傍晚等具体时间。

例 He got late in the morning and had a meal at noon.

他早上起得晚,所以只吃午餐。

I saw her on a cold morning in February.

我在二月的某个寒冷的早上看到她。

on my birthday 在我生日的时候

on the morning of Christmas Day 在圣诞节的早晨

►► 2. in, at 和 on 都可用来表示地点。

at 表示空间位置上的一点。具体地说,它可用来表示较小的地方,像城镇、学校、机关、车站、工厂、某个建筑物或门牌号等。

in“在……里面”,表示在某一平面或立体范围内。在地理位置上,用在国家、大城市、大岛屿等范围大的地点。如:in China, in Tokyo 等。

on“在……上”,表示平面概念,用在平原、海洋、湖泊等平坦和广阔的地方。

例 He was born at a small town. 他出生在一个小镇。

I live at 505, Changan Street. 我住在长安街 505 号。



The girls were at the window , looking out into the garden.

女孩们站在窗口 ,朝花园里看。

She made him sit down at the table. 她让他坐在桌边。

He was in the house yesterday afternoon. 他昨天下午在屋里。

He was at home yesterday afternoon. 他昨天下午在家。

on the playground( sports-ground )在操场上

He is standing at the corner. ( 表示场所 )他站在墙角。

There is a telephone booth at( on )the corner of the street.

街道拐角处有一个电话亭。

The boy sat at the corner of the room. 这个男孩坐在屋角。

We saw a light in the distance. 我们看到远处有灯光。

The picture looks better at a distance. 这幅画远看更好一些。

We sat on a bench. 我们坐在长凳上。

He is sitting in an armchair. 他正坐在单人沙发上。

in the fields 在田间

in the field 在战场上

on the farm 在农场

on the ground 在地上

### 三、over/under up/down above/below on/beneath

#### 表示“上”、“下”位置的区别

on 表示“在(平面)上”,beneath 表示“在.....(平面)下”;over 表示“在.....(垂直)上方”,under 表示“在.....(垂直)下方”;above 表示“在.....上方”,below 表示“在.....下方”。up 表示“往.....的上方”,down 表示“往.....的下方”。

例 There is a colour TV set on the desk. 桌子上有一台彩电。

The submarine can run very fast beneath the sea.

潜艇在水下能开得很快。

There is a lamp over the table. 桌子上方有一盏灯。

The peasants are having a rest under the tree.

农民们正在树下休息。

The plane is flying above the clouds.



这架飞机正在云层的上方飞行。

The sun sank below the horizon. 太阳落到地平线下面去了。

He went up the hill. 他上山来。

He ran down a hill. 他自山上跑下去。

#### 四、around ,round ,about 表示“围绕”或“周围”意义的区别

around 表示“在周围”围着的静止位置；round 表示“在周围”旋转的运动位置；about 笼统地表示在某一物的附近或旁边。

例 Children sat around the fire. 孩子们围坐在火的周围。

The earth goes round the sun. 地球围绕太阳转。

Her hair hung about her neck. 她的头发垂在脖子的左右。

#### 五、across ,through ,over 表示“横过”、“穿过”、“越过”意义的区别

across 是“横过”，从这边到那一边；through 是“穿过”；over 是“越过”、“在……之上横过”。

例 He swam across the river. 他游过河。

The train went through a tunnel. 火车穿过一条隧道。

The plane flew over the city. 飞机飞过这个城市。

#### 六、at ,of ,for ,with ,over ,in 表示引起某种感情的原因或理由时的区别

▶▶ 1. at 常用于 wonder ,weep ,be amazed ,be surprised ,be frightened ,be alarmed ,be astonished 等后面，表示因见到或听到一件事后所产生的某种感情。

例 I am astonished at it. 我对这件事感到吃惊。

The young girl wept at the sad news.

小女孩听到这个悲伤的消息后，哭了起来。

▶▶ 2. of 用于 glad ,fond ,proud ,vain ,afraid ,ashamed ,desirous ,tired 等词后面。

例 I am ashamed of doing it. 我对做这件事感到羞耻。



She is vain of her beauty. 她以她的美丽而自负。

- 3. for 常和表示喜悦、哀愁、恐怖或希望等感情的词连用，表示原因、动机或理由。

⑧例 The children jumped for joy. 孩子们高兴地跳了起来。

I am sorry for your misfortune. 得知你的不幸，我很难过。

比较 sorry 后也可以跟 at。

⑧例 I am sorry at hearing of your failure. 听说你的失败，我很惋惜。

- 4. with 一般指因外界因素所引起的身体或心理状态的变化。常和 tremble, weep, shiver, cry, jump, shout, angry, affected, excited, moved 等词连用。

⑧例 The boy shouted with pain. 这个男孩痛得大叫。

tremble with fear 吓得直哆嗦

I was moved with pity at hearing it by your words.

我听了你讲的这件事觉得很惋惜。

I am angry with you for doing so at such condition.

我对你在这种情况下这样做很生气。

- 5. over 用在 cry, laugh, weep, rejoice, sigh, mourn 等词的后面，表示由于情感而产生出来的事情。

⑧例 They all laughed over the joke. 他们都因为这个笑话而大笑。

He cried over his misfortune. 他因为他的不幸而痛哭。

All the people in the city rejoiced over the victory.

城里所有的人都为胜利而高兴。

- 6. in 常和表示“自满”或“喜悦”的词连用。如：delight, rejoice, glory, take pride, take delight, take pleasure 等。

⑧例 She delights in music. 她喜爱音乐。

She took ( a ) great pride in her achievement.

她为她的成就而自豪。

This boy takes great pleasure in teasing his little sister.

这个男孩很喜欢逗弄他的小妹妹。

## 七、表示排除意义的介词在用法上的区别

- 1. besides 相当于 in addition to 表示“除……以外，还有……”。





在否定句中可表示“除……之外,再也没有……”,与 but/except 通用。besides 后可接名词或动名词,在动词 do 之后,也可以接动词原形。

例 I want nothing besides this. 除此之外我什么也不要。

Besides Chinese he also studies maths, physics, and chemistry.

除了语文,他还学习数学、物理和化学。

►► 2. but“除了……之外(再)没有”,其后常接名词、代词或动词不定式。在接不定式时,如果其前含有实义动词 do,其后常用动词原形。

例 He does nothing but laugh. 他只是大笑而已。

He has no choice but to lie down and sleep.

他别无选择,只好躺下睡觉。

Who but a fool would do such a thing?

除非傻瓜,谁会做这样的事情?

►► 3. except“除……之外”指的是“不把……包括在内”,在此用法中,与 but 相同。

例 I looked everywhere except in the bedroom.

我到处都找了,就是在卧室找。

They did nothing except play all day long.

他们除了整天玩耍外,什么都不做。

►► 4. except for“除了……之外,要不是”,表示不同项目类别的对比和限制。

例 The room is empty except for a few chairs.

除了几把椅子外,这间房子空荡荡的。

I would join you except for my headache.

要不是头痛的话,我会加入你们的。

►► 5. except that“除了……以外”,后接从句,that 有时可以省去。

例 I know nothing about his career except that he is a graduate of Oxford University.

我除了知道他从牛津大学毕业之外,对他的其他经历一无所知。

►► 6. apart from“除了……之外”,美国英语中为 aside from。它有



时相当于 besides 有时则相当于 except 或 except for。

例 Apart from( = Except ) them , I had no one to talk to.

除了他们外 我没有人说话。

Apart from( = Besides ) sport , my other interest outside class is music. 除了体育 我其他的课外爱好还有音乐。

Apart from( = Except for ) some spelling mistakes , the composition is fairly good. 除了一些拼写错误外 这篇作文相当好。

## 八、with , in 和 by 在表示材料、手段、工具时的区别

►►1. “ with + 东西 ”表示行为的主体( 通常是人 )把该件东西当作工具使用 ; by + 东西 ”则表示并非 “ 人 ” ,而是该 “ 东西 ”才是行为的主体。

例 He was killed with a knife. ( = Someone killed him with a knife. )  
有人用刀子杀了他。

He was killed by a falling rock. ( = A falling rock killed him. )  
他被落石砸死了。

注 : with 也可表示 “ 用何种材料 ” ,特别是材料和工具都使用时 ,  
用 with 最好。例如 :

You must write the composition with pen and ink.

你必须用钢笔、墨水写作文。

The road is paved with stone. 这条路是用石头铺的。

►►2. in 表示用何种材料或用何种方式。

例 Don't write a letter in pencil. 不要用铅笔写信。

He's writing a letter in ink. 他在用墨水写信。

►►3. by 表示执行者、手段、交通工具、数量等。

( 1 ) by 表示 “ 手段 ” ,多用于主动语态或不及物动词之后 ,相当于 through , by means of.

例 By ( Through ) your help , I may succeed.

在你的帮助下 我可能会成功。

Choose a wife rather by your ear than your eye.



通过耳朵而不是眼睛来选择妻子。

(2) by 可泛指交通工具, 前面不加冠词 the, 但指特定物时则需加冠词。

例 We shall go by car ( train , bus , ship ). 我们坐轿车( 火车、汽车、船 )过去。

He left by the 10: 30 train. 他乘 10 点半的火车离开。

(3) by 可以表示买卖东西所计算的数或量 ,或付酬所计算的时间 ,此时 by 后面的名词用单数 ,并且加定冠词 the。

例 Milk is sold by the pint , butter by the pound , and egg by the dozen.  
牛奶按品脱、黄油按磅、鸡蛋论打来卖。

### 九、between among 和 amid( st )在表示“ 之间 ”之 中 “用法上的区别

►► 1. 一般来说 ,between 往往表示两者之间 ,常与 and 连用。  
among 则表示在两个以上的东西之间。

例 The house stands between the river and the woods.  
这座房子位于河与树林之间。

A tall red house stands up among the trees.

一座很高的红色房子位于树林中。

The department store is between the bank and the hotel.

商店位于银行和旅馆之间。

I saw him among the crowd. 我看见他在人群中。

但是在许多情况下 ,between 可以用来表示两个以上的东西之间 ,  
用以强调两个以上的人或物中各个体间的关系。

例 Switzerland lies between France , Germany , Italy and Austria.  
瑞士位于法国、德国、意大利及奥地利之间。

The food was shared between three families.

三个家庭分别享用了这些食物。

The money was equally divided between the crew.

这笔钱在机组人员中被平分了。

当然如果不需将各个人或物作为独立的个体看待 ,而只将他( 它 )  
们看成整体时 ,就用 among。



例 The money was divided among the heirs.

这笔钱被各个继承人分了。

He left some money to be divided among the servants.

他给佣人们备下了一笔钱。

►► 2. amid( st )多用于正式文体,意思与 among 相同,两者都可以用来表示在没有确定数目的物体之间。

例 She kept cool amid the panic. 在惊慌中,她保持冷静。

He works amid( st ) his books. 他在书堆里工作。

## 第五节 介词与其他词类的搭配

介词的使用主要是与其他词类进行搭配,不同的搭配在句中的作用也不同,而且许多搭配已变成习惯,这种搭配需要牢记。

### 一、介词和名词的搭配

某些名词可以和不同的介词(如 about, at, of, on, with, for, from 等)搭配形成固定的用法。

►► 1. 某些名词后面常常要求用某些介词,构成一些固定搭配。

concern about 关怀

doubt about 怀疑

affection for 深爱

ambition for 抱负

anxiety for 渴望

cause for 有理由

consideration for 体贴

desire for 欲望

excuse for 借口

hope for 希望

love for 爱

absence from 缺席

conversion from 转变

complaint about 抱怨

opinion about 意见

necessity for 需要

occasion for 时机

pity for 怜悯,惋惜

passion for 激情

preference for 偏爱

request for 要求

sorry for 惋惜

sympathy for 同情

talent for 有天才

substitute for 替代

exemption from 免除



difference from 不同	protection from 防护
confidence in 信任	relief from 解除
delight in 欣喜	interest in 兴趣
difficulty in 困难	pride in 自傲
faith in 信仰	progress in 有进步
harm in 有害	response in 反应 答复
improvement in 改进	perseverance in 坚持
analyses of 分析	success in 成功
capability of (for) 有能力	habit of 成习惯
care of 注意	horror of 厌恶
cause of 原因	intention of 意图
cure of 医治	number of 数目
doubt of 怀疑	prevention of 预防
description of 描述	possibility of 可能性
examination of 检查	shortage of 短缺
authority on 权威	lecture on 讲授
dependence on 依赖	mercy( pity ) on 怜悯
effect on 有效	outlook on 观点
emphasis on 强调	operation on 动手术
grip on 抓紧, 了解	revenge on 报复
influence on 影响	remark on 评论
advantage over 占优势	victory over 战胜
control over 控制	worry over 忧虑
access to 进入 通道	guide to 指导
appeal to 请求 吸引	gratitude to 感激
attention to 注意	indifference to 不关心
approach to 途径	invitation to 邀请
barrier to 障碍	obstacle to 障碍
claim to 要求	objection to 反对
contrast to 对比	reference to 提及 参考
devotion to 忠实于	solution to 解决方法
acquaintance with 相识	connection with 有关系



agreement with 协议

contact with 接触

common with 共同

conversation with 交谈

talk( chat )with 畅谈

trouble with 烦恼

►► 2. 某些名词前面要求用某些介词 构成一些固定搭配。

at ease 舒适的

at first 起先

at last 最终

at the bottom 在底部

at crossroad 在十字路口

at least 至少

at... level 在.....水平上

at large 不受控制地

at once 立即

at a loss 茫然 不知所措

at length 最后 详细地

at midnight 在午夜

in a sense 在某种意义上

in theory 理论上

in practice 实际上

in the way 妨碍

in the past 在过去

in the future 在将来

in good condition 处于良好状态

in advance 提前

in return 作为交换

in turn 接下来 依次

in that event 如果是那样的话

in some respects 在某些方面

in the opposite direction 以相反的方向

in a hurry/rush 匆匆忙忙

in addition 此外

in fact 实际上

at present 目前

at random 任意地

at will 任意地

by accident 意外地

by chance 偶然

by turns 轮流

by degrees 一步一步地

for a change 为求变化起见

for certain 肯定的

in chorus 齐声地

in general 总的来说

in ruins 成为废墟

in use 在使用着

in appearance 在外表上

in common 共同 共有

in private 私下

in time 及时

in depth 深入地

in despair 绝望地

in part 部分地

in detail 详细地

in particular 特别

in short 简言之

on second thoughts 重新考虑

on... scale 在.....规模上

on... occasions 在.....场合

on deposit 储存着

on duty 值班



in place 在适当的位置

on average 按平均

in sight 看见

on vacation 在度假

## 二、介词和动词的搭配

►► 1. 介词和动词的搭配构成动词短语,通常有四种情况。

(1) 动词 + 介词。

例 The committee is looking into the cause of the accident.

委员会正在调查事故的原因。

We concentrated on doing one job at a time.

我们一次专心做一件工作。

(2) 动词 + 宾语 + 介词。

例 She found it necessary to accustom her child to getting up early.

她觉得必须让孩子养成早起的习惯。

They excluded him from the club.

他们拒绝他参加这个俱乐部。

(3) 动词 + 副词 + 介词。

例 I can't put up with these insults any more.

我已无法再忍受这样的侮辱了。

We are looking forward to his coming.

我们正盼着他的到来。

(4) 动词 + 宾语 + 副词 + 介词。

例 These stories took him back to his childhood.

这些故事把他带回到童年时代。

►► 2. 同一动词与不同介词搭配的辨析。

(1) agree with 同意(后面常接 sb. ,idea ,opinion ,method 等)

agree to 同意(后面常接 proposal ,arrangement ,principle 等)

agree on( upon )双方意见一致(后面常接 term ,rules ,date 等)

(2) apply to 应用于 适合于

apply for 申请 要求

(3) break into( tears/laughter )突然(哭、笑)(后面常接名词)

break with 绝交 破除(传统、旧观念)

(4) call on 号召 请求 拜访某人



- call at 探访某地  
call in 请医生, 召集, 收集
- (5) compare ... with ... 把.....跟.....相比较  
compare ... to ... 把.....跟.....相比较, 把.....比喻成.....
- (6) consist of 由.....组成  
consist in 在于, 存在于  
consist with 与一致
- (7) correspond with 与.....通信, 适合  
correspond to 相当于
- (8) die from 因(衰弱、负伤、劳累过度等)而死  
die by 死于(暴行、谋杀、刀剑等)  
die of 死于(疾病、中毒、饥饿、年老等)  
die with 死于(忧愁、羞耻、嫉妒等)
- (9) exchange ... for 以.....换某物  
exchange ... with sb. 与某人换.....
- (10) hear from 收到信  
hear of 听说
- (11) inquire after 探询, 问候  
inquire about 查问, 打听, 了解  
inquire into 追究, 盘问, 调查
- (12) interfere in 干涉, 干预  
interfere with 妨碍
- (13) look into 调查, 浏览  
look at (仔细)看  
look over 检查(毛病)  
look to 注意, 指望
- (14) result from 由.....造成(后接原因)  
result in 导致, 结果是(后接结果)
- (15) spend on 花费(接名词)  
spend in 花费(接动名词)
- (16) vary with 随着.....而变化  
vary in 在.....方面发生变化, 在.....上各不相等





vary from 与.....不同

(17) differ with 与(某人)观点不同

differ from 一事物与另一事物不同

differ in 在.....方面不同

(18) be made from 由.....制成(原料与制品的质地改变,看不出原材料)

be made of 由.....制成(原料与制品的质地未改变,看得出原材料)

be made out of 用.....制造出.....(可代替 from/of)

be made with 用原料制成

(19) wait for 等候

wait on 服侍

### 三、介词和形容词的搭配

►► 1. 有些形容词要求与一定的介词(如 about, at, from, in, of, to 等)搭配来表示不同的用法。

anxious about 担心

careful about 小心

curious about 好奇

concerned about 关心

enthusiastic about 热心于

particular about 讲究

amazed at 吃惊

apt at 善于

angry at 发怒

annoyed at 烦恼

bad at 不善于

anxious for 渴望

competent for 胜任

convenient for 方便

famous for 出名

fit for 适合

careless about 粗心

crazy about 迷恋

certain about 有把握

doubtful about 怀疑

sure about 肯定

good at 擅长

quick at 敏捷

pleased at 欣慰

surprised at 惊奇

slow at 反应慢

late for 迟到

necessary for 所必需

possible for 有可能

ready for 准备好

responsible for 负责任

suitable( suited ) for 合适



grateful for	感激	sufficient for	足够
hungry for	渴望	free from	免除
absent from	缺席	far from	远离
different from	不同于	protected from	安全
distant from	远离	safe from	安全
distinct from	有差别	exempt from	免除
successful in	成功	absorbed in	专心于
disappointed in sb.	对某人失望	confident in	信任
expert in	熟练	lacking in	缺乏
experienced in	有经验	lost in	迷恋
fortunate in	有幸	prompt in	迅速
interested in	感兴趣	rich in	盛产
afraid of	害怕	weak in	差劲 不行
aware of	了解 意识到	full of	充满
ashamed of	羞耻	fond of	喜爱
characteristic of	.....特征	guilty of	犯罪
capable of	有能力 能够	independent of	独立自主
considerate of	体谅	incapable of	无能力
conscious of	意识到	jealous of	妒忌
composed of	组成	proud of	骄傲 自豪
deserving of	值得	regardless of	不管
desirous of	渴望	sick of	厌烦
deprived of	剥夺	short of	缺乏
disregard of	不顾	suspicious of	怀疑
envious of	羡慕 妒忌	tired of	厌倦
exclusive of	除外	thoughtful of	体贴
alike to	相似	typical of	是.....的特点
accustomed to	习惯于	deaf to	拒绝听取
adverse to	相敌对	dissimilar to	与.....不相同
beneficial to	有益于	equal to	等于
contrary to	相反	equivalent to	相当于
convenient to	方便	fundamental to	根本的



devoted to 献身于	familiar to 熟悉
indifferent to 不在乎	grateful to 感谢
loyal to 忠实于	relevant to 和.....有关
associated with 联络	related to 有联系
annoyed with 烦恼	frank with 坦率
angry with sb. 对某人发火	friendly with 与.....友好
busy with 忙于	generous with 慷慨
bored with 厌烦	familiar with 精通
confronted with 面临	identical with 相同
consistent with 与.....一致 连贯	popular with 受欢迎
concerned with 同.....有关	nervous with 紧张
disappointed with 对.....失望	pleased with 满意
disgusted with 讨厌	patient with 耐心
wrong with 出故障	

►► 2. 不少形容词(或其反义词)之后可以接不同的介词表示不同的意义。

(1) accompanied with sth. 兼有,伴随着(后接事物)  
accompanied by sb. 陪伴,陪同(后接某人)

(2) dependent on 依赖于  
independent of 不依赖于

(3) famous at 善于  
famous for 以.....而著名

(4) grateful to sb. 感激某人  
grateful for sth. 为.....事而感激

(5) responsible to sb. 对某人负责  
responsible for sth. 对某事负责

(6) sick with 患(病)  
sick of 厌恶,厌倦  
sick for 渴望

(7) sensible of 感知,发觉  
insensible to 不知道,没觉察到

(8) suitable( suited )to 对某人合适



suitable( suited )for 对某事合适

( 9 ) tired from 因.....而疲劳

tired of 厌倦

( 10 ) disappointed at sth. 对某事失望

disappointed with sb. 对某人失望

( 11 ) blind of/deaf of 瞎/聋

blind to/deaf to 没察觉/置若罔闻

( 12 ) considerate about 体贴人的

inconsiderate of 轻率的

( 13 ) concerned in 参与,干涉

concerned for 关怀

concerned at 挂念

( 14 ) equal in 在某一方面与.....相等

equal to 等于

( 15 ) occupied in doing sth. 忙着做.....

occupied with sth. 从事于.....



## Exercise 11

### I. 选择题

1. He finished the work \_\_\_\_\_ the cost of his health.  
A. at                      B. on                      C. with                      D. in
2. He was evidently not accustomed \_\_\_\_\_ that kind of thing.  
A. for                      B. at                      C. to                      D. in
3. How could he make up \_\_\_\_\_ all that she had suffered because of him ?  
A. with                      B. for                      C. to                      D. up for
4. I don't think anyone can accuse me \_\_\_\_\_ not being frank.  
A. of                      B. for                      C. in                      D. to
5. The party will be held indoors \_\_\_\_\_ the event of rain.  
A. for                      B. on                      C. in                      D. at
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the storm we should have arrived earlier.  
A. Thanks to      B. Owing to      C. But for      D. Due to
7. \_\_\_\_\_ the few who have failed in the their exam , all the students in the hall are in very high spirits.  
A. Apart from      B. Despite      C. Due to      D. But for
8. While I was driving home , I heard some surprising news \_\_\_\_\_ the radio.  
A. by                      B. at                      C. through                      D. on
9. This river starts \_\_\_\_\_ among the mountains.  
A. beyond                      B. from                      C. off                      D. out
10. \_\_\_\_\_ the end of this term , we shall have learned 20 lessons.  
A. At                      B. To                      C. In                      D. By
11. Your ideas , \_\_\_\_\_ , seem unusual to me.  
A. just as hers                      B. like hers  
C. as hers                      D. different than hers
12. It is said that the bus company will raise the bus fare \_\_\_\_\_ 5% .  
A. for                      B. to                      C. from                      D. by
13. \_\_\_\_\_ the morning of June 27th they visited the Great Hall of the People.  
A. On                      B. In                      C. At                      D. From
14. John Kennedy was born \_\_\_\_\_ a rich family while Abraham Lincoln came \_\_\_\_\_ a poor family background.



- A. by...from B. from...of C. into...from D. at...into
15. He knows English history quite well , but \_\_\_\_\_ French history he can tell you nothing.  
A. regarding B. with regards C. as regards to D. as regarding
16. My grandpa is \_\_\_\_\_ sixty now , but he is still working hard.  
A. in B. more C. above D. over
17. Some articles have risen in price \_\_\_\_\_ the increasing costs.  
A. since B. due to C. but for D. because
18. " I'm sorry I stepped on your toe ; it was an accident. "  
" It wasn't. You did it \_\_\_\_\_ purpose. "  
A. on B. for C. with D. at
19. While cleaning the attic the other day , I came \_\_\_\_\_ an old photograph of my mother.  
A. to B. by C. up with D. across
20. I am envious \_\_\_\_\_ your achievements.  
A. for B. on C. of D. to
21. Before leaving the country , the young couple sold their house \_\_\_\_\_ six thousand dollars.  
A. at B. for C. with D. on
22. " What happens to these people ?"  
" They have been waiting for many hours to see the movie stars , but the plane must have been \_\_\_\_\_. "  
A. off time B. ahead schedule  
C. on time D. behind schedule
23. " Where's your hometown ?"  
" It is about twenty miles \_\_\_\_\_ the east of Chicago. "  
A. in B. on C. to D. by
24. \_\_\_\_\_ his cold , he came first in the athletics meet.  
A. Regardless B. In spite C. In spite of D. Despite of
25. " Does your father like to play golf ?"  
" Yes , he's really enthusiastic \_\_\_\_\_ it. "  
A. by B. about C. with D. on
26. \_\_\_\_\_ , the whole affair was a waste of time.  
A. Opinionated B. In my opinion



· 第十一章 介词 ·

- C. Of my opinion                      D. Opinions of mine
27. He accomplished his purpose \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. on ease    B. for ease    C. at ease    D. with ease
28. There are some doubts \_\_\_\_\_ his honesty.  
A. to            B. on            C. about            D. along
29. I'm rather anxious \_\_\_\_\_ her ,for I haven't heard from her for a long time.  
A. toward    B. about            C. in            D. over
30. Mr. Brown expressed his sympathy \_\_\_\_\_ the unfortunate child.  
A. from            B. for            C. with            D. about
31. Contrary \_\_\_\_\_ public opinion , this area has long been a heaven for all forms of insect life.  
A. with            B. at            C. for            D. to
32. We can not judge a person simply on the \_\_\_\_\_ of his education.  
A. condition    B. basis            C. principle    D. theory
33. I have given up trying to convince him ;there is no point \_\_\_\_\_ with him.  
A. by arguing    B. for arguing    C. with arguing    D. in arguing
34. On hearing of the accident ,we were much concerned \_\_\_\_\_ his safety.  
A. about            B. upon            C. in            D. at
35. He has been absent \_\_\_\_\_ class for quite some time.  
A. in            B. for            C. with            D. from
36. " Do you mind if Edward rides in your car ?"  
" Yes ,I do. I'll be glad to take \_\_\_\_\_ Edward. "  
A. somebody else than            B. anyone else than  
C. some other person but            D. anybody but
37. In many schools ,students don't have sufficient access \_\_\_\_\_ the library.  
A. of            B. into            C. to            D. for
38. Some students are quick \_\_\_\_\_ figures.  
A. to            B. for            C. in            D. at
39. I don't like to disturb you ,because you're quite tired \_\_\_\_\_ working hard today.  
A. with            B. of            C. out            D. on
40. A teacher should always be considerate \_\_\_\_\_ the welfare of his pupils.  
A. in            B. to            C. of            D. at
41. Some historians are clearer than others in their descriptions \_\_\_\_\_ great



- battle.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. to                      D. of
42. Daily exercise is beneficial \_\_\_\_\_ a person's health.  
A. with                      B. for                      C. in                      D. to
43. I was sick \_\_\_\_\_ her way of dancing.  
A. with                      B. of                      C. for                      D. off
44. He has a talent \_\_\_\_\_ painting.  
A. in                      B. to                      C. for                      D. about
45. I met her on my way \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. by accident                      B. for an accident  
C. with the accident                      D. in accident
46. Lying about \_\_\_\_\_ the corner of the room were some farm tools.  
A. on                      B. at                      C. in                      D. upon
47. There was a storm \_\_\_\_\_ the night ; it rained \_\_\_\_\_ three or four hours.  
A. during , for    B. in , during    C. during , at    D. on , during
48. Put some cotton \_\_\_\_\_ the carpet.  
A. in                      B. beneath                      C. below                      D. to
49. An important meeting will be held \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the term.  
A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. with
50. I will graduate from this university \_\_\_\_\_ three years.  
A. after                      B. in                      C. for                      D. from
51. Would you please answer the question \_\_\_\_\_ English ?  
A. with                      B. into                      C. on                      D. in
52. The boy \_\_\_\_\_ a blue shirt is Jack.  
A. on                      B. with                      C. of                      D. in
53. You'll meet him \_\_\_\_\_ the airport \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday.  
A. on , on    B. at , on    C. in , by    D. at , before
54. \_\_\_\_\_ a few words I do not know any French at all.  
A. Apart    B. Apart from    C. Unless    D. Except for
55. \_\_\_\_\_ the earth , there are numerous planets in the sky.  
A. Except    B. But    C. Besides    D. Beside
56. \_\_\_\_\_ hearing the news of his father's death , he burst into tears.  
A. In    B. Once    C. After    D. On
57. Your composition is good \_\_\_\_\_ a few spelling mistakes.





· 第十一章 介词 ·

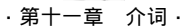
- A. except      B. besides      C. except for      D. but for
58. A good way to rid yourself of certain kinds of dogmatism is to become aware \_\_\_\_\_ opinions held in social circles different from your town.  
A. of      B. with      C. at      D. to
59. Scientists have already found problems to be associated \_\_\_\_\_ living in the ocean are nearly the same as those of living in outer-space.  
A. to      B. of      C. with      D. at
60. He is in different \_\_\_\_\_ hardship and dangers.  
A. of      B. at      C. to      D. in

II. 改错题

1. " We have won a great victory on our enemy , " the captain said.  
A      B      C      D
2. The law I am referring requires that everyone who owns a car have accident insurance.  
A      B      C      D
3. Nobody besides little children thinks that a trip by bus is exciting.  
A      B      C      D
4. It was not so much the many blows he received for the lack of fighting spirit that led to his losing the game.  
A      B      C      D
5. Allen has stated that he has always had a great interest and admiration for the work of the Britain economist Keynes.  
A      B      C      D
6. If they will not accept a check , we shall have to pay the cash , though it would be much trouble for both sides.  
A      B      C      D
7. Having been robbed off economic importance , those states are not likely to count for very much in international political terms.  
A      B      C      D
8. An important factor in a market-oriented economy is the mechanism by which consumer demands can be expressed and responded by producers.  
A      B      C      D
9. Reading between the lines , I should say the scientists are disappointed for the  
A      B      C



- outcome of the research project , though they will not openly admit it.  
D
10. The old man is in the habit of going for a walk along the river every morning  
A B C  
except it rains.  
D
11. The young clerk was faced with the burden to caring for his sick mother and  
A B C D  
two brothers.
12. A gentleman is not supposed to hurt a woman at any circumstances.  
A B C D
13. At formal occasions , you should talk about some world issues or social  
A B C  
problems , not about yourself or your family.  
D
14. Because of the large circulation these stamps decreased with value.  
A B C D
15. Everyone in our country has a right for happiness , freedom ,  
A B C  
free medical care , education , and to the protection of private property.  
C D
16. You cannot say that the desire for material advantage is the basic  
A B  
motive in human behaviors ; there are many exceptions for this.  
C D
17. The value of this dictionary consists of its numerous notes on usage.  
A B C D
18. He is interested and capable of the work his teacher has asked him to do.  
A B C D
19. Mr. Black was such a kind-hearted man and was always full of wits ; we can  
A B  
never associate him to death though he passed away a month ago.  
C D
20. The social separation among whites and blacks in the south is so great that it  
A B  
cannot be easy to establish ordinary personal relations across such a barrier.  
C D
21. Because of the severe snowstorm and the road blocks , the air force  
A B  
dropped food and medical supplies close the city.  
C D



- 285



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

## 第十二章 名词性从句

名词性从句的功能相当于名词词组。按其句法功能,名词性从句可分为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。引导名词性从句的有连接词 *that*, *whether* 和 *if*, 关系代词 *who*, *whom*, *whose*, *what*, *which*, *whatever*, *whichever*, *whoever* 以及关系副词 *when*, *where* 和 *how*。

### 第一节 主语从句

#### 一、*that* 引导的主语从句

►► 1. *that* 引导的主语从句既可放在句首,也可放在句末。但是为



了保持句子的平衡,常用 it 作形式主语,把真正的主语从句放在句后。

例 That he survived the accident is a miracle.

( = It is a miracle that he survived the accident. )

他在这场事故中幸免于难,真是奇迹。

That he is a doctor is true. ( = It is true that he is a doctor. )

千真万确,他是医生。

It is surprising that she is ( should be ) so angry.

她那么生气,令人惊讶。

►► 2. 用 it 作形式主语的 that 从句有的已形成固定用法和译法。常见的有四种句型。

例 It is natural that she should cry.

她痛哭是人之常情。

It's a great pity that you can't help us.

你不能帮助我们真是非常遗憾。

It is reported that the number of wild animals in Africa is decreasing.

据报道非洲野生动物的数量正在减少。

It occurred to me that I would travel Europe.

我突然想到要去欧洲旅游。

常见的四种搭配关系如下:

(1) It + be + 名词 + that 从句。

It is a fact that... 事实是.....

It is common knowledge that... .....是常识

It is a question that... .....是个问题

It is a pity that... 可惜的是.....

It is an honor that... .....非常荣幸

It is a shame that... .....真是可耻

It is a wonder that... 真是奇迹.....

(2) It + be + 形容词 + that 从句。

It is certain that... 很肯定.....

It is clear / evident that... 很清楚.....

It is ( un ) likely / probable that... 很有( 不太 )可能.....



It is better that... 最好.....

It is natural that... 很自然.....

(3) It + be + 过去分词 + that 从句。

It is said that... 据说.....

It has been proved that... 已证明.....

It must be pointed out that... 必须指出.....

It is demanded that... 按要求.....

It is reported that... 据报道.....

It is estimated that... 据估计.....

It is believed that... 据认为.....

注：以上句型在表示建议、要求、命令等意义时，从句中的谓语动词应加 should 或用原形。（参阅虚拟语气部分）

(4) It + 不及物动词 + that 从句。

It seems that... 好像是.....

It happened that... 碰巧.....

It follows that... 由此可见.....

It matters that... 要紧的是.....

It occurred to me that... 我突然想到.....

It struck me that... 我突然想到.....

►► 3. that 主语从句不可提前的几种情况。

虽然 that 主语从句既可放在句首，也可放在句后，但是在下列情况下 that 主语从句不可提前。

(1) 在“ It is said/reported/estimated...”结构中的主语从句不可提前。

例 It is said that they are a happy pair. 据说他们是幸福的一对。

不可说：That they are a happy pair is said.

(2) 在“ It occurred/happened...”结构中的主语从句不可提前。

例 It occurred to me that I had a good idea. 我突然想到了一个好主意。

不可说：That I have a good idea occurred to me.

(3) 含主语从句的复合句是疑问句时，主语从句不提前。



例 Is it true that he would take the risk ?

他要冒这个险是真的吗？

►► 4. it 作形式主语和 it 引导强调句的比较。

it 作形式主语代替主语从句，主要是为了平衡句子结构；而 it 引导的强调句可以强调除谓语动词以外的大多数句子成分，无论强调什么成分，都要求用连接词 that（强调人时可用 who，whom）。当强调部分是状语时也只用 that，不能用 when，where，how，why 等。例如：

John might have bought a new book for Mary yesterday.

约翰昨天可能为玛丽买了一本新书。

此句可以强调以下四种成分：

① It is John that/who might have bought a new book for Mary yesterday. [ 强调主语 ]

② It is a new book that John might have bought for Mary yesterday. [ 强调宾语 ]

③ It is for Mary that John might have bought a new book yesterday. [ 强调目的状语 ]

④ It was yesterday that John might have bought a new book for Mary. [ 强调时间状语 ]

## 二、wh-引导的主语从句

►► 1. wh-引导的主语从句既可直接放在主语位置，也可用 it 作形式主语。

例 Who was responsible for the accident is not yet clear.

= It is not yet clear who was responsible for the accident.

还不清楚谁对此事负有责任。[ 作主语 ]

When he will come has not been clear.

= It has not been clear when he will come.

他何时来还不清楚。[ when 引导主语从句 并在从句中作时间状语 ]

Whether she comes or not doesn't concern me.

她来不来不关我事。[ 这里 whether 不能用 if 替换 ]

►► 2. 在 wh-引导的主语从句中不能用 it 作形式主语的情况。

what，whatever 和 whoever 等引导的主语从句通常不用 it 作形式



主语。

例 What is most important in life isn't money.

人生最重要的并非金钱。[ 作主语 ]

How he escaped still puzzles us.

他究竟如何逃脱至今仍令我们百思不解。[ how 引导主语从句，并在从句中作方式状语 ]

Whoever wants to see the film may get a ticket free.

凡是想看这部电影的人可免费得到一张票。

What he is looking for is his watch. 他正找的东西是他的表。

▶▶ 3. 在 wh-引导的主语从句中只能用 it 作形式主语的情况。

(1) 如果主语从句是一个疑问句，要用 it 作形式主语。

例 Has it been decided where we will perform the experiment ?

我们将在何处进行这个实验决定了吗？

(2) 在“ It doesn't matter + how/ whether/if, ... ”结构中要用 it 作形式主语。

例 It doesn't matter to me whether she is pleased or not.

她满意与否对我而言并不重要。

### 三、whether 与 if 引导主语从句的区别

whether 引导的主语从句既可放在句首也可放在句后，if 引导的主语从句只能放在句后。例如：

Whether she comes or not makes no difference.

她来不来都没有关系。[ 不能用 if ]

It is doubtful whether the President knew the details of the plan.

总统是否知道这个计划的细节这一点颇有疑问。[ 也可用 if ]

## 第二节 宾语从句

用作宾语的从句叫做宾语从句。引导宾语从句的关联词有从属连词、疑问代词、疑问副词等。





## 一、that 引导的宾语从句

- 1. that 常用来引导宾语从句,而且在很多情况下,that 常可省略。

例 The teacher taught us that we should always do our best.

老师教我们要时刻尽己所能。

He assured me that he was able to do it.

他使我确信他能够做这件事。

They promised ( us ) that they would respect our privacy.

他们答应会尊重我们的隐私。

- 2. 在 decide ,desire ,demand ,order ,suggest 等表示“ 决定 ”、“ 要求 ”、“ 命令 ”、“ 建议 ”等意义的动词之后,that 从句中常用“ should + 动词原形 ”或省略 should 直接用动词原形的虚拟语气。

例 The teacher recommended that we ( should ) read the novel.

老师建议我们读那篇小说。

I move that a special committee ( should ) be formed for this matter.

我提议设置一个特别委员会处理这件事。

## 二、that 引导宾语从句的其他几种情况

- 1. 如果宾语从句后跟有补语,常用 it 作形式宾语,而将从句放到补语之后。

例 They kept it quiet that he was dead. 他们对他的死保密。

I heard it said that the meeting would be postponed.

我听说这个会议将推迟。

- 2. 宾语从句也用在某些带有先行词 it 作宾语的固定搭配之后。

例 She took it for granted that you knew the matter.

她想当然地认为你应当知道那件事。

I'll see to it that you get your reward.

我保证会让你得到你的报酬。

I owe it to the doctor that I am still alive.

我还活着,要归功于那位医生。

- 3. 当主句谓语动词为 assume ,believe ,expect ,guess ,imagine ,suppose ,think 等表示“ 认为 ”、“ 猜想 ”的动词时,其后的宾语



从句如果带有否定意义,通常应将否定词前移至主句谓语上。

例 I don't imagine that I have met you before.

我想我们以前没有见过面。

I don't think ( that ) she will succeed.

我想她不会成功的。

I don't suppose that anyone will object to the plan.

我估计没什么人会反对这个计划。

注:此类动词若主语为第一人称,变反意疑问句时,应该反问宾语从句中的谓语动词。而其他宾语从句的动词变反意疑问句时,则反问主句谓语动词。例如:

I don't believe she knows it, does she?

我想她不知此事,是吗?

- 4. 在非正式文体中,由 that 引导的宾语从句中,从属连词 that 常省略,但是如果有两个 that 从句同时作句子的宾语时,第二个 that 通常不能省略,以免引起歧义。

例 I understand ( that ) you have studied Chinese, and that you have written Chinese poetry. 我知道你学过汉语,也写过汉语诗歌。

She denied ( that ) she had seen the man and that she had been in touch with him. 她否认见过这个人,也否认同他有过联系。

- 5. 在由 doubt, doubtful 引导的宾语从句中,如果主句为肯定句,宾语从句的连接词常用 whether, if; 在否定句或疑问句中,宾语从句的连接词要用 that。

例 I doubt whether he will be elected as chairman.

我不知道他是否会当选为主席。

I am doubtful whether I should tell the story to her.

我不知道是否该告诉她那番话。

I don't doubt that he will pass the examination.

我相信他会通过考试。

- 6. 在 hope, believe, suppose, guess, think, be afraid 等动词后面,可用 so 代替上文的一个从句。



例 “Do we get a raise in pay?” “I hope so.”

“我们会加薪吗？”“但愿如此。”

“Is he going to sing?” “I hope not.”

“他打算唱歌吗？”“希望不会。”

“Do you think (that) she will succeed?”

“Yes, I think so. (I don't think so.)”

“你认为她会成功吗？”“是的,我想会(不,我想不会)。”

### 三、wh-引导的宾语从句

由连词 who, which, whose, how, when, where, why, whether, if 等引导的宾语从句,从句中谓语动词不能用倒装语序,但是连接词要放在宾语从句的主语之前。

例 I wonder what he is writing to me about.

我不知道他要给我写信说什么。

I will tell you why I was late for the meeting.

我会告诉你我为什么开会迟到了。

Scientists demand to know when and where they are wrong.

科学家们要求知道他们何时错了,错在哪里。

Your success will largely depend upon what you do and how you do it.

你是否成功将取决于你做什么和怎么做。

Do you know whether/if any decision has been arrived at?

你知道是否已作出了决定?

### 四、介词后面所跟的宾语从句

▶▶ 1. that 通常不能跟在介词后面作宾语,但是在介词 in, except, save, besides 和 but 之后可以跟 that 从句,但多作固定用法。

in that(因为,在……方面), except that(除了……), but that(要不是……), save that(只是……), besides that(除了……)。

例 I like the city in that I have many friends here.

我喜欢这个城市,因为在这里我有许多朋友。

He is a good student except that he is occasionally careless.

除了偶尔粗心之外,他是个好学生。



He would have helped us but that he was short of money at the time.

要不是他当时手头紧,他会帮助我们的。

- ▶▶ 2. that 从句一般不可以直接用作介词宾语,但可跟在带有形式宾语 it 之后作介词的实际宾语。

例 I'm counting on it that you will come.

我正指望着你会来。

You may depend upon it that he will join our club.

你可以指望他加入我们的俱乐部。

- ▶▶ 3. wh- 宾语从句可直接跟在介词后面作宾语。

例 It all depends on whether we can get their cooperation.

这完全取决于我们是否能得到他们的合作。

I became aware of how he might feel.

我已觉察到他有怎样的感受。

- ▶▶ 4. if 和 whether 引导的宾语从句可以互换使用,但介词后的宾语从句只能用 whether, 不能用 if。

例 He asked me if ( or whether ) my brother was at home.

他问我,我哥哥是否在家。

It is a question of whether we should go.

问题在于我们是否应该去。

## 五、形容词后面所跟的宾语从句

在某些表示动态的形容词(如 afraid, confident, conscious, aware, certain, sure, doubtful 等)作表语时,后面可跟一个意义上相当于宾语的名词从句。

例 She is confident that she will win the race.

她确信她会赢得这场比赛。

He was afraid that he would lose face. 他担心失面子。

I am not certain whether he will go with us.

我不能确定他是否会和我们一起去。



### 第三节 表语从句

在系动词后面也可跟一个有连接词引导的句子,这种结构被称为表语从句。

#### 一、that 引导的表语从句

其结构为“主语 + 系动词 + that 从句”。例如：

The fact is that he didn't even take the exam.

事实是他连考试都没参加。

What I particularly dislike about this lesson is that it is really boring.

我特别不喜欢这门课的地方是它的确令人乏味。

The trouble is that I have lost the document.

麻烦的是我把那个文件弄丢了。

#### 二、wh-疑问词引导的表语从句

wh-疑问词引导的从句作“ This is ”和“ That is ”的表语时,它们通常不含有疑问意义,而是分别表示具体的地点、时间、原因、方式等。

① That is why he was late for an hour.

那就是他迟到一小时的原因。

This is where the great man once lived.

这是这个伟人曾经居住过的地方。

What is troubling us is where we can find him.

使我们伤脑筋的问题是在哪儿能找到他。

She is no longer what she was five years ago.

她不再是五年前的她了。

#### 三、从属连词 as if , as though , because , just as 等引导的表语从句

① It looks as if we will be late. 看起来我们似乎会迟到。

He looked just as he had looked ten years ago.



他看起来还和十年前一样。[ 从句为虚拟语气结构 ]

It may be because I didn't have a good sleep yesterday evening.

那可能是因为我昨天晚上没睡好。

#### 四、使用表语从句时应注意的问题

- 1. 主句的主语是 reason 时,表语从句要用 that,不能用 because。

例 The reason why he was dismissed was that he was careless and irresponsible. 他被开除的原因是他工作马虎,不负责任。

The reason ( why ) he was absent was that he was ill.

他没来的原因是他病了。

- 2. 引导表语从句时可用 whether, 不能用 if。

例 His first question was whether Tom had arrived yet.

他的首个问题是汤姆是否已到达。

### 第四节 同位语从句

用作同位语的从句叫做同位语从句。同位语从句用于对名词作进一步解释,具体说明名词的实际内容。

#### 一、同位语从句通常由 that 引导

- 1. 同位语从句常放在 fact( 事实 ), idea( 想法 ), hope( 希望 ), conclusion( 结论 ), evidence( 证据 ), opinion( 意见 ), problem ( 想法 ), understanding( 认识 )等名词后面作同位语。

例 He had to face the fact that he was laid off his job.

他不得不面对失业这一事实。

The news that the team won the game is exciting.

球队赢得这场比赛的消息令人激动。

- 2. 同位语从句有时与从句分开。

例 The fact remains that he accepted the money.

他收了那笔钱的事实依然存在。



An idea occurred to him that he might go there by air.

他突然想起他可以乘飞机去那里。

## 二、wh-疑问词引导的同位语从句

疑问代词 who, which, what 和疑问副词 where, when, why, how 亦可引导同位语从句。

例 The question who should do the work requires consideration.

谁应该做这件工作, 这个问题需要考虑。

I have no idea how soon they are coming.

我不知道他们多久会来。

The problem, why you are going to give up the plan, has not been answered yet.

你为什么要放弃这个计划, 对这个问题你还没有回答。

## 三、whether 引导的同位语从句

引导同位语从句, 通常用 whether, 不用 if。

例 They are faced with the problem whether they should continue the work. 他们面临是否还继续这项工作的问題。

The question whether the Prime Minister should resign must be decided soon. 首相应不应该辞职的问题必须马上得到解决。

## 四、同位语从句与定语从句的区别

在形式上同位语从句类似于定语从句, 有时在汉译时, 也可译为“……的(想法、消息等)”。其主要区别在于: 从意义上来说, 同位语从句对一个名词加以补充说明, 定语从句对一个名词进行修饰或限定。从结构上说, 同位语从句由连词引导, 连词在句中不作任何成分, 只起引导作用; 由关系代词引导的定语从句, 关系代词在从句中担任一定成分, 含有代替所修饰或限制词语的意义。

例 They were all shocked at the news that Germany had declared war on Russia. 他们都为德国向俄国宣战的消息而震惊。[ 只起引导作用, 在句中不作任何成分 ]

They were all shocked at the news that was announced on the radio.



他们都为收音机中宣布的消息而震惊。[ 定语从句 ,that 在从句中作主语 ,省略 that ,句子成分不全 ]

## 第五节 that 和 wh-引导名词性从句的区别

that 在名词性从句中只起引导作用 ,在句中不作任何成分 ,wh-( 除 whether , if 外 )在名词性从句中既起引导作用 ,也在从句中作一定的成分。

④ That they were in truth sisters was clear from the facial resemblance between them.

很显然 她们是亲姊妹 她们的脸型很相似。[ that 引导主语从句 ]

We believe that he is honest.

我们相信他是诚实的。[ that 引导宾语从句 ]

The rumor that they would get married spread at once.

他们要结婚的谣言马上传开了。[ that 引导同位语从句 ]

We could see the runners very well from where we stood.

从我们所站的地方能清楚地看到赛跑的人。[ where 引导宾语从句 ,并在从句中作地点状语 ]

The morning is when I'm busiest. 早上是我最忙的时候。

[ when 引导表语从句 ,并在从句中作状语 ]

I don't know who is the best person to do it.

我不晓得谁最适合做这件事。[ who 引导宾语从句 ,并在从句中作主语 ]

I wonder which he likes best. 我不知道他最喜欢哪一个。

[ which 引导宾语从句 ]





## Exercise 12

### I. 选择题

1. They lost their way in the forest , and \_\_\_\_\_ made matters worse was that night began to fall.  
A. that            B. it            C. what            D. which
2. I'll give the dictionary to \_\_\_\_\_ wants to have it.  
A. whomever    B. someone    C. whoever    D. anyone
3. Water will continue to be \_\_\_\_\_ it is today next in importance to oxygen.  
A. how            B. which            C. as            D. what
4. Professor Lee's book will show you \_\_\_\_\_ can be used in other contexts.  
A. that you have observed    B. that how you have observed  
C. how that you have observed    D. how what you have observed
5. Although she was listening , she didn't hear \_\_\_\_\_ because there was so much noise.  
A. what did say                      B. what did he say  
C. what he was saying              D. what said he
6. I knew nothing about his journey \_\_\_\_\_ he was likely to be away for three months.  
A. if            B. in that            C. except that    D. which
7. Although \_\_\_\_\_ happened in this developed country sounds like miracle , it may occur in some other places.  
A. it            B. which            C. how            D. what
8. Contrary to the opinion of the members , the president should appoint \_\_\_\_\_ he thinks can do the job the most adequately.  
A. who            B. whom            C. whomever    D. whoever
9. The reason why coal is still a very valuable source of power is \_\_\_\_\_ atomic power is not available in sufficient quantity.  
A. because    B. that            C. as            D. for
10. Advertising is distinguished from other forms of communication \_\_\_\_\_ the advertiser pays for the message to be delivered.  
A. in order that    B. in that            C. in which            D. in the way
11. \_\_\_\_\_ progress helps to relieve scarcities is a fact accepted by economists.



- A. Technological                      B. That technological  
C. Although technological          D. There is technological
12. \_\_\_\_\_ one can succeed depends on \_\_\_\_\_ hard he works.  
A. That ... how                      B. That ... however  
C. Whether ... how                  D. Whether ... however
13. \_\_\_\_\_ college students should learn more about Chinese history.  
A. I consider important that      B. I consider it important  
C. I consider it important that    D. I consider what is important
14. A modern city has sprung up in \_\_\_\_\_ was a wasteland ten years ago.  
A. which          B. what          C. that          D. where
15. We all thought \_\_\_\_\_ that the football match should have been put off.  
A. it a pity      B. it pity          C. what a pity    D. a pity is
16. I was curious \_\_\_\_\_ he would say and do next.  
A. as to that    B. to what          C. about what    D. of what
17. We could see the water tower quite clearly from \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. that we lived                      B. where we lived in  
C. where we lived                      D. we lived
18. She told him she would come and see him often , \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. and she would never forget him  
B. and that she would never forget him  
C. she would never forget him  
D. she never forgets him
19. Evidence came up \_\_\_\_\_ specific speech sounds are recognized by babies as young as 6 months old.  
A. what          B. which          C. that          D. whose
20. Last week he promised \_\_\_\_\_ today , but he hasn't arrived yet.  
A. that he would have come      B. what would he have come  
C. which he would come          D. that he would come
21. He is trying all kinds of material to learn \_\_\_\_\_ used.  
A. what of them can be              B. that they can be  
C. which of them can be              D. which of them be can
22. What surprised me was \_\_\_\_\_ so well.  
A. what he spoke English          B. that he spoke English  
C. which did he speak English    D. what did he spoke English



· 第十二章 名词性从句 ·

23. The question is \_\_\_\_\_ to land men there.  
A. if it was safe                      B. if was it safe  
C. whether it was safe                D. whether safe it was
24. They went through the problem \_\_\_\_\_ with dust.  
A. if the moon blanketed              B. if the moon was blanketed  
C. whether the moon blanketed        D. whether the moon was blanketed
25. We asked him the question \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. that the trouble is                  B. which the trouble is  
C. where is the trouble                D. where the trouble is
26. There is often enough information on the card to tell you \_\_\_\_\_ or not.  
A. if the book will be useful          B. whether will the book be useful  
C. if will the book be useful          D. whether will be useful the book
27. Not one of us has a clear idea \_\_\_\_\_ to do.  
A. what the others want                B. that the others want  
C. which do the others want          D. what do the others want
28. The true value of life is not in \_\_\_\_\_ , but \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. which we get , what give we  
B. what we get , what we give  
C. which do we get , which do we give  
D. how we get , that we give
29. \_\_\_\_\_ is no reason for discharging her.  
A. Because she was a few minutes late  
B. Owing to a few minutes being late  
C. The fact that she was a few minutes late  
D. Being a few minutes late
30. \_\_\_\_\_ the 1500's \_\_\_\_\_ the first European explored the coast of California.  
A. It was not until , then              B. It is not until , when  
C. It was until , that                  D. It was not until , that
31. \_\_\_\_\_ as much as one-fourth of all timber harvested is not used.  
A. That is estimated                  B. It is estimated that  
C. There is estimated                 D. It estimates that
32. \_\_\_\_\_ some mammals came to live in the sea is not known.  
A. That              B. What              C. How              D. Since
33. The people at the party were worried about Janet because no one was aware

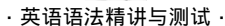


- \_\_\_\_\_ she had gone.  
A. of where    B. of the place    C. the place    D. the place where
34. With the development of computers , it is \_\_\_\_\_ man has suddenly become a millionaire of the mind.  
A. that    B. as if    C. why    D. as
35. \_\_\_\_\_ breaks the law deserves a fine.  
A. Who    B. However he    C. Whoever    D. No matter who
36. Take \_\_\_\_\_ much you want and \_\_\_\_\_ you want to.  
A. however , whenever    B. whatever , whenever  
C. however , whichever    D. whichever , whatever
37. I had not even a vague idea \_\_\_\_\_ was going to happen.  
A. of what    B. in which    C. of which    D. in what
38. You should respect the opinions of others , and at the same time you should insist upon \_\_\_\_\_ right.  
A. that you believe is    B. which you believe to be  
C. what you believe is    D. what you believe
39. It is a common observation \_\_\_\_\_ there are no two objects in nature that are exactly alike.  
A. that    B. which    C. in which    D. in that
40. “ Do you think we will have a two-hour meeting without break ?”  
“ \_\_\_\_\_ . ”  
A. I hope that    B. I don't hope so  
C. I hope not    D. I don't hope that
41. She is in doubt \_\_\_\_\_ she accepts your advice.  
A. if    B. that    C. of which    D. whether
42. The output of our factory is now three times \_\_\_\_\_ it was three years ago.  
A. what    B. that    C. as    D. which
43. \_\_\_\_\_ that you found in the room last week ?  
A. What it was    B. What was it    C. It was what    D. Was it what
44. You will see to \_\_\_\_\_ the engine does not get out of order.  
A. that    B. however    C. it that    D. which
45. We consider \_\_\_\_\_ the instrument should be adjusted each time it is used.  
A. that it necessary    B. necessary that  
C. it necessary that    D. necessary of that



## II. 改错题

1. A man cannot be really happy if that he enjoys doing is ignored by society as of  
A B C D  
no value or importance.
2. I thought the technician was to blame for the blowing of the fuse , but I see  
A B  
now how I was mistaken.  
C D
3. The columnist( 专栏作家 ) feels sure who wins the election will have the  
A B C  
support of the parties.  
D
4. You must be aware of that what you are doing is quite illegal.  
A B C D
5. Now that energy prices are rising so rapidly , further prices are very uncertain ,  
A B  
and the risk of new investment depending on them may fail is greater.  
C D
6. Statesmen are people who have attained fame because of that they have  
A B C  
achieved in the field of government.  
D
7. A student's anxiety about his examinations frequently conceals a fear whose  
A B C  
failure will deprive him of the economic advancement.  
D
8. Most people know how it is like to have their blood pressure taken but few  
A B  
understand what the numbers that are used to record blood pressure mean.  
C D
9. I imagined that I would soon have to face my classmates and I would have to  
A B C  
explain my actions to them.  
D
10. He had trouble finding out that the capital of the country lay in the coastal  
A B C  
area or on the mountain.  
D
11. The reason why Mary has made such big progress is because she has made  
A B C  
very good use of her time in class.  
D



- 304



# 第十三章 定语从句

定语从句也称为关系从句或形容词性从句,由关系代词或关系副词引导。关系词除了起引导作用外,还在从句中指代前面的先行词,并在从句中担任一定的成分。

## 第一节 关系代词引导的定语从句

### 一、关系代词 who ,whom 引导的定语从句

who ,whom 用来代替人。who 是主格,在定语从句中作主语;whom 是宾格,在定语从句中作宾语,在限制性定语从句中可以省略。



例 The pupils who had been watching started to applaud.

一直在旁观看的小学生们开始鼓起掌来。

The boy ( whom ) you saw yesterday is here now.

你昨天见到的那个男孩现在就在这儿。

注：口语中可用 who 代替 whom。但是如果关系代词作介词的宾语，只能用 whom，不用 who。如果介词在句尾，两者都可以用。例如：

This is the girl ( who/ whom ) he worked with.

This is the girl with whom he worked.

这就是与他一起工作的女孩。

## 二、关系代词 whose 引导的定语从句

whose 多指人，也可指物，指物时可与 of which 互换使用。whose 是所有格，在定语从句中作定语。

例 People whose dogs bite other people should keep them tied up.

谁的狗咬了别人，谁就应该把它们拴起来。

The house whose windows are broken is unoccupied.

窗户破了的那所房子没人住。[ 代替物，作定语 ]

当 whose 代替物时，实际上就相当于 of which。上面这句可以改写成：The house of which the windows are broken is unoccupied.

## 三、关系代词 which 引导的定语从句

which 指物，在定语从句中作主语或宾语，作宾语时可以省略。

例 The car which ( that ) was stolen has been found.

偷走的车已被找到了。

The few points ( which/ that ) the president stressed in his report are very important indeed. 院长在报告里强调的几点的确很重要。





注：which 除了指物以外，还可以指婴儿、动物和表示单数意义的集合名词；另外还可指人的地位、职业或品格等。例如：

The baby ( which ) the nurse brought in was born yesterday. 护士抱进来的那个婴儿是昨天出生的。

The audience which is composed entirely of students is larger than ever. 全部由学生组成的观众人数比以前多。

He is exactly the man ( which ) such an education was likely to form. 他正是这样的教育所能造就出来的人。

#### 四、that 引导的定语从句

that 指物或指人，在定语从句中作主语或宾语，还可作表语。作定语或表语时可以被省略。

例 He is a man that ( who ) means what he says.

他是个说话算数的人。

The people ( that/ whom ) you met in the campus yesterday are from England. 你昨天在校园里遇到的那些人是从英国来的。

These are the pictures that I took in Shanghai.

这些是我在上海拍的照片。

#### 五、通常只用关系代词 that，不用 which，who 或 whom 的几种情况

▶▶ 1. 当先行词是 all, everything, nothing, something, anything, little, much, none, few 等不定代词时，定语从句常用 that 引导。

例 Professor Li has told us something that we should do in the summer vacation. 李教授已经告诉我们暑假应该做的事了。

He knew everything that happened in the village.

他知道发生在村子里的每一件事。

Much that I learned in the book is very useful.

我在那本书中学到的很多东西是非常有用的。



Is there anything that I can do for you? 有什么事要我做吗?

- 2. 当先行词被序数词或形容词最高级修饰时,定语从句常用 that 引导。

例 The first thing that I am going to do this evening is to write to my parents. 我今晚要做的第一件事就是给我父母写封信。

This is the most interesting film that has been produced in recent years. 这是近几年出品的最有趣的一部电影。

- 3. 当先行词被 no, every, some, any, only, very, much 等限定词所修饰时,定语从句常用 that 引导。

例 This is the very book that I have been looking for.

这正是我在寻找的书。

There is no person that doesn't make mistakes. 没有人不犯错误。

That's the only thing that we can do now. 目前我们只能这样做了。

- 4. 当并列的两个先行词分别表示人与动物或人与物时,定语从句常用 that 引导。

例 They are talking about the teachers and schools that they have visited. 他们正在谈论他们访问过的老师和学校。

Look at the man and his donkey that are walking up the street.

瞧瞧从街道上走过来的那个男人和他的驴子。

- 5. 主句是以 who 或 which 开头的特殊疑问句时,定语从句只能用 that 引导。

例 Who is the person that is standing over there?

站在那边的那个人是谁?

Which of us that knows something about physics does not know this?

哪一位懂得物理知识的人不知道这一点?

注:先行词是人称代词和指示代词时,常用 who 引导。例如:

He who contributes to the people deserves respect.

他为人民作出了贡献应该受到尊敬。

Those who don't wish to go need not do so.

不愿意去的人不必去。



►► 6. 当关系代词在从句中作表语时 ,常用 that。

例 The modern aeroplane is not the machine that it was when first invented. 现代飞机不是刚发明时的那种飞机了。

He does not seem to be the man that he was.

他似乎和过去不一样了。

►► 7. 当定语从句为 there be 句型时 ,从句主语的关系代词只能为 that ,但经常可以省略。

例 I know the difference ( that ) there is between you.

我知道你们之间的分歧。

The number of mistake ( that ) there are in this homework is simply surprising. 这份课外作业中的错误简直多得惊人。

## 六、关系代词 but 和 than 引导的定语从句

►► 1. but 是具有否定意义的关系代词 ,代替人或物 ,相当于“ that ( 或 which ,who ) . . . not ” ,用于 no 之后。

例 There is no rule but has some exceptions.

任何规则都会有例外。

There was no single student in my class but ( who did not ) learn a lot from him. 我班上每一个学生都从他那里学到了许多东西。

►► 2. than 可引导定语从句 ,代替带有形容词比较级修饰的名词 ,是具有比较意义的关系代词。在从句中兼当主语、宾语、表语用。

例 There were more casualties than were reported.

伤亡的人员要比报道的多。

He spends more money than he earns.

他花的钱比挣的多。

## 第二节 关系副词引导的定语从句

### 一、关系副词 when ,where ,why 引导的定语从句

when ,where ,why 引导的定语从句分别修饰表示时间、地点、原因



的先行词,并分别在从句中作时间、地点、原因状语。关系副词也可根据其其在句中的搭配关系,转换成介词加关系代词的结构。

④ I shall never forget the day when ( that/on which ) I entered the university. 我永远不会忘记上大学的那一天。

In the years when ( that/in which ) food was not enough many people were starved to death.

粮食缺乏的那几年,许多人都被饿死了。

That is the factory where ( in which ) I worked three years ago.

那就是我三年前工作过的那个工厂。

The next day John went with me to the station ,where I bought a ticket for Beijing.

第二天我和约翰去了趟火车站,我在那买了张去北京的火车票。

The meeting will be put off next month ,when ( by which ) we will have made all the preparations.

会议将推迟到下个月,到时我们将做好一切准备。

That is the reason why ( that/for which ) I am not in favor of the plan. 这就是我不赞成这个计划的原因。

This is the time when ( during which ) brand loyalties may be formed that could last well into adulthood.

这是对品牌产生信赖的时候,而这种信赖感会一直持续到成年。

注:time 作先行词,如前面有序数词或 last 修饰时,不能用 when 引导定语从句,要用 that 或省去不用。但是,如果 time 之前无有序数词或 last,则 when 和 that 皆可引导定语从句。例如:

This is the last time that I shall give you a lesson.

这是我最后一次给你们上课了。

The first time ( that ) I entered the college was in 1988.

我第一次进入这所学院是在 1988 年。

## 二、that 作关系副词引导的定语从句

▶▶ 1. that 作关系副词常代替引导定语从句的关系副词 when,



where 和 why 而且往往可以省略。

例 We'll find some good place (that) we'll have a picnic.

我们将找个好地方野餐。[ that 代替 where ]

He didn't tell me the reason (that) he was so upset.

他没有告诉我他那么心烦意乱的原因。[ that 代替 why ]

That was the day (that) he wrote the report.

那就是他写这个报告的那一天。[ that 代替 when ]

▶▶ 2. 当先行词是表示方式的 the way 时, 关系从句通常不能用 how 来引导, 应该用 that 或 in which, 或将它们全部省略掉。

例 We admired the way he solved the problem.

我们钦佩他解决那个问题的方式。

I don't like the way (that/in which) he eyed me.

我不喜欢他看我的那种方式。

In general, the way people think about themselves has a found effect on all areas of their lives.

一般来说, 人们看待自我的方式对他们生活的各个方面都有深刻的影响。

### 第三节 限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句

定语从句就其与先行词的关系而言, 可分为限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句。

#### 一、限制性定语从句

限制性定语从句和先行词之间没有逗号, 是紧接着的, 而且它们之间有着内在的密不可分的联系, 如果省略了就会使整个主句没有意义。

例 The authors who (whom/ that) he mentioned are well known.

他所提到的那些作者都是非常有名的。

He is the man who has strong personality.

他是个性很强的人。



## 二、非限制性定语从句

非限制性定语从句和先行词之间有逗号分开,而且两者之间的关系比较松散,只起补充说明的作用,即使省略了也不影响主句意义的完整。

例 The clock, which my great-grandfather bought, is still in good order.  
这时钟是我曾祖父买的,现在还走得很准。

My brother, who works abroad, is coming next week.

我哥哥在国外工作,他下周将回来。

The sports meet will be held in October, when the climate is very congenial. 运动会将在 10 月举行,那时气候非常宜人。

He is going to the golf course, where he intends to put in some practice. 他打算去高尔夫球场,在那儿进行一些练习。

## 三、使用非限制性定语从句时应注意的问题

▶▶ 1. that 不能用来引导非限制性定语从句。

例 My brother, that had been on a visit to the Philippines, returned last week.  
A B C D

A 错。应改为 who。that 不能用来引导非限制性定语从句。

译文 我兄弟去了菲律宾,上周回来的。

He spoke confidently, \_\_\_\_\_ impressed me most.

A. so that B. that C. in which D. which

答案为 D。that 不能用来引导非限制性定语从句。which 代替整个主句,在非限制性定语从句中作主语。

译文 他说话非常自信,那给我留下了很深的印象。

▶▶ 2. 在限制性定语从句中,关系代词作宾语可以省略,但是在非限制性定语从句中,关系代词作宾语时不能省略。

例 The film ( which ) I saw last night is about a young teacher.

我昨天晚上看的那部电影是关于一个年轻教师的事。[ which 可以省去 ]

The shed in our garden, which my father built many years ago, has



lasted for a long time.

花园里的棚子已经有很长时间了,这是我父亲在很多年前搭的。

[ which 不能省去 ]

She introduced me to her husband, whom I hadn't met before.

她把我介绍给她的丈夫,我以前没有见过他。[ whom 不能省去 ]

## 第四节 as 引导的定语从句以及与其他关系代词的比较

### 一、as 与其他词连接引导的定语从句

as 引导定语从句时,可指人也可指物,通常与 the same, such, so 等连用,形式为 the same... as, such... as, as... as, so... as。as 在定语从句中可作主语、宾语、表语等。

例 I lend you such books as will interest you.

我借给你使你感兴趣的书。[ as 代替物,作主语 ]

She knew he felt just the same as she did.

她知道他的感觉与她自己的一样。[ as 代替事,作宾语 ]

Such people as you describe are rare nowadays.

你描绘的这种人在现在已很少见了。[ as 代替人,作宾语 ]

Mass is not the same thing as weight is.

质量并不等于重量。[ 作表语 ]

From this library we can borrow as many books as we want to read.

从这个图书馆我们能够借到许多我们想要读的书。[ 作宾语 ]

Here is so big a stone as no man can lift.

这儿有一块大石头,没有人能举起来。[ 作宾语 ]

### 二、the same... as 和 the same... that 的用法不同

在“the same... as”和“the same... that”中,as 引导的定语从句表示其内容与主句所讲的事物“相似”,指同类事物;that 引导的定语从句表示其内容与主句所讲的事物是“同一个”,指同一事物。



例 This is the same ( kind of ) pen as I lost yesterday.

这和我昨天丢的笔一样。[ 类似的笔 ]

This is the same pen ( the very pen ) that I lost yesterday.

这支笔就是我昨天丢的那支。[ 同一支笔 ]

### 三、as 和 which 引导非限定性定语从句的用法比较

- 1. which 和 as 都可引导非限制性定语从句。在非限制性定语从句中 ,which 和 as 都可指代整个主句意思 ,也可指代主句中的部分内容。

例 A rocket carries oxygen with it , which makes it possible for the rocket to travel in space.

火箭携带着氧气 这样可以使它在太空中运行。[ 代替整句意思 ]

He married her as ( which ) was natural.

他与她结婚了 ,这是很自然的事。[ 代替整句意思 ]

- 2. which 引导的非限定性定语从句不能位于句首 ,而 as 引导的非限定性定语从句的位置比较灵活 ,可在句首、句末或句中。

例 As was usual at the weekend , the club was almost empty.

像往常的周末一样 ,俱乐部里几乎是空的。

Her performance was wonderful , as we had expected.

正如我们预料的那样 ,她的表演非常精彩。

- 3. 当关系代词 as 在其引导的从句中充当主语时 ,其谓语动词通常是 be 或其他系动词以及被动语态 ,此时 ,如果 as 引导的定语从句不在句首 ,as 和 which 可互换。

例 The man was a teacher , as ( which ) was evident from his way of speaking.

从那男人说话的样子可看出来 ,他是个老师。

She was absent , which ( as ) is often the case.

她没有到 ,这是很经常的事。

She changed her mind again , which made us all very angry.

她又改变了主意 这使我们大家都很生气。[ 通常不能用 as 来替代 ]

- 4. as 引导的定语从句常常含有“ 正如…… ”之意 ,而 which 引导的定语从句常有归纳概括的意思 ,常译作“ 这…… ”。





例 As was expected, he performed the task with success.

正如所预料的那样,他成功地完成了任务。

As he hoped he would, he saw the girl.

正像他所希望的那样,他看到了那个女孩。

He said that he had never met her, which was not true.

他说他以前从未见过她,但这不是真的。

## 第五节 “介词 + 关系代词”引导的定语从句

### 一、介词与关系代词连用引导的定语从句

“介词 + 关系代词”引导的定语从句是目前各类考试中常出现的测试点。通常情况下,介词放在关系代词前引导定语从句。但在口语或非正式文体中,介词位于句末,这时关系代词也可省略。

例 The company  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in which I am working} \\ \text{which I am working in} \\ \text{that I am working in} \\ \text{I am working in} \end{array} \right\}$  is a large one.

我工作的那家公司是一家大公司。

The person  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{with whom you talked} \\ \text{whom you talked with} \\ \text{who you talked with} \\ \text{that you talked with} \\ \text{you talked with} \end{array} \right\}$  is a famous writer.

与你谈话的那个人是一位有名的作家。

注:(1) 只有当介词放在从句尾时,that 才可替换 which,而且常省略,which 和 whom 也可省略(可参考上面的例句)。

(2) 具体选用什么样的介词完全取决于某种习惯搭配或上下文所表达的意义。例如:



This colorless gas is called oxygen	{	for which we have been working in the lab.
		in which fires burn much better.
		on which we are experimenting.
		with which we can rescue patients.
		without which we could not live.

## 二、介词短语动词与关系代词连用引导的定语从句

虽然定语从句中的介词可在关系代词之前,也可在关系代词之后,但是含有介词的短语动词一般不可拆开,介词仍放在动词之后,紧靠短语动词。

① Your inefficiency, which we have put up with far too long, is beginning to annoy our customers.

你慢慢吞吞地,这我们早就受够了,现在又要来惹怒我们的顾客。

The paper he is looking for is very important.

他正在找的那个文件非常重要。

## 三、of 与关系代词连用引导的定语从句

当介词 of 与关系代词所构成的介词短语在定语从句中作定语时,of 不可移到句末。

① We found a house { of which the roof / the roof of which } had been damaged.

我们发现了一所屋顶被破坏了的房子。

This is the largest { of which the minute hand / the minute hand of which } is six meters long.

这是世界上最大的钟,其分针长达 6 米。

但是,当 of 与关系代词所构成的介词短语不作定语时,介词既可移到前面,也可放在句末。

① This is the program { ( which ) I was speaking of. / of which I was speaking }.

这就是我所说的节目。



#### 四、“名词/代词/形容词比较级或最高级/数词等 + 介词 + 关系代词”引导的定语从句

“名词/代词/形容词比较级或最高级/数词等 + 介词 + 关系代词”结构常用来引导定语从句,而且这一结构多用于非限制性定语从句。

例 The teacher asked us several questions, the answers to which proved very illuminating.

老师问了我们几个问题,这些问题的答案都很有启发性。

At the scene there were two cigarettes left, one of which was stained with lipstick. 现场留有两支香烟,其中一支沾有口红。

There are over 100 natural elements, some of which are very familiar. 有 100 多种天然元素,其中有一些是非常熟悉的。

Air is a mixture of many different gases, of which the largest amount (the largest amount of which) is nitrogen, and the next largest amount is oxygen.

空气是许多不同气体的混合物,其中含量最大的是氮,其次是氧。

The twenty passengers were killed in the accident, ten of whom were students. 在那次事故中有二十名乘客遇难,其中有十个是学生。

### 第六节 关系代词和关系副词的选择

同样的先行词,由于在从句中担任的作用不同,需选用不同的关系词。在选择关系词中,应注意下列几个问题:

- 要看代替先行词的关系词在从句中担任什么成分。
- 要看先行词表示的是人、物、时间、地点还是原因。
- 要看所引导的是限制性定语从句还是非限制性定语从句。

例 This is a place which I've long wanted to visit.

这是我长期以来想去的地方。[ which 在从句中作宾语 ]

I know of a place where we can swim.

我知道一个可以游泳的地方。[ where 在从句中作状语 ]



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

I can't accept the reason which he gave.

我不能接受他所给的理由。[ which 在从句中作宾语 ]

The reason \_\_\_\_\_ I'm writing is to tell you a party on Saturday evening.

A. because      B. why      C. which      D. as

答案为 B。why 在从句中作状语。

译文 我写信是要告诉你星期六晚上有个晚会。



## Exercise 13

### I. 选择题

1. He's the man \_\_\_\_\_ I supposed was capable of doing such a thing.  
A. who                      B. to whom              C. it                      D. which
2. The state \_\_\_\_\_ oil or water is commonly in is a liquid state.  
A. that                      B. which                      C. in which              D. what
3. She was very patient towards the children , \_\_\_\_\_ her husband seldom was.  
A. that                      B. who                      C. which                      D. so that
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is mentioned above , a lot of work has been done to create man-made materials.  
A. That                      B. Whether                      C. As                      D. if
5. I know someone else \_\_\_\_\_ father works in Beijing.  
A. that                      B. which                      C. who                      D. whose
6. All \_\_\_\_\_ can be done by the doctor is to prolong the patient's life.  
A. that                      B. which                      C. who                      D. whom
7. The hours \_\_\_\_\_ the children spend in their one-way relationship with television people , undoubtedly affect their relationships with real-life people.  
A. in which                      B. on which                      C. when                      D. that
8. The day will surely come \_\_\_\_\_ all the people in the world enjoy freedom and live in happiness.  
A. when                      B. how                      C. then                      D. why
9. In the nuclear power station we use \_\_\_\_\_ generator \_\_\_\_\_ is used in the common steam power station.  
A. the same ... as    B. such ... as    C. so ... as    D. as ... as
10. All this leads to a population in the twenty-first century that is smaller \_\_\_\_\_ years ago.  
A. than was                      B. that was                      C. than that                      D. it was
11. No current can flow when , \_\_\_\_\_ is sometimes the case , the fuse is blown.  
A. as                      B. as if                      C. that                      D. just as
12. An element is a substance all of \_\_\_\_\_ atoms have the same atomic number.  
A. that                      B. whose                      C. what                      D. which
13. Listening is not \_\_\_\_\_ a simple thing as it appears to be.



- A. so                      B. too                      C. as                      D. such
14. He never stopped trying to do a thing \_\_\_\_\_ to do.  
A. which he decide                      B. that he had decided  
C. he decides                      D. he would decide
15. When Alma was nine years old he read a school book about science ,  
containing some experiments \_\_\_\_\_ at home.  
A. which can be done                      B. that could do  
C. that could be done                      D. which could do
16. Thus , if you have a taste for exciting adventures you may want to join the  
group of men \_\_\_\_\_ is to explore the mysteries of the deep sea.  
A. their work      B. who work      C. who      D. whose work
17. Can you name a few more electrical appliances \_\_\_\_\_ electricity is used to  
produce heat ?  
A. where                      B. which                      C. when                      D. as
18. The explosion of a hydrogen bomb is the result of uncontrolled nu-clear  
fusion. It is the most terrible weapon of war \_\_\_\_\_ man has invented.  
A. which                      B. that                      C. as                      D. since
19. Edison had one suit \_\_\_\_\_ very little money , and which he wore until it was  
thin.  
A. which cost                      B. which costs  
C. which was coat                      D. which had cost
20. Matter is anything \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. that take up space and have weight  
B. which take up space and have weight  
C. that takes up space and has weight  
D. those take up space and have weight
21. We went to the industrial exhibition , \_\_\_\_\_ we saw two man-made  
satellites.  
A. where                      B. there  
C. when                      D. in that place
22. I hope that the little \_\_\_\_\_ I've been able to do has been of some use.  
A. which                      B. what                      C. whose                      D. that
23. The pilot lost contact with the military base , \_\_\_\_\_ the plane crashed in the  
desert.



· 第十三章 定语从句 ·

- A. by means of which                      B. for which  
C. because of that                      D. as a result of which
24. \_\_\_\_\_, television has played an important role in modern life.  
A. As long as it is known                      B. What is known to all  
C. Since it is known                      D. As is known to all
25. Beer is the most popular drink among male drinkers, \_\_\_\_\_ overall consumption is significantly higher than that of women.  
A. that                      B. what                      C. which                      D. whose
26. Such electronic devices \_\_\_\_\_ we use in a radio set are also found in a TV set.  
A. that                      B. as                      C. which                      D. such as
27. The day is not far off \_\_\_\_\_ people can travel under the sea.  
A. for                      B. that                      C. when                      D. which
28. The people of Pakistan, \_\_\_\_\_ land is quite mountainous, are nevertheless primarily farmers.  
A. which                      B. whose                      C. that                      D. because
29. The process \_\_\_\_\_ energy is changed from one form into another is called the transformation of energy.  
A. by which                      B. at which                      C. on which                      D. for which
30. He studied hard and later became a well-known writer, \_\_\_\_\_ his father had expected.  
A. that was what                      B. it is what  
C. which was what                      D. and which was
31. Government reports, examination compositions, legal documents and most business letters are the main situations \_\_\_\_\_ formal language is used.  
A. in which                      B. on which                      C. at what                      D. in that
32. Despite its wide range of styles and instrumentation, country music has certain common features \_\_\_\_\_ its own special character.  
A. give it that                      B. that give it  
C. give that                      D. that gives it to
33. Edward is the boy \_\_\_\_\_ I think scored the winning points for the basketball team.  
A. whom                      B. which                      C. that                      D. who
34. My neighbors on either side of me have painted their houses, \_\_\_\_\_ of



- course makes my house look shabbier than it really is.  
A. that                      B. as                      C. who                      D. which
35. The train was crowded and I had to get into a carriage \_\_\_\_\_ there were already seven other people.  
A. when                      B. where                      C. which                      D. that
36. Jean worked just so much \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. as what she was told to                      B. what she tried to do  
C. as she was told to                      D. that she was told to
37. The stock \_\_\_\_\_ in value should be sold.  
A. which has not increased                      B. has not increased  
C. not been increased                      D. who has not increased
38. The machine is such \_\_\_\_\_ I have never seen before.  
A. what                      B. as                      C. when                      D. where
39. To avoid the various foolish opinions \_\_\_\_\_ mankind is prone to, no superhuman genius is required.  
A. with which                      B. of which                      C. to which                      D. from which
40. Collecting shells was a hobby \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. which he found real pleasing to him  
B. pursuing which he got much pleasure  
C. that gave him a lot of pleasure doing  
D. that gave him a great deal of pleasure
41. The time will come \_\_\_\_\_ man can fly \_\_\_\_\_ he likes in the universe.  
A. how, where                      B. when, wherever  
C. where, where                      D. what, which
42. I understand that the governor is considering a new proposal \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. what would eliminate unnecessary writing in government  
B. who wants to cut down on the amount of writing in government  
C. that would eliminate unnecessary paperwork in government  
D. to cause that the amount of papers written in government offices will be reduced
43. Peter found a place in the cellar \_\_\_\_\_ he used as his first laboratory.  
A. which                      B. where                      C. such                      D. the same
44. I sent invitations to sixty people, \_\_\_\_\_ have replied.  
A. of whom only twenty of these                      B. of whom only twenty



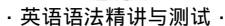


· 第十三章 定语从句 ·

- C. only twenty of these whom      D. only twenty who
45. He tried to get out of the business , \_\_\_\_\_ he found impossible.  
A. as                      B. which                      C. where                      D. when
46. The microscope is a very useful instrument \_\_\_\_\_ scientists can see things that are too small to be seen with the naked eye.  
A. in which                                      B. through which  
C. with which                                      D. from which
47. The back garden of our house contains a lawn , \_\_\_\_\_ very pleasant to sit on in summer.  
A. which is                      B. which it is                      C. it is                      D. where it is
48. The science of medicine , \_\_\_\_\_ progress has been very rapid lately , is perhaps the most important of all the sciences.  
A. to which                      B. in which                      C. which                      D. with which
49. Xenon has a number of applications , \_\_\_\_\_ may be mentioned its use in flash lamps for high speed photography.  
A. among which                                      B. which  
C. and which                                      D. each of which
50. A freely falling body has an acceleration of 32 feet a second during each second \_\_\_\_\_ it falls.  
A. that                      B. as                      C. what                      D. which

II . 改错题

1. Latin , from that the Roman Languages are deprived , is rarely taught in American schools today.  
A                                      B                                      C                                      D
2. Penicillin is perhaps the drug what has saved more lives than any other in the history of medicine.  
A                      B                                      C                                      D
3. In the early morning , the first thing which both my brother and I did was to go out to see the pony.  
A                                      B                                      C                                      D
4. Children who like to read usually read more in the summer , and those only read for school assignments can be persuaded to read for fun in the summer because  
A                                      B                                      C                                      D



- 324



· 第十三章 定语从句 ·

- in both war and peace.  
D
16. Recently gasoline manufacturers have begun to develop additives will reduce  
A B  
the harmful emissions from automobiles engines.  
C B
17. When I attend the wedding ceremonies of my friends , all of them are well  
A  
educated and have , I think , exceptionally good taste , I have been disappointed.  
B C D
18. They tried to think of a plan that they could fulfill their task ahead of time.  
A B C D
19. He has reached a point which a change is needed.  
A B C D
20. He is always polite not only to his supervisors and colleagues but to anyone  
A B  
else whom he thinks deserves consideration.  
C D
21. The sun warms the earth , this makes it possible for plants to grow.  
A B C D
22. There is no work whatever what he can criticize.  
A B C D
23. The period during when people learned to smelt iron is called the Iron Age.  
A B C D
24. Private radio stations in the United States are supported by the money  
A B  
received from advertisers whose buy time to broadcast sales messages.  
C D
25. Third world countries export their mineral deposits and tropical agriculture  
A B C  
products , as bring them desired foreign exchange.  
D



# 第十四章 状语从句

状语从句就是充当句子状语的从句，它可分为时间、地点、方式、比较、原因、结果、目的、条件和让步等从句。

## 第一节 时间状语从句

### 一、when, while 和 as 引导的状语从句

这三个词在引导时间状语从句时，既有共性，也有不同。

►► 1. 都可以与具有持续性动作的动词连用，表示一段时间。

⑧ 例 He entered the room when ( while , as ) the meeting was going on.



正当开会的时候,他走进了房间。

As ( While ) I was walking down the street , an American asked me for directions to the nearest station.

当我走在街道上时,有个美国人问我到最近的车站怎么走。

- 2. when 通常指一时的动作或状态,可表示从句动作与主句动作同时发生,或先于主句动作;while 常用来引导两个同时进行的持续时间较长的动作;as 常用来引导两个动作紧接着发生,强调“同一时间”或“一先一后”。

例 When I meet the right man , I will get married.

当我遇见合适的人时,我会结婚的。

While the teacher explained the text , the students listened attentively and took notes. 老师讲解课文时,学生们专心听讲做笔记。

He sang songs as he was taking a bath.

他一边洗澡一边唱歌。

As spring warms the earth , all flowers begin to bloom.

随着春回大地,百花开始绽放。

注 when 和 while 有时可起并列连词的作用。

(1) when 作并列连词用时意为“突然”、“正在这时”,通常位于句末,不能位于句首。从句的谓语动词常用一般过去时,主句通常用过去进行时、过去完成时或 be about to 结构等。

例 She was about to leave when Mark arrived so she stayed a little longer.

她正要离开时马克到了,所以她又多呆了一会。

He was walking under the trees when an apple fell down.

他在树下散步,突然一个苹果掉了下来。

(2) while 意为“……而……”,“……但是……”连接两个意义上相互对比的成分。例如:

He knew how to answer the question , while I couldn't answer it.

他知道怎样回答那个问题,而我却不能。

Jane was dressed in brown while Mary was dressed in blue.

珍妮穿褐色衣服,玛丽却是穿蓝色衣服。



## 二、一些形式上为副词的连接词引导的时间状语从句

有些表示时间的副词如 *once* , *directly* , *immediately* 等也可作连接词用来引导时间状语从句,意为“一……就……”。

例 Directly I received your letter , I came back at once.

我一收到你的信,我就马上回来了。

Immediately he came home , I told him about it.

他一回到家,我就告诉他那件事。

Instantly the button is pressed , the mine explodes.

一按电钮,地雷就爆炸。

## 三、某些表示时间的名词短语引导的时间状语从句

某些表示时间的名词词组如 *the moment* , *the minute* , *the instant* , *the day* , *the year* , *any time* , *last( first )time* , *next time* , *each time* , *every time* 等也可用来引导时间状语从句。

例 Every time I met him , I found him to be taller.

每次我见到他我都觉得他长高了。

You can call me any time you want to.

你可以随时给我打电话。

The last time I went to the United States , I visited many cities.

我上次到美国时曾游览过许多城市。

The instant the result came out , she told us.

结果一出来,她就告诉了我们。

The moment he saw me , he turned pale.

他一看到我就脸色苍白。

## 四、连接词 *as soon as* , *since* , *no sooner than* ... 等引导的时间状语从句

►► 1. 连接词 *as soon as* , *hardly/ scarcely / barely* ... *when* / *before* ... , *no sooner* ... *than* ... 等引导的时间状语从句,意为“刚(一)……就……”。

例 As soon as their mother came in , the children cried out with pleasure.



母亲一进来, 孩子们就高兴地叫起来。

Jack had scarcely / hardly seen me when / before he left the room.

杰克一看到我就离开了房间。

The spy had no sooner returned home than he was told to go to another country. 那个间谍一踏进国门就奉命要去他国。

注: 在 no sooner... than, hardly/scarcely/barely... when/before...

引导的时间状语从句中, 若把 no sooner, hardly, scarcely, barely 放在句首, 则要用倒装结构。例句:

No sooner had he heard the news than he fainted.

他一听到那个消息, 就晕了过去。

Scarcely had he entered the room when the telephone rang.

他刚一走进房间, 电话就响了。

- 2. 在 since 引导的时间状语从句中, 从句通常用过去式, 主句则要用完成式。

例 She has never called on me since she moved to the country.

自从她搬到乡下之后就没来看过我。

注: 当 since 作副词或介词用时, 谓语动词也通常用现在完成式。

例如:

His first book was a great success and he has been famous as a writer ever since.

他的第一本书非常畅销, 从那以后他就成了一位名作家。

I have been in the business since 1988.

1988 年以来, 我一直在从事这项工作。

## 五、till 与 until

- 1. 这两个词的意思完全一样。till 在口语中用得较多, until 多在正式文体中使用, 但在句首只能用 until。在肯定句中谓语为延续性动词时表示“直到……为止”, 在否定句中谓语为终止性动词时表示“直到……才”, 在否定句中相当于 before。



例 I'll wait until/till he comes back. 我将一直等到他回来。

Until you told me I had no idea of what she said.

直到你告诉我我才知道她说的是什么意思。

▶▶ 2. 如果 not until 位于句首时,需用倒装结构。

例 Not until after the war did they meet again.

直到战后他们才又相见。

Not until he told me did I know it.

直到他告诉我我才知道这件事。

▶▶ 3. It is not until ... that ... 结构表示强调。

例 It wasn't until they had a discussion that they made up their mind.

他们直到讨论过后才下定决心。

It was not until she had arrived home \_\_\_\_\_ remembered her appointment with the doctor.

A. when                      B. that she                      C. and she                      D. she

答案为 B。that 在句中引导强调句型。

译文:直到她到了家才想起与医生有个约会。

## 六、状语从句中省略动词 be 的情况

在 when, whenever, while, till, until, once 引导的时间状语从句中,如果从句的谓语动词为 be 动词形式,这时从句中主语和谓语动词 be 有时可省略。

例 I didn't notice it till( it was )too late.

等我注意到这事时已经太晚了。

When( I was )a boy, I looked at such things differently.

小时候我对这些事情的看法不同。

We will do our best to help them whenever( it is )possible.

无论什么时候,只要有可能,我们都会尽最大努力帮助他们。

## 七、时间状语从句中一般现在时表示将来时

在使用时间状语从句时,若主句为一般将来时,从句谓语动词需用一般现在时代替一般将来时。

例 They'll go home after they finish their work.





完成工作后,他们将回家。

I'll let you know as soon as he arrives. 他一到我就告诉你。

## 第二节 地点状语从句

地点状语从句一般由 where, wherever, everywhere 和 anywhere 引导。

例 You should put the book where it was.

你应该把书放在原来的地方。

Wherever he went, he was warmly welcome.

无论他走到哪里,他都受到热烈的欢迎。

Everywhere they went, they were kindly received.

他们所到之处,都受到热情款待。

I will meet you anywhere you like.

我愿意在你所喜欢的任何地方见你。

## 第三节 原因状语从句

### 一、because, since 和 as 引导的原因状语从句

- 1. 这三个词都可引导原因状语从句,其中 because 语气最强,多表示所叙述的理由是本句的重点,故 because 所引导的从句多放在句末,在回答由 why 引出的问句时,只能用 because; 在语气上 since 次之,as 最弱。since 和 as 表示的原因,多是既成事实,原因以外才是叙述的重点,因而两者多用于句首。

例 “Why were you late?” Because the traffic was too heavy. ”

“你为何迟到了?” “因为交通太拥挤了。”

As it is raining, let's stay at home.

因为下雨,我们就留在家里吧。

Since you have no license, you are not allowed to drive.



因为你没有驾驶执照 ,所以你可以不开车。

- ▶▶ 2. 在强调句式 中 ,若强调原因状语从句 ,只能用 because 引导的从句。

例 It was because he was careless that he failed.

他是由于粗心而失败的。

It was because he was ill that he didn't go with us.

正是因为他病了 ,他才没和我们一起去。

- ▶▶ 3. 在 because 引导的从句中 ,如果主句为否定句 ,而主句和后面的从句之间又没有逗号分开 ,这时 not 修饰的是后面的整个从句。

例 The machine did not stop because the fuel was used up.

机器停了下来 ,并不是因为燃料用光了。

You should not despise a man because he is poor.

你不应该因一个人穷而轻视他。

如果主句和从句之间用逗号分开 ,那么意思就不同了。

例 I was not kind to him , because he was rude.

我对他不友好 ,因为他无礼。

## 二、for 和 because 的区别

because 总是表示因果关系 ,而且语气最强 ;而 for 引导的是并列分句 ,它只是对前面的分句加以解释 ,说明推断的理由 ,并且只能后置。

例 We did not go out because it was raining.

因为下雨 ,我们没有出去。

It must have rained last night , for the ground is wet this morning.

昨夜一定下雨了 ,今天早上地都是湿的。[ 该句不能用 because ,因为现在地面湿不是导致昨夜下雨的原因 ]

It is morning , for the birds are singing. 天亮了 ,鸟儿在鸣叫。

[ 鸟鸣不能引起天亮 ,所以本句不能用 because 代替 for ]

## 三、复合连词引导的原因状语从句

复合连词 in that , now that , seeing that , considering that , not that . .



but that inasmuch as 等可用来引导原因状语从句。

例 A gas differs from liquid in that it has no definite shape.

气体不同于固体就在于它没有一定的形状。

Now ( that ) you are ready , we'll start working at once.

既然你们准备好了 ,我们马上开始工作。

They did the job quite well , considering that they had no experience.

考虑到他们没有什么经验 ,他们干得还是不错的。

I haven't finished writing the report yet , not that I'm lazy , but that I have no time.

我还没有写完报告 ,不是因为我懒 ,而是我没有时间。

Seeing ( that ) he is ill , he is unlikely to come.

他生病了 ,不大可能来了。

#### 四、介词词组引导的原因状语从句

有些介词词组如 by reason ,for fear ,for the reason ,on the ground 等可直接跟 that ,用来引导表示原因的状态从句。

例 I eat potatoes for the simple reason that I like them.

我吃土豆仅仅是因为我喜欢土豆。

I daren't tell you what he did ,for fear that he should be angry with me. 我不敢将他做的事告诉你 ,因为怕他对我发脾气。

He was not severely punished for his crime on the ground that he was young. 他没有受到严厉的惩罚是因为他年纪太小。

### 第四节 结果状语从句

#### 一、so ... that , such that , such ... that 引导的结果状语从句

在由 so ... that 和 such a( n ) ... that 引导的结果状语从句中 ,要注意 so 和 such 之后跟的词。其常见情况为 so + adj. / adv. + that ; such a( n ) + n. + that ... ,such + n. + that ... ,such + 复数可数名词



+ that... 等结构。

例 He ran so fast that I couldn't catch up with him.

他跑得如此之快,以致我都跟不上他。

It was such a bad accident that decades of people were killed.

这次事故非常严重,有几十个人丧生。

He painted such beautiful pictures that the visitors were lost in admiration. 他的画非常美,参观的人赞叹不已。

The shock was such that she was almost driven mad.

因为打击太大,她差点发疯。

He gave me such good advice that I finished the task easily.

他给我的建议非常好,使得我很容易地完成了任务。

注:so 或 such 位于句首时,主句需用倒装语序。例如:

So fierce was their dog that no one dared come near.

他们的狗真凶恶,没有人敢走近它。

Such was his behavior that everyone disliked him.

他的行为那么坏,使得大家都不喜欢他。

Such a good grammar book is this that you ought to have it.

这是一本很好的语法书,你应该买。

## 二、so, that 和 so that 等引导的结果状语从句

例 He made a wrong decision so that half of his lifetime was wasted.

他做了错误的决定,结果毁掉了半生。

He didn't obey the contract, so he was fined.

他没有遵守条约,因此被罚了款。

What has happened that all of them look so excited?

发生了什么事情使他们显得那样激动呢?

## 三、to such a degree that, to such an extent that, with the result that 等引导的结果状语从句

例 The temperature rose to such an extent that the firemen had to leave



the house.

温度如此之高,以至于消防队员不得不离开那个着火的房子。

I was in the bath, with the result that I didn't hear the telephone.

我正在洗澡,结果没有听到电话铃响。

## 第五节 目的状语从句

### 一、so that in order that 等引导的目的状语从句

so that in order that 常与 may, can, should, might 等情态动词连用,引导目的状语从句。由 in order that 引导的从句一般用于正式文体,可在主句之前,也可在主句之后;而由 so that 引导的从句通常放在主句之后,有时也可放在主句之前。

① We left early so that we could catch the first train.

我们很早出发,以便能赶上第一班火车。

In order that he shouldn't wake up his wife, he came in quietly.

他轻轻地进了屋,为了不吵醒他妻子。

We must improve the farming method in order that we may get high yields. 我们必须改进耕作方式,以便可以获得高产。

### 二、lest for fear that in case 引导的目的状语从句

lest, for fear that, in case 引导的目的状语从句通常要用虚拟语气结构,其形式为 should + 动词原形,意为“以防”;“以免”等。lest, for fear that 句中的 should 通常可以被省略;in case 引导的目的状语从句可用虚拟语气,也可用陈述语气(请参阅虚拟语气章节)。

① I hid the book for fear that/in case/lest she should see it.

我把书收藏了起来,以防被她看见。

Take a taxi in case you are late for the meeting.

坐出租车去,免得开会迟到。

He doesn't dare to leave the house for fear that he (should) be recognized. 他不敢离开房间,以免被人认出来。



He ran away lest he ( should ) be caught. 他怕被抓 ,因而逃走了。

### 三、so that 引导结果状语从句和引导目的状语从句的区别

so that 引导的目的状语从句 ,可放在主句之前或之后 ,并常与 may ,can ,will ,could ,might ,should 等情态动词连用 ;so that 引导的结果状语从句只能放在主句之后 ,并常有逗号和主句分开。

⑧ She was exhausted , so that she couldn't eat dinner.

她疲惫得吃不下晚餐。[ 结果状语从句 ]

He spoke loudly so that everyone could hear him.

他大声地讲话 ,以便每个人都能听见。[ 目的状语从句 ]

So that he can buy the books he wants , he has gone to the city.

为了能买到他所需要的书 ,他去了城里。[ 目的状语从句 ]

## 第六节 条件状语从句

条件状语从句可分为真实条件句和 if 引导的非真实条件句。此处只讲真实条件句 ,非真实条件句可查阅本书虚拟语气部分。

### 一、if ,unless 引导的条件状语从句

unless 在意义上相当于 if...not。unless 一般不用于非真实条件句中。

⑧ If you have a good eating habit , you can stay healthy.

如若你有良好的饮食习惯 ,你就能保持健康。

I will not lend the book to you unless you can return it in time.

我不会把书借给你的 ,除非你能及时归还。

unless 表示除外的唯一条件 ,通常不能用 and 连接两个 unless 从句 ,而 if...not 却不受此限。

⑧ She won't lose weight if she does not keep a diet and if she does not take exercise every day.

不能说 :



She won't lose weight unless she keeps a diet and unless she takes exercise every day.

## 二、only if 和 if only 引导的条件状语从句

only if 意为“只要……”引导陈述语气的真实条件句,放在句首要用倒装结构; if only 引导虚拟条件句,也可引导感叹句,意为“但愿……,要是……就好了”。

例 Only if you study hard will you pass the final-examination.

只要你努力学习,就会通过期末考试。

If only we had arrived at the station in time, we could have met him.

要是我们按时到达车站,我们也许就能见到他了。

If only it would stop raining! 但愿雨能停下来!

If only I had not been late for work! 要是我上班没迟到就好了!

## 三、其他常用来引导条件状语从句的连词

as (so) long as (只要), on condition that (条件是……), suppose / supposing (假如), provided / providing that (假如), granted / granting (that) (假定), given (that) (假设) 等也常用来引导条件状语从句。

例 I'll lend it to you as long as you handle it with care.

只要你小心使用,我会借给你的。

So long as you need me, I'll stay. 只要你需要我,我就留下来。

I'll buy it on condition that the goods are of good quality.

只要商品的质量好,我就买。

Provided they think they are getting a bargain they will buy clothes they will never wear, furniture they have no space for.

只要他们觉得他们捡了便宜货,就会买来永远不会穿的衣服和没地方放的家具。

Given (that) he won't agree, what shall we do?

假定他不同意,我们怎么办?

He will come if (he is) asked. 如果请他,他会来的。

Suppose (that) you had one million dollars, what would you do?

假如你有一百万美金,你会怎么办? [可用于虚拟语气]



Supposing ( that ) this is not the right way to the station , what shall we do ? 假如这不是去车站的路 我们该怎么办 ? [ 不用于虚拟语气 ]

#### 四、条件状语从句中用一般现在时代替将来时

在使用条件状语从句时 , 若主句为一般将来时 , 从句谓语需用一般现在时代替一般将来时。

例 If I have enough money next year , I will go to England.

如果明年我有足够的钱 我打算去英国。

If you are free tomorrow , I will go to see you.

如果你明天有空我就去看你。

但是 , 如果从句表示的是主语的意志、志愿或以 you 作主语表示请求时 , 则用 will , would。

例 I d be very glad if you would come. 如果你肯来我会非常高兴。

If you will go , I ll go with you. 如果你愿意去 我也去。

## 第七节 让步状语从句

### 一、though , although 引导的让步状语从句

though 与 although 同义 , 一般情况下可以互换使用 , 但 although 比 though 语气要重 , 且多用于句首。though 引导的让步状语从句也可以用倒装结构。

例 Although she may have told you , I still think she is not to be trusted.

尽管她也许已经告诉你了 , 但我还是觉得她不可信。

Strange though it may seem ( Though it may seem strange ) , he remained single all his life. 他终生未娶 , 此事似乎令人觉得奇怪。

I won t hire him though he is quite a capable man.

他纵然是个能干的人 , 我也不想雇用他。

[ 此句中 though 相当于 even if ]





## 二、even if 和 even though 引导的让步状语从句

even if 和 even though 用来引导让步状语从句,意为“即使”。

例 I was persuaded to do the job , even if/even though I didn't want to.

我被说服去做那件工作,即使我并不想做。

Even though I fail , I'll keep on trying.

纵然失败,我仍会继续尝试下去。

## 三、as 和 though 引导的让步状语从句的比较

- 1. as 和 though 引导的让步状语从句通常用倒装结构,as 必须用倒装结构,though 可用也可不用倒装。这种倒装通常是把从句中的表语、状语或谓语动词放在句首。

例 Bad as / though he is ( = Though he is bad ) , he is not without merits. 尽管他坏,但不是没有优点。

Much as I admired his courage ( = Though I admired his courage very much ) , I don't think he acted wisely.

尽管我欣赏他的勇气,但我认为他的行为并不明智。

Search as they would , they could find nobody in the house.

尽管他们要搜查这房子,但他们不会在房里找到任何人的。

- 2. 作表语的名词前如有不定冠词 a ( an ) ,在倒装结构中,该冠词省略。

例 Teacher as/though Mary is ( Though Mary is a teacher ) , she is not capable of teaching all subjects.

尽管玛丽是老师,但她不是所有的科目都能教。

Fool though/ as he is ( Though he is a fool ) , he will not accept Tom's proposal. 虽然他很傻,但他也不会接受汤姆的建议。

## 四、while 引导的让步状语从句

while 在引导让步状语从句时,意义上相当于 although,只能放在句首。

例 While ( Although ) he has some shortcomings , he also has some good points. 虽然他有一些缺点,但也有一些优点。



While I understand your viewpoint ,I don't agree with you.

虽然我理解你的观点 ,但我还是不同意。

## 五、“whether...or...”“wh-词+ever”“no matter + wh-词”等结构引导的让步状语从句

由“whether...or...”“wh-词+ever”和“no matter + wh-词”结构引导的让步状语从句,意为“无论……”。whatever 后接名词,however 后接形容词或副词。

① Whatever ( No matter what ) may happen , we will not change our plan. 无论发生什么事 ,我们决不改变计划。

However often you ring , no one will answer.

无论你打多少次电话 ,都不会有人接。

All matter ,whether it is a gas , a liquid or a solid , expands as the temperature rises.

不管是气体、液体或固体 ,所有的物体遇热都会膨胀。

We'll never give in whatever they may do or say.

不管他们做什么或说什么 ,我们决不屈服。

## 六、be 引导的让步状语从句

be 也可引导让步状语从句 ,但要 will be 提到主语之前 ,用倒装结构。

① All magnets behave the same , be they large or small.

所有磁体 ,无论大小 ,性质都一样。

Be he friend or enemy ( = Whether he may be a friend or an enemy = Whether he is a friend or an enemy ) , the law regards him as a criminal. 不管他是朋友还是敌人 ,法院认定他是罪犯。

Be it rainy or shiny , I must go. 不管天晴还是下雨 ,我必须去。

## 七、granted that for all that 等引导的让步状语从句

granted that for all that in spite of the fact that regardless of the fact that 等结构也可以引导让步状语从句。

① Granted that he has enough money to buy the house , it doesn't mean he is going to do so.



即使他有足够的钱买这栋房子,也不能说明他要买。

They are good people, for all that their ways are not the same as ours.

他们是好人,尽管他们的生活习惯和我们不同。

In spite of the fact that she had a bad cold, she still worked.

尽管她得了重感冒,但她仍然上班。

He bought her what she wanted, regardless of the fact that they were costly. 尽管东西很贵,但她要什么他就给她买什么。

## 第八节 方式状语从句

### 一、as, just as ( ... so ) 引导的方式状语从句

as, just as ( ... so ) 可引导方式状语从句,意为“就像,像……一样”。

⑧ 例 You should do ( just ) as I tell you. 你要照我所说的去做。

Just as there is life, so there must be death. 有生必有死。

### 二、as if 和 as though 引导的方式状语从句

as if 和 as though 两者意义相同,引导方式状语从句时,意为“似乎……”;“好像……”从句谓语动词常用虚拟语气(参看虚拟语气章节)。

⑧ 例 He paused as if he were expecting her to speak.

他停顿了一下,好像是等待她说话似的。

He speaks English as if/as though he were an Englishman.

他说起英语来好像他是英国人一样。

注:as if 和 as though 也可以引导表语从句,从句可以是陈述语气,表达某事是事实或实现的可能性较大。例如:

It looks as if/as though it is going to rain.

看上去要下雨了。

I feel as if/as though I have a fever.

我觉得好像发烧了。



### 三、the way 引导的方式状语从句

在非正式文体中,也可用 the way( that )引导方式状语从句。

例 Do it the way( that ) you were told.

要照告诉你的去做。

The way you are studying now , you won't make much progress.

像你这样学习,你是不会有多大进步的。

## 第九节 比较状语从句

### 一、as... as 和 than 引导的比较状语从句

►► 1. “as... as”引导的是同级比较,意义相当于“和.....一样.....”。than 引导的是不同级比较,意为“比.....更.....”(可参见形容词或副词的比较级章节)。

例 The room is bigger than that one. 这个房间比那个房间大。

I work less hard than Tom( does ). 我工作不如汤姆努力。

This building is as high as that one. 这幢大楼和那幢一样高。

►► 2. “在as... as”结构中,第一个as是副词,后接形容词或副词;第二个as是连词,后接句子。另外,此结构的否定形式通常用“not so/as... as”。

例 He didn't study as / so hard as his sister.

他不如他姐姐学习用功。

### 二、the + 比较级... the + 比较级 越.....越.....结构

例 The harder he worked , the happier he grew.

他越努力工作越感到高兴。

The smaller the computer , the faster it can work.

计算机越小,工作越快。

The more he thought about it , the angrier he grew.

他对此越想越生气。



## 第十节 使用状语从句应注意的问题

### 一、状语从句的省略问题

在状语从句中,如果从句主语和主句的主语相同,而动词又是 be 的时候,主语与 be 动词往往省略。

例 When ( you are ) in trouble , visit this man.

若遇困难,就去找这个人。

He was happy , though ( he was ) poor.

虽然他很穷,却很幸福。

He watched TV while ( he was ) eating.

他边吃饭边看电视。

Unless ( he is ) in uniform , he doesn't look like a policeman.

除非他穿上制服,否则他看起来不像警察。

### 二、在使用英语状语从句时,要注意英汉两种语言在表达上的差异

在汉语中我们常用“虽然……但是……,因为……所以……”等关联词。但在英语中,只用相应的一个词来表示。

例 Though ( Although ) they are poor ( 不用 but ) they buy a great many books. 尽管他们很穷,但他们还是买很多书。

Because I was tired ,( 不用 so ) I went to bed early.

因为疲倦所以我提早睡了。



## Exercise 14

### I. 填空题

1. The fuel must have been finished , \_\_\_\_\_ the engine stopped.  
A. since            B. as            C. because        D. for
2. The engineers are going through with their highway project , \_\_\_\_\_ the expenses have risen.  
A. even though    B. just because    C. now that        D. as though
3. I think our boat can pass that treacherous water \_\_\_\_\_ cautiously handled.  
A. until            B. if            C. lest            D. with
4. \_\_\_\_\_ nobody was very enthusiastic about it , they decided to cancel the trip.  
A. See that        B. Seeing that    C. So            D. When
5. You can arrive in Beijing earlier for the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ you don't mind taking the night train.  
A. provided        B. unless        C. though        D. until
6. Just as the tree is the unit of a forest and the book the unit of a library , \_\_\_\_\_ the molecule is the unit of matter.  
A. as            B. like            C. so            D. thus
7. Doing your homework is a sure way to improve your test scores , and this is especially true \_\_\_\_\_ it comes to classroom tests.  
A. before        B. as            C. since        D. when
8. Anyone can borrow books from this library \_\_\_\_\_ he keeps them clean and returns them in time.  
A. even if        B. unless        C. so that        D. as long as
9. Mother shut the window \_\_\_\_\_ she might keep the insects out.  
A. because        B. in order that    C. till            D. as
10. \_\_\_\_\_ you understand this rule , you'll have no further difficulty.  
A. While        B. Once        C. Though        D. Unless
11. They agreed to rent the house \_\_\_\_\_ the roof should be repaired.  
A. on condition that    B. as soon as  
C. when            D. unless
12. \_\_\_\_\_ I admit that the problems are difficult , I don't agree that they cannot be solved.



· 第十四章 状语从句 ·

- A. While      B. Suppose      C. Because      D. As though
13. The old woman has loved Tom \_\_\_\_\_ he were her son.  
A. because      B. as      C. if      D. as though
14. Substances will expand or contract \_\_\_\_\_ heated or cooled , but this is not the case with water.  
A. when they will be      B. if they will be  
C. as they being      D. when
15. It will not be long \_\_\_\_\_ man can harness the solar energy and make it serve mankind.  
A. since      B. before      C. when      D. after
16. It was found that although the girl could perceive things with her fingers , this ability ceased \_\_\_\_\_ her hands were wet.  
A. the moment when      B. the moment  
C. in that moment      D. before
17. \_\_\_\_\_ human beings live in great numbers , the waters are very likely to become contaminated.  
A. That      B. Where      C. Even if      D. Though
18. \_\_\_\_\_ I saw her , I remembered to give Marie the money I owed her.  
A. While      B. Immediately      C. Suddenly      D. Momentarily
19. Human behavior is mostly a product of learning , \_\_\_\_\_ the behavior of animal depends mainly on instinct.  
A. whereas      B. so      C. unless      D. that
20. \_\_\_\_\_ you return those books to the library immediately , you will have to pay a fine.  
A. Until      B. Unless      C. If      D. Provided
21. The parents did not allow their son to swim in the sea \_\_\_\_\_ he might have accident some day.  
A. for fear that      B. in case      C. besides      D. and that
22. It is a gripping story and one can't put it down \_\_\_\_\_ one has finished reading it.  
A. after      B. when      C. unless      D. until
23. There was such a long line at the exhibition \_\_\_\_\_ we had to wait for about half an hour.  
A. as      B. that      C. so      D. hence



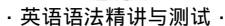
24. Young scientists cannot realize too soon that existing scientific know-ledge is not nearly so complete , certain and unalterable \_\_\_\_\_ many textbooks seem to imply.  
A. that            B. so            C. as            D. what
25. Helen listened carefully \_\_\_\_\_ she might discover exactly what John wanted.  
A. so as that    B. in case       C. providing    D. in order that
26. America will never again have as a nation the spirit of adventure \_\_\_\_\_ it did before the west was settled.  
A. so            B. as            C. when        D. for
27. Hydrogen is the fundamental element of the universe \_\_\_\_\_ it provides the building blocks from which the other elements are produced.  
A. so that       B. but that      C. in that       D. provided that
28. A man escaped from the prison last night. It was a long time \_\_\_\_\_ the guards discovered what had happened.  
A. before       B. until          C. since        D. when
29. \_\_\_\_\_ difficulties they may come across , they will help one another to get over them.  
A. However    B. Whatever    C. Whichever   D. Since
30. It would be difficult for a man of his social position , \_\_\_\_\_ , to rise up in the world in that society.  
A. charming and having capability  
B. even with charm and so capable  
C. however charming and capable  
D. though charming and capable is he
31. \_\_\_\_\_ this kind of disease can cause great harm to the cattle.  
A. It occurs to where it is    B. Occurring where  
C. Where does it occur       D. Where it occurs
32. He married \_\_\_\_\_ he loved her but because he was indebted to her.  
A. because not    B. not because   C. because       D. though
33. When a gun was pointing against your head , you should do \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. like you were told to       B. as to what told to  
C. like what you were told to   D. as you were told to
34. \_\_\_\_\_ the Europeans knew what a compass was , the Chinese had put it into





· 第十四章 状语从句 ·

- practical use.
- A. Before long B. Long since C. Long ago D. Long before
35. Rod is determined to get a seat for the concert \_\_\_\_\_ it means standing in a queue all night.
- A. as is B. provided C. even if D. whatever
36. \_\_\_\_\_ the weather was fine , I opened all the windows.
- A. As B. Because of C. For D. With
37. We hadn't met for 20 years , but I recognized her \_\_\_\_\_ I saw her.
- A. the moment B. the moment when  
C. for the moment D. at the moment when
38. The more civilized man has become , \_\_\_\_\_ he is limited by the disadvantage of his environment.
- A. and the more B. the less  
C. lest D. and the less
39. Someone must have left the tap on , \_\_\_\_\_ the water was running over and flooding the bathroom.
- A. for B. moreover C. nevertheless D. therefor
40. \_\_\_\_\_ he entered the university , his English has been much improved.
- A. Before B. After C. When D. Since
41. He has \_\_\_\_\_ that it is difficult for him to travel.
- A. such heavy a workload B. too heavy a workload  
C. so heavy a workload D. much heavy a workload
42. If that idea is wrong , the project is bound to fail , \_\_\_\_\_ good all the other ideas might be.
- A. whatever B. though C. whatsoever D. however
43. \_\_\_\_\_ it is you've found , you must give it back to the person it belongs to.
- A. That B. Because C. Whatever D. However
44. He gave up the hope of passing the examination \_\_\_\_\_ he had already failed it twice.
- A. unless B. if C. since D. until
45. I wrote these words down \_\_\_\_\_ I should forget.
- A. for B. so C. lest D. since
46. His diligence was \_\_\_\_\_ he made great progress.
- A. so that B. such that C. in order that D. so as that



- ## II. 改错题

- 348



· 第十四章 状语从句 ·

- but also dirties the air.  
D
8. While walking on a clear day , far from the city crowds , the mountains give  
A B C  
me a sense of peace and freedom.  
D
9. When a person goes to California a real effort should be made to see camels ,  
A B  
even the visit is a short one.  
C D
10. No matter what city one lives in , he will find conveniences and  
A B C  
inconveniences , just like everyone there does fine features and defects.  
D
11. Doctor Wang says that no matter how forceful arguments against smoking  
A B C  
there are many people persist in smoking.  
D
12. How hard he tries , he can't make out the difference in meaning between the  
A B C D  
two words.
13. If only the nature of the aging process is better understood , the possibility  
A B  
of discovering a medicine that can block the fundamental process of aging  
C  
seems very remote.  
D
14. Much although I have traveled , I have never seen anyone equal her in  
A B  
thoroughness , whatever the job.  
C D
15. In what literary form she wrote , she had but one theme , that is , liberty ,  
A B  
either national and political freedom or intellectual freedom.  
C D
16. The building is in so bad condition that the new owners will probably not want  
A B C  
to fix it up.  
D
17. When born in Chicago , the author is most famous for his stories about New  
A B C D



York city.

18. He looked like he had been in some strange land where age advanced at a double pace.  
A B C D
19. The cost of college education has risen as rapidly during the past several years that it is now beyond the reach of many people.  
A B C D
20. I'll lend this dictionary to you as far as you promise to take good care of it and return it to me on time.  
A B C D
21. Coming up a few more flights of stairs , and you will see the grand Hilton Hotel in the distance.  
A B C D
22. Even if in its ruined state we can see what a great work of art *The Last Supper* must have been , for the perfection of its design remains.  
A B C D
23. We had been in Athens for not more than two days until it became obvious that we needed a guide.  
A B C D



# 第十五章 倒 装

倒装可分为全部倒装和部分倒装两种形式。全部倒装是把谓语动词全部放在主语之前,部分倒装是把谓语动词的一部分放在主语之前。从英语句子结构来分析,有些倒装是由于语法规则的要求而必须进行的倒装,称为语法倒装;有些是出于修辞的需要而进行的倒装,称为修辞倒装。

## 第一节 语 法 倒 装

语法倒装是由于句子结构的需要而必须进行的倒装形式。



### 一、以 neither nor 或 so 开头的句子或分句的倒装形式

以 neither nor 或 so 开头的句子或分句,用来表示不同主语的相同的看法,要用倒装结构。neither 或 nor 用于否定句,so 用于肯定句。

例 They can buy the car so can we.

他们能买得起那辆车,我们也能。

He didn't see the film last night, neither did she.

他昨晚没去看电影,她也没去。

She would never sing, nor would she dance.

她既不唱歌也不跳舞。

注:有时 so 放在前面时,只是对对方所陈述的内容表示肯定,这时不用倒装。例如:

“He is a good student.” “So he is.”

他是个好学生,他的确是。

### 二、省去了 if 的虚拟条件状语从句的倒装形式

在虚拟条件状语从句中,如果从句中有 should, were 或助动词 had 时,可省去 if, 将这些词提到句首引起倒装。

例 Should we want to accelerate the motion, we should have to apply some force. 如果我们要使运动加速,就得施加某种力。

Had I known it earlier, I wouldn't have lent him the money.

要是早知道这件事,我就不会把钱借给他了。

Were I you, I should not let him off lightly.

我要是你,就不会轻易放过他。

### 三、由 as be 和 though 引导的让步状语从句的倒装形式

由“as”和“be”引导的让步状语从句需用倒装。though 引导的让步状语从句可用倒装,也可不用倒装。as 引导的让步状语从句必须用倒装。

例 Try as he did, he couldn't finish the task successfully.



不管怎么努力,他都不能顺利地完成任务。

Bravely though they fought( Though they fought bravely ), they had no chance of winning.

虽然他们打得很勇敢,但没有可能获胜。

Be it rain or sun , we still start off.

无论是下雨还是天晴,我们都得启程。

Everybody must obey the law , be he a common citizen or a high ranking official. 人人都必须守法,无论是普通公民还是高级官员。

#### 四、以 here ,there ,now ,then ,thus ,hence 等词开头的句子的倒装形式

当某些以 here ,there ,now ,then ,thus ,hence 等词开头的句子,其谓语动词又为 be ,stand ,lie ,come ,go ,fall 等的一般现在时或一般过去时时,句子为全部倒装。

例 There stands a table in the middle of the room.

房子中间放着一张书桌。

There goes the bell. 打铃了。

Here comes the bus. 公共汽车来了。

Then came the hour we had been looking forward to.

我们期盼的那个时刻终于来到了。

注:当主语为人称代词时,不用倒装,需用正常语序。例如:

There he comes. 他来了。

#### 五、“there be”结构中的全部倒装形式

在“there be”结构中,用全部倒装。

例 There is a pen , a rubber and two books on the desk.

书桌上有一支笔、一块橡皮和两本书。

There have been many such uprisings in our history.

我国历史上发生过许多这样的起义。



## 六、疑问句中的倒装形式

在疑问句中,常把谓语动词的一部分提前,引起部分倒装。

例 Is carbon dioxide a mixture of carbon and oxygen?

二氧化碳是碳和氧的混合物吗?

What does it mean to say that heat is a form of energy?

说热是能量的一种形式,这是什么意思?

## 第二节 修辞倒装

有时为了强调句子的某一部分而将其提前,这时句子的主谓就要用倒装结构。

### 一、only 引导的状语放在句首时的倒装形式

当 only 引导的状语放在句首时需用部分倒装。

例 Only in this way can we learn English well.

只有以这种方法我们才能学好英语。

Only when you have read the book, can you answer these questions.

只有当你读了这本书后,你才能回答这些问题。

注:当 only 引导的状语不放在句首时,则不用倒装。例如:

We can learn English well only in this way.

### 二、有否定意义的词或短语放在句首作状语时的倒装形式

当某些具有否定意义的词或短语放在句首作状语时,句子要用部分倒装。常见的这部分词有:hardly, little, never, not until, rarely, seldom 等;短语有:in no way, at no time, in no case, by no means, under no circumstances 等以及部分关联词:hardly (scarcely/barely) ... when ..., no soon ... than ... 等。





- 例 Never in all my life have I heard such nonsense !  
我一生从未听说过这样的废话！  
Not until many years later did the whole truth become known.  
直到多年以后，人们才知道全部真相。  
Seldom has a devoted teacher been so splendidly rewarded.  
一位忠诚的教师很少得到如此好的报答。  
Hardly had he arrived when she started complaining.  
他一到家，她就抱怨起来。

注：当这些表示否定意义的词不放在句首时，就不用倒装。

例如：

I have never seen such a beautiful house.  
我从来没看到过这么漂亮的房子。

### 三、由 not only... but also... ,neither... nor... 等连接的句子的倒装形式

由 not only... but also... , neither... nor... 等连接的句子，如果 not only , neither 放在句首，也要引起部分倒装。

- 例 Neither at this meeting nor at the previous did they discuss the proposal.  
在这次和上次会议上，他们都没讨论过这个提议。  
Not only did he teach school , but he wrote novels.  
他不但在学校里教书，而且还写小说。  
但是，当位于句首的 neither... nor... 或 not only... but also... 连接主语成分时，句子用正常语序。

- 例 Neither my sister nor I have traveled by air.  
我姐姐和我都没坐过飞机。  
Not only Tom but also many others enjoy reading the book.  
不仅汤姆喜欢读这本书，其他许多人也喜欢。

### 四、当从属连词 so... that 和 such... that 中的 so 和 such 位于句首时的倒装形式

当从属连词 so... that 和 such... that 中的 so 和 such 位于句首时，



句子用部分倒装。

例 Such was the earthquake that the city was destroyed.

地震很厉害 , 整个城市都被毁灭了。

So bright was the moon that the flowers are bright as by day.

皓月当空 , 花朵就像白天那样鲜艳。

当这一结构用在某些介词短语中时 , 也可用倒装。

例 To such an extent did the temperature rise that the firemen had to leave the burning house.

温度升得太高 , 消防队员不得不离开这所着火的房子。

## 五、连词 as 或 than 引导的状语从句中的倒装形式

在连词 as 或 than 引导的状语从句中 , 为了保持句子平衡 , 常用全部倒装 , 有时也可局部倒装。

例 He traveled a great deal as did most of his friends.

他到过很多地方旅行 , 他的多数朋友也是这样。

He was exhausted , as were all the others in the team.

与队里的其他人一样 , 他也筋疲力尽了。

The molecules of gases move more freely than do those of liquids and solids. 气体比液体和固体的分子活动得更自如。

## 六、“ the + 比较级 , the + 比较级 ” 结构中的倒装形式

在“ the + 比较级 , the + 比较级 ” 结构中 , 常用全部或部分倒装。

例 The more I thought , the more extraordinary did it appear.

这件事我越想越不寻常。

The more you know , the more will you realize how little you know.

知道的越多 , 越会体会到自己知道的多么有限。

The thicker the wire is , the smaller is the resistance.

导线越粗 , 电阻越小。

## 七、表示方位的副词 in , out , away , off , down , up 等位于句首时的倒装形式

某些表示方位的副词 in , out , away , off , down , up 等位于句首



时,常常使用倒装。这些词常和 go, come 等表示位置转移的动作动词的一般过去时连用,目的是为了生动地描写这些动作。

例 Up went the rocket into the air. “嗖”地一声火箭上了天。

Down jumped the thief from the house. 小偷从房上跳下来了。

注:在这种结构中,当主语为代词时,则不用倒装。例如:

Back they came. 他们回来了。

## 八、为了强调句中的状语时的倒装形式

有时为了强调句子的状语,或是为了出于对句子结构平衡的考虑,常把一些频率状语、方式状语或地点状语等提到句子前面,引起倒装。常用的词有: often, always, once, every day, many a time, now and again, every few weeks, well 等等。

例 Well do I remember the day when it happened.

我清楚地记得事情发生的那一天。

In the far distance was seen the glittering surface of a lake surrounded by pine woods. 远处可以看见一个波光粼粼的湖面,周围长满着松树。(介词短语提前主要是为了保持句子平衡,由于主语太长,把整个谓语提前。)

Many a time as a boy have I climbed that hill.

我在童年时期曾多次爬过那座山。

注:这些状语放在句首,如不十分强调,也可不用倒装。例如:

In Beijing I was born, and in Beijing I'll die.

我是在北京出生,我也将在北京死。

## 九、表示地点的介词短语在句中充当状语时的倒装形式

当表示地点的介词短语在句中充当状语,而谓语又为某些表示状态的动词,如 come, lie, stand, run, walk 等时,为了上下文联系紧密,常把介词短语放在句子前面,谓语动词置于主语之前,引起全部倒装。



例 Below the mountain ran a little stream. 山下有条小溪。

Round the corner walked a large policeman.

拐角处有个大个子警察在走着。

To the north of the city lies a small island.

城市的北边有一座小岛。

## 十、情态动词 may 放在句首的倒装形式

情态动词 may 可放在句首引起部分倒装,用来表示祝愿。

例 May you continue in your efforts and achieve new and greater successes. 愿你继续努力取得新的更大的成就。

May God be with you. 愿神与你同在。

## 第三节 倒装结构在其他句型中的用法

### 一、复合宾语的倒装

复合宾语的正常语序是“宾语 + 宾语补足语”,但有时因为宾语太长,为了平衡句子结构,便将宾语补足语提前,这种倒装被称为复合宾语倒装。

例 Many people consider impossible what really is possible.

许多人把本来可能做到的事认为不可能做到。

You had better start running the engine standing below the window.

你还是把窗户下的那台机器开动起来。

### 二、从句中的倒装

凡是引导从句的疑问词或关联词,不管它们在从句中作什么样的句子成分,都一律放在从句的开头,但从句中的谓语不用倒装语序。

例 The scholar spent what little money he had on books.

那位学者把他仅有的一点钱都花在书籍上了。

This is the boy of whom I spoke to you.

这就是我曾对你说过的孩子。[ whom 在从句中作宾语 ]



He could not decide which book he should take.

他拿不定主意拿哪本书。[ which 在从句中作宾语 ]

### 三、感叹句中的倒装

感叹句中主谓不倒装,只是将 what 或 how 在句中构成的宾语、表语和状语等成分提到前面。what 用来修饰名词,how 用来修饰形容词、副词或动词。

例 What beautiful flowers they are ! 这些花多漂亮 !

How well Tom writes ! 汤姆写得真好 !

What a beautiful girl I have seen !

How beautiful a girl I have seen !

我看到了一个多么漂亮的女孩 !



## Exercise 15

### I. 选择题

1. \_\_\_\_\_ from the tenth floor when the policeman pointed his pistol at him.  
A. Jumped down the burglar      B. Down the burglar jumped  
C. The burglar jumped down      D. Down jumped the burglar
2. No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ than he realized that he should have remained silent.  
A. had the words been spoken      B. the words had spoken  
C. the words had been spoken      D. had the words spoken
3. Only by reading extensively \_\_\_\_\_ your horizons.  
A. you will widen      B. can you widen  
C. you may widen      D. therefore you widen
4. So small \_\_\_\_\_ that the most powerful microscopes cannot detect them.  
A. are these particles      B. were these particles  
C. these particles are      D. these particles were
5. More remarkable than those planets \_\_\_\_\_, a few of which are of great brightness.  
A. comets are      B. is the comets  
C. the comets are      D. are the comets
6. I wonder how many years ago \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. did your father retire      B. your father retired  
C. has your father retired      D. your father has retired
7. \_\_\_\_\_ there can be no avoiding it.  
A. However the decision is difficult  
B. However difficult the decision is  
C. The decision however difficult  
D. However the difficult decision
8. "They couldn't have done that, you know." she gently remarked. "They were ill."  
" \_\_\_\_\_ ", said the man, "very ill."  
A. So they were      B. So were they  
C. So they had been      D. So had they been
9. Not until the game had begun \_\_\_\_\_ at the sports ground.



· 第十五章 倒装 ·

- A. should he have arrived                      B. had he arrived  
C. did he arrive                                  D. would he had arrived
10. \_\_\_\_\_ the woman's possessions that she could carry them in a single suitcase.  
A. Were so few                                  B. So few were  
C. Few were so                                  D. There were so far
11. Most people would agree that only in exceptional circumstances \_\_\_\_\_ the truth from the patient.  
A. a doctor should hide                      B. should a doctor hide  
C. a doctor would hide                      D. a doctor will hide
12. \_\_\_\_\_ a certain doubt among the students as to the necessity of the work.  
A. It existed    B. There existed    C. There had    D. Existed there
13. Only when you have acquired a good knowledge of grammar \_\_\_\_\_ write correctly.  
A. you will    B. you can                      C. can you                      D. can't you
14. I didn't hear \_\_\_\_\_ because there was too much noise where I was sitting.  
A. what said                                  B. what he said  
C. what did he say                              D. what was he saying
15. \_\_\_\_\_ when everyone has to think for himself.  
A. There comes a time                      B. Here comes a time  
C. There a time goes                              D. A time comes here
16. \_\_\_\_\_ but he also proved himself a good athlete.  
A. He showed himself not only a good student  
B. He showed not only himself a good student  
C. Not only he showed himself a good student  
D. Not only did he show himself a good student
17. \_\_\_\_\_ , he would have been able to pass the exam.  
A. If he studied more                              B. Had he studied more  
C. Studying more                                  D. If he were studying more
18. Einstein seldom wore strange clothes , nor \_\_\_\_\_ a cruel man.  
A. is he    B. he was  
C. he couldn't be                                  D. was he
19. \_\_\_\_\_ who had arrested him three times for drug-taking.  
A. Before George stood the policeman  
B. Before the policeman George stood



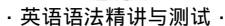
- C. Before the policeman George stood  
D. Before the policeman stood the George
20. Around the world \_\_\_\_\_ may be as a million earthquakes in a single year.  
A. yet            B. they            C. there            D. ever
21. "That house belongs to the Greens. "  
" \_\_\_\_\_ living in it now , is there ?"  
A. Aren't there any people            B. Isn't there anyone  
C. There's nobody            D. There're no people
22. California relies heavily on income from fruit crops , and \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Florida also            B. Florida too  
C. Florida is as well            D. So does Florida
23. I seldom watch television , \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. so does my daughter            B. my daughter is too  
C. my daughter doesn't too            D. nor does my daughter
24. He was told under no circumstances \_\_\_\_\_ the computer.  
A. he may use    B. he use may    C. may he use    D. may use
25. Nowhere in the world \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. travelers can buy so much beauty with so little money as in Hawaii  
B. no one can buy so much beauty for so little money as in Hawaii  
C. so much beauty can be bought for so little money in Hawaii  
D. can travelers buy so much beauty for so little money as in Hawaii
26. We have been told that under no circumstances \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone in the office for personal affairs.  
A. may we use    B. we may use    C. we could use    D. did we use
27. Only under special circumstances \_\_\_\_\_ to take make-up tests.  
A. are freshmen permitted            B. freshmen are permitted  
C. permitted are freshmen            D. are permitted freshmen
28. \_\_\_\_\_ absurd was his manner that everyone stared at him.  
A. Too            B. So            C. Such            D. Much
29. \_\_\_\_\_ , she would not conceal her eagerness for praise.  
A. In spite of her clever            B. As she was clever  
C. Though clever she was            D. Clever as she was
30. \_\_\_\_\_ visiting that city , but we have been too busy.  
A. We often have thought of            B. Often we have thought of





· 第十五章 倒装 ·

- C. Often have we thought of      D. Often we did think of
31. "I thought he was present at the meeting. " " \_\_\_\_\_. "
- A. So was he      B. So did he      C. So he was      D. So do I
32. \_\_\_\_\_ who had been in prison for seven years.
- A. In the robbery a man involved  
B. Involved a man in the robbery  
C. Was a man involved in the robbery  
D. Involved in the robbery was a man
33. \_\_\_\_\_ , I must do another experiment.
- A. Be it ever so late      B. It is ever so late  
C. It be ever so late      D. So late it be ever
34. She didn't want to buy it , \_\_\_\_\_ .
- A. however good was it      B. however good it was  
C. for how good might it be      D. for how good it may be
35. Here \_\_\_\_\_ notebook and report that I promised last week.
- A. is the      B. are the      C. was the      D. has been a
36. \_\_\_\_\_ , we shall go on a picnic.
- A. The weather is fine      B. Should the weather be fine  
C. The weather be fine      D. Would the weather be fine
37. Flying demands a much greater supply of energy \_\_\_\_\_ other forms of transportation.
- A. than do most      B. most than do  
C. than most do      D. do than most
38. \_\_\_\_\_ , I would give it up early.
- A. Was I in your place      B. I was in your place  
C. Were I in your place      D. I were in your place
39. By no means \_\_\_\_\_ their own language well.
- A. it is true that all English people know  
B. is it true that do all English people know  
C. it is that do all English people know  
D. is it true that all English people know
40. \_\_\_\_\_ was his anger that his face turned red.
- A. Such      B. Great      C. So      D. It
41. Up went the prices and \_\_\_\_\_ .



- ## II. 改错题

- 364



· 第十五章 倒装 ·

4. Some rural areas in the United States have no local government except that of  
A B C  
the county in which are they located.  
D
5. Lasers are capable of measuring precisely how far are other planets from the earth.  
A B C D
6. Most urban professionals talk about how much they did exercise rather than  
A B C  
how much money they earned.  
D
7. Few of the gold seekers who flocked to California were experienced miners ,  
A B  
and so did they feel that they had to be.  
C D
8. So is the length of the bridge that the shape of the earth had to be taken into  
A B C D  
account by its designer.
9. It was not until dark that did he realize it was too late to return home.  
A B C D
10. We cannot conquer disease nor we cannot educate all humanity.  
A B C D
11. Among the forest of skyscrapers stand the 108-story-tall Empire Building  
A B C  
which was constructed at the cost of hundreds of millions of dollars.  
D
12. He often thought of going there but never he had a chance.  
A B C D
13. Scarcely he had received the telegram when he started off at once.  
A B C D
14. When choosing a major , college students should consider how good are they  
A B  
at different subjects as well as what the job market will be when they  
C D  
graduate.
15. It can be shown , for example , that English and Greek are related. Different  
A B C  
although they are , they go back to a common ancestor.  
D
16. He seemed so convincing that if I hadn't known he was lying I would  
A B  
have believed him and so did most of you.  
C D



17. Very little they realized they had made an important discovery in science.  
A B C D
18. Not only the computer can gather and store information , it can also solve  
A  
complicated problems that take months for people to do.  
B C D
19. In no circumstances you should leave the room in order to make sure of your  
A B C  
safety.  
D
20. There exists neither perfect insulators nor perfect conductors , for all  
A B C  
substances offer resistance to the flow of an electric current.  
D
21. From the chart shown on page 15 , one can easily see how large each country  
A B C  
is and how many inhabitants does it have.  
D



# 第十六章 一致关系

一致关系指词语之间在人称、数、性等方面的一致。本章着重讨论词语之间在数方面的一致,即主谓一致。在判定一个句子主谓是否一致时,要遵循下列三个原则:即语法是否一致,意义是否一致以及邻近是否一致。

## 第一节 单数名词形式作主语的主谓一致

单数名词作主语,谓语动词通常用单数形式,但是有些单数名词形式却含有复数意义,这时要用复数形式。



## 一、集合名词作主语的主谓一致

- 1. 集合名词作主语,如果表示整体概念,谓语动词用单数;如表示成员则用复数。

常见的这部分名词有: army, audience, class, club, committee, company, crowd, couple, family, group, government, jury, party, personnel, staff, team, union, public 等。

例 If the football team wins the game, the club will be the champion.

如果这个足球队赢了这场比赛,这个俱乐部将是冠军。

The football team are discussing the problem with their coach now.

足球队员们正在与他们的教练讨论这个问题。

The family has lived in the house for over 20 years.

这家人已经在这栋房子里住了 20 多年了。

The family are going abroad for a holiday.

这家人准备到国外度假。

- 2. 有些集合名词,如: folk, people, police, militia, cattle, poultry 等作主语,动词总是跟复数形式。

例 Cattle are grazing in the field. 牛在田野里吃草。

The police carry weapons. 警察都持有武器。

## 二、单复数同形的名词作主语的主谓一致

单复数同形的名词作主语,要根据上下文的意义及修饰这些词的词来确定其谓语形式。常见的这部分名词有: aircraft, deer, fish, means, sheep, species, series, works, crossroads, headquarters 等。

例 There are various species of butterflies. 蝴蝶有许多种类。

There has been a series of car accidents at the crossing.

在那个交叉路口曾发生过一连串的车祸。

Every means has been tried. 各种办法都试过了。

The means of communication between here and outside are interrupted. 这里与外界的联系受到了干扰。

A sheep doesn't belong to ours. 有一只羊不是我们的。

More than a thousand sheep are eating grass on the hillside.



山坡上有一千多只羊在吃草。

## 第二节 复数名词形式作主语的主谓一致

### 一、以“s”结尾的书刊名、国名、组织名的主谓一致

以“s”结尾的书刊名、国名、组织名等作主语时，谓语动词通常用单数形式。

- 例 The United States is composed of fifty states. 美国由五十个州组成。  
The Canterbury Tales was written by Chaucer.  
《坎特伯雷故事集》是乔叟写的。

### 二、专有名词作主语的主谓一致

表示群岛、瀑布、山脉等词以“s”结尾的专有名词作主语时，谓语动词往往用复数形式。

- 例 The Alps are in Europe. 阿尔卑斯山脉在欧洲。  
The Philippines are in the Pacific Ocean. 菲律宾群岛在太平洋。

### 三、以-ics 结尾的名词的主谓一致

以-ics 结尾的名词指一门学科时，作主语常用单数谓语动词形式。但是，当这些名词表示实际内容时，谓语动词则用复数形式。常见的这些词有：

politics( 政治学 )	mathematics( 数学 )
acoustics( 音响学 )	statistics( 统计学 )
electronics( 电子学 )	linguistics( 语言学 )
physics( 物理学 )	optics( 光学 )
economics( 经济学 )	

- 例 Physics was the only course he failed in.  
物理学是他唯一不及格的课程。  
Statistics show that the number of housewives who work part-time has increased in the last few years in the U. S.



据统计,最近两三年间,美国家庭主妇兼职工作的人数已经增加了。

Statistics is a subject that is difficult to learn.

统计学是一门很难学的课。

Economics is her major. 经济学是她的主修课程。

Economics have greatly improved in the country.

这个国家的经济状况已经大大改善了。

### 第三节 of 构成的短语作主语的主谓一致

#### 一、“all (most half plenty, enough, some, the rest, the remainder 等) + of” 短语作主语的主谓一致

如果 of 后面的部分为复数形式,作主语时谓语动词用复数;如果 of 后面所接名词为单数,谓语动词用单数。

例 Half of the students are boys. 学生中有一半是男孩子。

The rest of the lecture is dull. 演讲的其余部分是枯燥的。

The rest of the bicycles are on sale today. 今天出售剩余的自行车。

When enough of the tree is chopped away, the tree falls.

如果一棵树砍去的部分足够多,树就倒了。

注:上面这些词也可单独作主语,这时其主谓一致关系一般遵循意义一致的原则:如果所指为复数意义,谓语动词用复数形式;如果所指为单数意义,谓语动词用单数形式。例如:

All is ready for the reception. 接待工作一切都准备就绪了。

All are eager to reach an agreement. 所有人都急于达成协议。

Although his many examples were all right, the remainder \_\_\_\_\_ not exact.

A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. were

答案为 D。译文:尽管他列举的许多例子是可以的,但其余部分不准确。





## 二、“a lot ( mass , heap 等 ) + of + 名词”短语作主语的主谓一致

“a lot ( mass , heap 等 ) / lots + of + 名词”短语作主语时 ,如果 of 后面所接名词为复数形式 ,谓语动词就用复数形式 ;如果 of 后面所接名词为单数形式 ,谓语动词就用单数形式。the mass of 的用法也相同。

例 A heap of difficulties were pressing him.

成堆的难题使他感到压力沉重。

A mass of information has been revealed.

大量的情报已经被泄露了。

A mass of books are arranged in the bookshelves.

书架上摆着大量的书。

The mass of people in the country are Christian.

那个国家的大部分人是基督教徒。

Lots of damage was caused by the fire. 火灾造成了巨大损失。

Lots of people were present at the meeting.

许多人出席了这个会议。

## 三、“none of ... , neither of ... , either of ... ”构成的短语作主语的主谓一致

▶▶ 1. none of 后面若接的是可数名词 ,作主语时 ,谓语动词用单复数都可以 ;若接的是不可数名词 ,就用单数形式。

例 None of us have / has ever been abroad.

我们中没有人曾到过国外。

None of the money was paid to me. 连一分钱也没有付给我。

▶▶ 2. neither of ... 和 either of ... 构成的短语作主语 ,谓语动词通常用单数形式 ,但在口语中也可视为复数。

例 Neither of the cars was / were damaged. 两部车都没受损。

Either of them wear / wears glasses. 他们两个都戴眼镜。



#### 四、“分数或百分数 + of ...”构成的短语作主语的主谓一致

在“分数或百分数 + of”结构中,如果 of 后面的部分为复数,作主语时,谓语动词用复数形式;如果 of 后面为单数或不可数名词,作主语时,谓语动词则用单数形式。

例 Three-fourths of the surface of the earth is sea.

地球表面的四分之三是海。

About one third of the books are worth reading.

大约三分之一的书值得一读。

About 20% of the students were absent from the meeting.

大约百分之二十的学生没有参加这个会。

Only 30% of the work was done yesterday.

昨天只完成了百分之三十的工作。

#### 五、“form(kind, part, piece, portion, section, sort, type 等) + of ...”短语作主语的主谓一致

“form of ...”等短语作主语时,其谓语动词的单复数取决于这些词本身的单复数,与 of 后面的名词没关系。

例 These are two different forms of the same thing.

这些是同一事物两种不同的形式。

Parts of the book are interesting. 这本书有几部分很有趣。

A substantial portion of the reports is missing.

这些报告里有相当一部分不见了。

The kind of books an author writes depends on the kind of man who he is. 什么样的作家写什么样的书。

A new type of bus is now on show. 现在正在展出一种新型的公共汽车。

#### 六、“one of + 复数名词或代词 + 定语从句”结构中的主谓一致

►► 1. 在“one of + 复数名词或代词 + 定语从句”结构中,分句中的



谓语动词用复数形式。

例 This is one of the most interesting questions that have been asked.

这是所提出的问题中最有趣的问题之一。

He is one of the few persons I know who have learnt from experience.

他是我知道的吸取了经验的少数人之一。

►► 2. 当 one 之前有 the only 等词修饰时,分句中的谓语动词用单数形式。

例 Sara was the only one of the youngest girls who plays in the band.

萨拉是在乐队演奏的最年轻的女孩。

He was the only one of the boys who was given a prize.

他是这些孩子中唯一受到奖励的。

### 七、“a ( the ) number ( a variety ) of + 可数名词” 作主语时的主谓一致

►► 1. “a number ( a variety ) of + 可数名词”作主语时,谓语动词用复数形式。

例 A number of students are from the south. 一些学生来自南方。

There are a variety of goods on sale in the shop.

在那个商店,各种各样的商品在出售。

►► 2. “the number of ( 数目 )和 the variety of ( 种类 )等 + 可数名词”作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。

例 The number of students from the north is small.

来自北方的学生不多。

The variety of goods on sale in that shop is surprising.

那个商店的商品品种多得惊人。

### 八、“an amount ( amounts ) of 或 a quantity ( quantities ) of + 不可数名词”作主语的主谓一致

►► 1. “an amount of 或 a quantity of + 不可数名词”作主语时,谓语动词要用单数。

例 A large amount of money is spent on the project.



这项工程耗费了巨额资金。

A large quantity of desert covers the land.

大量的沙子覆盖了这块地。

- ▶▶ 2. “quantities of 或 amounts of + 不可数名词”作主语时,谓动词用复数。

例 Small amounts of land were used for raising animals.

使用少量的地饲养动物。

Large quantities of coal are needed in the factory every year.

这个工厂每年都需要大量的煤。

### 九、“a group of + 复数名词”作主语的主谓一致

当“a group of / a flock of / a crowd of 等 + 复数名词”作主语时,如果强调的是整体,谓动词用单数;如果强调的是个体,谓动词用复数形式。

例 A group of little girls was / were playing in the park.

一群小女孩正在公园玩。

The group of young people come from different parts of the world.

这批年轻人都来自世界各地。[强调个体]

### 十、a ( the ) majority ( of ) , a ( the ) minority ( of )

#### 短语作主语的主谓一致

在 a ( the ) majority / minority of ... 短语中,of 后面既可接单数可数名词和复数可数名词,也可接不可数名词。如果 of 后面的名词是单数形式,谓动词就用单数形式。如果 of 后面的名词是复数形式,如视为整体,谓动词用单数;如视为个体,谓动词用复数形式。

例 The majority of students were / was indifferent to the political meeting.

大多数的学生对政治集会漠不关心。

Only a minority of students receive( s ) the scholarship.

仅有少数学生得到奖学金。

The majority of wool used in America is imported.

美国国内所用的大多数羊毛是进口的。

The majority were ( was ) for the proposal. 多数人赞成这个提议。



The minority is subordinate to the majority. 少数服从多数。

## 第四节 并列主语的主谓一致

### 一、由 and 并列的结构作主语时的主谓一致

- 1. both... and... 连接两个单数名词作主语时, 谓语动词必须用复数形式。

例 Both rice and cotton grow in abundance in this part of China.

中国的这一地区盛产大米和棉花。

Both you and I were wrong. 你和我都错了。

- 2. 由 and 连接两个单数名词作主语时, 指的是复数概念, 谓语动词用复数形式。

例 English and Chinese are quite different languages.

英语和汉语是完全不同的语言。

Basketball and football are usually popular among students.

篮球和足球是学生们最喜爱的运动。

The manager and the secretary were present at the meeting.

经理和秘书出席了这个会议。

Good and bad butter are things quite different to our taste.

优质和劣质奶油口味大不相同。

The red and the white rose were withering in the cold.

红玫瑰和白玫瑰正在寒冷中枯萎。

- 3. 当 and 连接的并列的主语在意义上指同一人、同一物、同一事或同一概念时, 谓语动词用单数。

例 My neighbor and colleague is watering the flowers.

我的邻居也就是我的同事在浇花。[ 并列主语指同一人 ]

Whisky and soda is always my favorite drink.

威士忌加苏打总是最合我的口味。[ 指同一种东西 ]

The hammer and sickle was flying from a tall flagpole.

铁锤镰刀旗在高高旗杆上迎风飘扬。[ 指同一种东西 ]



War and peace is a constant theme in history.

战争与和平是历史永恒的主题。[ 指同一概念 ]

Your assistance and that of your friends is greatly appreciated.

非常感谢你和你朋友们的帮忙。[ 指同一件事 ]

- 4. each... and each..., every... and every..., no... and no... 等作主语, 谓语动词用单数形式。

例 Each boy and each girl is congratulated. 祝贺每一个男孩和女孩。

Every eventuality and every possibility was being taken into account.

正在考虑各种结果和可能性。

No teacher and no student was present. 没有一个老师和学生出席。

- 5. 两个部件配成的物品, 如 a knife and fork, a cup and saucer, a cart and horse 等, 也可视为单数概念, 与单数形式的动词搭配。

例 A cart and horse was seen in the distance. 远处来了一套马车。

## 二、either ... or ..., not only ... but (also) ... 等连接的并列成分作主语时的主谓一致

or, either ... or ..., neither ... nor ..., not only ... but (also) ... 等连接的并列成分作主语时, 根据就近一致的原则处理。离谓语部分近的主语部分是单数, 谓语动词就用单数, 离谓语部分近的主语是复数, 谓语动词就用复数。

例 A technical manual or samples are distributed free at the exhibition.

展览会上, 技术手册或样品免费分发。

Either fans or an air-conditioner is necessary for this laboratory.

对实验室来说, 电扇和空调是必要的。

Not only the teacher but also his students object to the change.

不但教师反对, 学生也反对这一改变。

Not only the students but also their teacher objects to the change.

不但学生反对, 老师也反对这一改变。

## 三、“名词(或代词)+介词词组”作主语的主谓一致

当主语后面跟由 with, together with, along with, like, in addition



to, as well as, as much as, rather than, more than, no less than, except 等连接的词组时,其谓语动词的形式依主语的单复数而定。谓语动词的单复数形式与这些词组没有关系。

例 The pilot as well as two of the passengers has miraculously escaped death. 飞行员及两名乘客奇迹般地死里逃生。

Some of the workers, as well as the manager, were working during the holidays. 一些工人和经理一样在假日工作。

Man, no less than the lower forms of life, is the product of the evolution. 人类和其他较低形式的生命一样也是进化过程的产物。

No one except two servants was late for dinner.

除了两个佣人之外,没有人晚宴迟到。

Doctor Smith, together with his wife and two sons, is to arrive on the evening flight.

史密斯博士及其夫人和两个儿子将乘晚班飞机抵达。

## 第五节 主语从句中主句的主谓一致

### 一、what-分句作主语的主谓一致

►► 1. 通常情况下,由 what 引导的主语从句放在句首时,主句谓语用单数形式。

例 What caused the accident is a complete mystery.

事故是由什么引起的完全是个谜。

What interests her is English. 使她感兴趣的是英语。

What hurt our feeling most was his rude remarks.

最伤害我们感情的是他那些粗鲁的话。

►► 2. 如果主句中的表语是复数形式,谓语动词也可以是复数形式。

例 What we badly need here are competent teachers.

我们这里急需的是合格的教师。

What was real to him were the details of his life.

对他来说真实的是生活的细节。



- 3. 当 what 分句的谓语动词及其补足语均为复数结构时,主句的谓语动词也可以是复数形式。

例 What are often regarded as poisonous fungi are sometimes safely edible. 平时被认为是有毒的真菌有时尽可放心食用。

- 4. 当 what 分句是个带有复数意义的并列结构时,主句谓语动词也可以是复数形式。

例 What I say and think are none of your business.  
我说什么想什么都与你无关。

## 二、that 等名词性分句作主语的主谓一致

that 等名词性分句作主语时,其谓语动词用单数形式。

例 That they were wrong in these matters is now clear to us.  
他们在这些事情上的错误,现在对我们大家来说已经很清楚了。  
Whether she comes or not doesn't concern me.  
她是否来与我没什么关系。  
Who is to head the delegation is still open to question.  
谁当代表团团长仍然是悬而未决的问题。

## 三、两个由 and 连接的名词性从句作主语的主谓一致

两个由 and 连接的名词性从句作主语,并表示两件事情时,其谓语动词用复数。

例 What caused the accident and who was responsible for it remain a mystery to us.  
造成事故的原因是什么,谁应对事故负责,对我们来说是一个谜。

# 第六节 其他结构中的主谓一致

## 一、名词化的形容词作主语的主谓一致

- 1. 当某些形容词同定冠词 the 连用表示某类人作主语时,谓语动词用复数;当某些形容词同定冠词 the 连用表示某类事物作主语时,谓语动词用单数。





例 The sick have been cured and the lost have been found.

病人得到了医治, 失踪人员也已找回来了。

The innocent are often deceived by the unscrupulous.

天真的人常为奸诈之徒所欺骗。

We can do the difficult first. The impossible takes a little longer.

我们先从难题开始, 不会的可能花的时间会长一些。

The beautiful lives forever. 美是永存的。

但是, 某些形容词同定冠词连用作主语指个人时, 谓语动词需用单数。

例 The accused was acquitted.

被告获释。

- 2. 以-sh, -ch 和-ese 等结尾的形容词与定冠词 the 连用, 表示总称, 谓语动词用复数形式。常用的这类词有: the Chinese, the English, the British, the French, the Japanese, the Dutch, the Polish, the Swedish 等。

例 The English are said to be conservative. 据说英国人是保守的。

The Chinese are a friendly people. 中华民族是个友善的民族。

The Japanese are said to be very industrious. 据说日本人非常勤勉。

## 二、动名词或不定式短语作主语的主谓一致

- 1. 单个动名词短语或不定式短语作主语时, 谓语动词通常用单数形式。

例 To plan a composition in advance is a good idea.

事先起草一篇作文是个好主意。

Your leaving us so soon was a great disappointment for us all.

你这么早离去使我们所有的人都很失望。

Playing with fire is dangerous. 玩火是危险的。

- 2. 但是, 当主语为两个并列的动名词或并列的不定式时, 谓语动词通常用复数形式。有时, 如果并列的两部分皆指同一概念或事情时, 则用单数谓语动词形式。

例 To listen to fine music and to have stimulating conversation with good



friends are two pleasures in life.

听优美的音乐及与好朋友进行推心置腹的交流是人生的两大乐事。

Weeping and wailing does nothing towards solving the problem.

恸哭悲泣对解决问题无济于事。

Reading novels and solving equation are different assignments.

读小说和解方程式是不同的作业。

### 三、由“more than one...”或“many a...”构成的 短语作主语的主谓一致

如果主语是由 more than one... 或 many a... 构成, 尽管从意义上看是复数, 但它的谓语动词仍采取单数形式。

例 There is more than one answer to your question.

你的问题不止一种答案。

More than one case has been noted. 已记下了不止一个案件。

Many a man has sacrificed him for the cause of the revolution.

许多人为了革命事业牺牲了自己的生命。

### 四、不定代词 each, one, no one, some (any, no, every) + body( one 或 thing )等作主语时的主谓一致

不定代词 each, one, no one, some (any, no, every) + body( one 或 thing )在句中作主语或作限定词, 谓语动词一律是单数。

例 Nobody wants to do the work. 没有人想做那个工作。

Each couple is asked to complete a form. 要求每对夫妇填一张表。

Every one of us has had such an experience.

我们每一个人都有这样的经验。

Either of the students goes to the library every day.

两个学生每天都去图书馆。

### 五、某些表示数量的名词词组作主语的主谓一致

►► 1. 当名词词组中心词为表示度量、时间、距离、钱币等复数名词时, 往往可根据意义一致的原则, 把这些复数名词看做一个整



体,谓语动词采取单数形式。

例 Fifteen miles seems like a long walk to me.

对我来说,15 英里的步行似乎很远。

Twenty years in prison was the penalty he had to pay.

20 年的监禁是他应得的惩罚。

Ten thousand dollars is quite a large sum.

10000 美金是相当大的一笔款子。

►► 2. 数学上的加法和乘法作主语,谓语动词单复数都可以;而减法和除法,动词一律用单数。

例 15 minus 5 leaves 10.                      15 减 5 等于 10。

5 times 8 is / are 40.                      5 乘 8 等于 40。

15 divided by 3 is 5.                      3 除 15 等于 5。

10 plus 10 make( s )/equal( s )/give( s )/is( are ) 20.

10 加 10 等于 20。

## 六、存在句的主谓一致

►► 1. 存在句的主语和谓语动词的主谓一致关系,在多数情况下,取决于动词之后“真实主语”的语法形式。谓语动词通常和最邻近的那个主语一致。

例 There was a watch, a few suits of clothes and two ties in the suitcase.

手提箱里有只表、几套衣服和两条领带。

Is there anybody there? 那里有人吗?

There are no children playing on the street. 街上没有小孩在玩耍。

►► 2. 当动词之后的名词词组是并列结构时,只要靠近动词的并列成分不是复数形式,谓语动词在习惯上一般采取单数的形式,在这里主要是就近原则在起作用。

例 There is Florida or the Hawaiian Islands to choose from.

可供选择的有佛罗里达或夏威夷岛。

There is one or two places to visit. 有一两个地方要参观。

There is a knife and fork on the table. 桌上有一副刀叉。



## 第七节 名词与代词的一致问题

### 一、名词与名词在“主系表”结构中的一致

在“主系表”结构中,单数名词作主语用单数名词表语,复数名词作主语用复数名词表语,这在语法上是一致的。但是,有时单数名词作主语与复数名词作表语、复数名词作主语与单数名词作表语虽然在形式上不一致,但在逻辑上可一致。

例 Tom is friends with Jack. 汤姆与杰克是朋友。

The Chinese are a hardworking people.

中华民族是一个勤劳的民族。

These stairs are a part of the building.

这些台阶是那座楼的一部分。

### 二、名词与代词的一致

代词与其所代替或修饰的名词或另一代词,必须在人称和性别上保持一致。

例 Not every child will visit \_\_\_\_\_ parents on Sunday.

A. his                      B. its                      C. their                      D. his or her

答案为 A。因为由 every 修饰的名词或由 every + one/body 构成的合成代词通常要用单数代词来替代,所以应该用单数代词 his。译文:并非每个孩子都会在星期天去看望他们的父母。

The United States must look out for the rights of \_\_\_\_\_ citizens.

A. its                                      B. their  
C. ours                                      D. we

答案为 A。The United States 是表示国家的专有名词,看作单数形式,所以从句的谓语动词代词应该用 its。译文:美国必须注意它的公民的权利。

I, who \_\_\_\_\_ your friend, will try my best to help you.

A. be                                      B. am



· 第十六章 一致关系 ·

C. is

D. are

答案为 B。who 代替的是 I ,所以从句中的谓语动词应用 am。

译文 我是你的朋友 将会尽力帮助你。



## Exercise 16

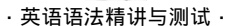
### I. 选择题

1. Ten percent of the workers in this city \_\_\_\_\_ now on strike.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. is to be                      D. are to be
2. The growth of part-time and flexible pattern , and of training and re-training schemes \_\_\_\_\_ more women to take advantage of employment opportunities.  
A. allow                      B. allows                      C. allowing                      D. have allowed
3. These statistics \_\_\_\_\_ manageable units for measuring distances within the solar system.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. have                      D. is to be
4. Mathematics as well as physics always \_\_\_\_\_ me a lot of headaches.  
A. has caused                      B. are causing                      C. cause                      D. causes
5. Not only you and I but Peter , the top student in our grade \_\_\_\_\_ not able to solve the problem.  
A. are                      B. were                      C. is                      D. am
6. Plenty of fruits , eggs , and vegetables \_\_\_\_\_ needed for health.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. is being                      D. have
7. Neither Jane nor her brothers \_\_\_\_\_ a consent form for tomorrow's field trip.  
A. need                      B. needs                      C. is needing                      D. has need
8. What the man said under the oath \_\_\_\_\_ by several other witnesses.  
A. was disputed                      B. were disputed  
C. disputed                      D. be disputed
9. The government \_\_\_\_\_ hoping to make their findings known soon.  
A. is                      B. has been                      C. are                      D. be
10. Today there \_\_\_\_\_ a number of telephone calls from the applicants for the position.  
A. have been                      B. is having                      C. has been                      D. are to have
11. To listen to fine music and to have stimulating conversation with good friends \_\_\_\_\_ two pleasures in life.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. has been
12. Of particular interest to visitors \_\_\_\_\_ the large number of bookstores that sell books in different languages.



· 第十六章 一致关系 ·

- A. have been    B. are    C. is    D. were
13. Many species of animals which once lived on the earth \_\_\_\_\_ no longer in existence.
- A. is    B. are    C. was    D. were
14. How close parents are to their children \_\_\_\_\_ a strong influence on the character of the children.
- A. have    B. has    C. having    D. to have
15. Not only the whole nation , but the whole Europe , indeed the whole human society \_\_\_\_\_ to alter its attitude to racial problems.
- A. need    B. needs    C. has a need    D. have a need
16. All the data \_\_\_\_\_ once and again ; still there are a lot of mistakes.
- A. has been checked    B. have been checked  
C. been checked    D. is checked
17. It is not the tools a scientist uses but how he uses the tools that \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. make him a scientist    B. makes him to be a scientist  
C. make him to be scientist    D. makes him a scientist
18. The play writer and director \_\_\_\_\_ promised to attend our tea-party.
- A. have    B. has    C. are    D. is
19. The premier and the Foreign Minister \_\_\_\_\_ present at the state banquet last night.
- A. are    B. was    C. were    D. had a
20. To balance the budget and to provide jobs \_\_\_\_\_ two goals of the elected official.
- A. is going to    B. is    C. becomes    D. are
21. Every means \_\_\_\_\_ tried but without much result.
- A. has been    B. have been    C. are    D. is
22. Nobody but Smith and John \_\_\_\_\_ in the lab yesterday.
- A. are    B. had been    C. were    D. was
23. Half of the audience \_\_\_\_\_ foreigners.
- A. was    B. were    C. had been    D. has been
24. Hard work and main living \_\_\_\_\_ characteristics of the working people.
- A. is    B. has been    C. were    D. are
25. In the room \_\_\_\_\_ a big table and a great many chairs.
- A. do they find    B. is found    C. are found    D. have found



- 386





- 387



51. Several of the cups in the set \_\_\_\_\_ in delivery.  
A. was smashed                      B. was smashing  
C. were smashed                      D. were smashing
52. There is always a possibility that the infection will return , but so far there \_\_\_\_\_ been no signs of trouble.  
A. has                      B. have                      C. are                      D. had
53. Bacon and scrambled eggs( 炒蛋 ) \_\_\_\_\_ the standard American breakfast.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. is to be                      D. are to be
54. A new TV series \_\_\_\_\_ handicapped children that they can and should think about career development.  
A. have taught    B. teaches                      C. teach                      D. were taught
55. Although medical evidence shows that AIDS \_\_\_\_\_ not transmitted by casual contact , there still \_\_\_\_\_ fear of infection , which has caused unwarranted prejudice against even those merely suspected of having the disease.  
A. is . . . exist                      B. are . . . exist  
C. is . . . exists                      D. are . . . exists
56. The auxiliary police \_\_\_\_\_ to report for duty at the headquarters.  
A. are required                      B. required  
C. is required                      D. will require
57. I turn to you as my hope. If you fail me , then my honor as well as my position \_\_\_\_\_ forever lost.  
A. be                      B. are                      C. is                      D. was
58. Collecting stamps as a hobby \_\_\_\_\_ increasingly popular during the past ten years.  
A. became                      B. becomes                      C. has become                      D. have become
59. \_\_\_\_\_ evidence that language-acquiring ability must be stimulated.  
A. It being                      B. It is                      C. There is                      D. There being
60. Ten per cent of the men \_\_\_\_\_ on the field of battle calling for medical assistance that just is not available at the present time.  
A. is laid                      B. are lying                      C. are laid                      D. are laying

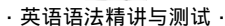
## II. 改错题

1. Within the Alamo was one hundred and eighty men , more than two  
A



· 第十六章 一致关系 ·

- thirds of whom had recently migrated from nearby states.  
B C D
2. With the exception of aluminum , shiny metals such as tin or copper turns into  
A B C  
black powders when ground fine.  
D
3. The weeks of summer training are often as tense for sports writers as it is for  
A B C D  
football players and coaches.
4. A series of debates between the lectures were scheduled for the next weekend.  
A B C D
5. Setting fires to public buildings are highly dangerous and punishable by law ;  
A B  
therefor , the arsonist should be sentenced to a long term of imprisonment.  
C D
6. American women have come a long way on the road toward a role for women  
A  
which are as dignified and responsible as the one assigned to men.  
B C D
7. That intelligence tests actually give a measurement of the intelligence of  
A B  
individuals are questioned by some eminent psychologists.  
C D
8. The leaves of the red maple are highly poisonous to horses and when ingested  
A B  
can kill it within fifteen hours.  
C D
9. Neither the reporters nor the editor has received their paycheck.  
A B C D
10. Subject bibliographies vary in size , scope , and method , according to the  
A B  
purpose for which it is designed.  
C D
11. Emergency relief , including medicine , clothing , and food stuffs , were sent  
A B  
to the earthquake zone immediately following news of the disaster.  
C D
12. Mr. Gilmore is one of those men who appears to be friendly. However , it is  
A B  
very hard to deal with him.  
C D



- 390



· 第十六章 一致关系 ·

25. Only about one of twelve of the young men and women of this country  
A B C  
receive a college education.  
D
26. The secretary and accountant of the company were absent at the meeting.  
A B C D
27. Just outside the ruins are a magnificent building surrounded by tall trees.  
A B C D
28. Making clothes are often a very time-consuming practice because  
A B  
those clothes that a person likes are rarely the ones that fit him or her.  
C D
29. Neither her parents nor Jill have seen this movie before ; all of them want to  
A B C D  
see it tomorrow.
30. Although the body has been reduced in size by eighteen inches , there  
A B  
have been little change in the engine of the new models.  
C D
31. There are a large supply of pens and notebooks in the storeroom to the left of  
A B C D  
the library entrance.
32. The congressman , accompanied by secrete service agents and aids , are  
A B  
preparing to enter the convention hall within the next few minutes.  
C D
33. Air pollution , together with littering , are causing many problems  
A B C  
in our large , industrial cities today.  
D
34. More often it is the President , and not the members of his cabinet ,  
A B  
who appeal to the public.  
C D
35. The amount of pressure which the materials are subject to affect the quality of  
A B C D  
the products.



# 第十七章 反意疑问句

反意疑问句也称为附加疑问句,是一种常用于口语的疑问句形式,由前后两部分组成。第一部分提出一种看法,第二部分用来质疑或证实。若前一部分为肯定式,后一部分一般用否定式;若前一部分为否定式,后一部分一般用肯定式。

## 第一节 陈述句部分的主语与疑问句部分的主语一致的情况

### 一、陈述句部分为系动词、助动词、情态动词时的反意疑问句形式

当陈述句部分为系动词、助动词、情态动词时,疑问部分要重复



这些动词。

例 He is the best student in our class , isn't he ?

他是我们班最好的学生 不是吗？

They haven't known the news , have they ?

他们还不知道这个消息 是不是？

You can win the game , can't you ?

你们能够赢得这场比赛 是不是？

## 二、陈述句部分的时态要与反意疑问句部分的时态一致

当陈述句部分为现在式 ,反意疑问句部分也应用现在式 ;陈述句部分为过去式 ,疑问句部分也应用过去式 ;陈述句部分为将来式 ,疑问句部分也应用将来式等等。

例 Those old people often take part in various activities , don't they ?

那些老人经常参加各种各样的活动 是不是？

He didn't attend the meeting , did he ?

他没有参加那个会 ,对吧？

They won't attend the party tomorrow , will they ?

他们明天不参加这个晚会 是不是？

## 三、反意疑问句的回答形式

反意疑问句的结构实际上是一种简略的一般疑问句 ,所以其答语一般需用 yes 或 no。当陈述句部分是肯定形式时 ,肯定回答用 yes ,否定回答用 no ,和一般疑问句的回答形式相同。但是 ,当陈述部分为否定形式时 ,其反意疑问句的回答形式应加以注意。

例 We were late , weren't we ? 我们晚了 不是吗？

Yes , we were. 是的 ,我们晚了。

No , we weren't. 不 ,我们没有晚。

Your sister hasn't returned from Japan yet , has she ?

你妹妹还没有从日本回来 ,是吗？

Yes , she has. 不 ,她回来了。

No , she hasn't. 是的 ,她还没有回来。



## 第二节 陈述句部分的主语与疑问句部分的主语不一致的情况

### 一、陈述句部分是 one 作主语的情况

如果陈述句部分是以代词 one 作主语,疑问部分的主语在正式场合用 one,在非正式场合用 you;在美国英语中,非正式场合还可以用 he。

例 One can't be too careful, can one ? (或 can you ?)

越小心越好,是吗?

One should do his duty, shouldn't he ?

一个人应该尽自己的责任,不是吗?

### 二、this, that, everything, something, nothing 等词作陈述句部分主语时的情况

当陈述句部分的主语有 this, that, everything, something, nothing 等词时,疑问句部分的主语用 it;如果主语部分有 these 或 those,要用 they。

例 Nothing happened, didn't it ? 没有发生什么事,是不是?

That is wonderful, isn't it ? 那可好极了,不是吗?

These books will become rubbish if you don't make use of them, won't they ? 如果你不用这些书,它们就会变成垃圾,是不是?

### 三、everyone, someone, anyone, no one 等不定代词作主语的情况

当陈述句部分的主语是 everyone, someone, anyone, no one 等不定代词时,反意疑问句的主语通常用 they,也可用 he。

例 Everybody was present at the meeting, weren't they ?

大家都出席了那个会议,是不是?

Nobody survived the accident, did they ?





在那次事故中没有人生还,是吗?

Somebody has known the news, haven't they?

有人已经知道了那个消息,是不是?

#### 四、动词不定式、动名词作主语时的情况

当动词不定式短语、动名词短语或其他短语作陈述句部分的主语时,反意疑问句的主语通常用 it。

例 To get rid of a bad habit is not easy, is it?

改掉坏习惯不是很容易,是不是?

Doing morning exercises has helped to improve her health, hasn't it?

晨练有助于改善她的健康状况,是不是?

#### 五、陈述句部分是 there be... 时的情况

当陈述句部分是 there be..., 反意疑问句部分的主语也用 there, 而不用人称代词作主语。

例 There are some difficulties in your work, aren't there?

你工作有些困难,是吗?

There is something wrong with you, isn't there?

你身体不太舒服,对吧?

### 第三节 陈述句部分与反意疑问句中的动词变化情况

#### 一、陈述句部分的主语是 I am... 时的反意疑问句形式

当陈述句部分的主语是 I am... 时,反意疑问句部分的结构是 aren't I?

例 I'm very keen on sports, aren't I? 我对体育非常热心,不是吗?



## 二、谓语部分有 would rather , had better , ought to , used to 等助动词时的反意疑问句形式

当谓语动词部分有 would rather , had better , ought to , used to 等助动词时 , 其反意疑问句形式要特别注意。

例 You had better come tomorrow , hadn't you ?

你最好明天来 , 好吗 ?

You would rather not do it , would you ?

你宁愿不要那样做 , 是吗 ?

She used to live in London , use(d)n't she/didn't she ?

她过去一直住在伦敦 , 不是吗 ?

I ought to complain , shouldn't I/oughtn't I ?

我理应抱怨的 , 不是吗 ?

但在 TOEFL 考试中 , ought to 的反意疑问句只能用 should 来引起。

## 三、谓语动词为 wish 时的反意疑问句形式

当谓语为 wish 时 , 反意疑问句的谓语用 may , 前后两部分都用肯定式。

例 I wish to shake hands with you , may I ? 我想跟你握握手 , 行吗 ?

## 四、陈述句部分带有情态动词 must 时的反意疑问句形式

▶▶ 1. 当陈述句部分带有情态动词 must 表示“必须, 应当”时, 反意疑问句部分用 mustn't。当陈述句部分的 mustn't 表示“禁止”讲时, 疑问部分用 must, 也可用 may。

例 We must stay home , mustn't we ?

我们必须留在家里 , 是吗 ?

You mustn't walk on the grass , must you ?

你不应当在草地上行走 , 对吗 ?

You mustn't speak ill of others , must you ?

你不可说别人的坏话 , 不是吗 ?



- 2. 当陈述句部分的 must 表示“推测”时,疑问部分不用 must, 而要根据 must 之后动词的含义使用相应的形式。

例 You must have made the mistake, haven't you?

你一定弄错了,对吧?

The student must be studying hard, isn't he?

那学生一定在努力学习,对吗?

You must have seen the film last week, didn't you?

你上个星期一定看过那部电影,是吧?

- 3. 当陈述句部分的 must 表示“有必要”讲时,疑问部分用 needn't “不必要”。

例 We must look over our test papers before we hand them in, needn't we?

交卷前,我们有必要检查一下,是吗?

He must leave early because he isn't feeling well, needn't he?

他觉得不舒服,有必要早点离开,是吗?

## 五、陈述句部分带有 have 的情况

- 1. 当 have 作“有”之意时,既可用 have 的形式,也可用 do 的形式。但是,如果陈述句部分用的是 haven't ( hasn't ),疑问部分就用 have ( has );如果陈述部分用的是 don't have ( doesn't have ),疑问部分就用 do ( does ) 形式。

例 You have a new car, haven't you / don't you?

你有辆新车,对吗?

He hasn't any sisters, has he? 他没有姐妹,对吗?

She doesn't have any money in her pocket, does she?

她口袋里没有钱,是吗?

- 2. 当 have 不表示“有”之意时,疑问部分只用 do 的适当形式。

例 You all had a good time, didn't you?

你们都玩得很好,是吗?

You have your lunch at twelve o'clock, don't you?

你在十二点吃午饭,不是吗?

They have to hand in their papers in a month, don't they?

他们必须在一个月内交论文,对吗?



## 六、need, dare 在作情态动词和实义动词时的反意疑问句

need 和 dare 这两个词的用法不一样,反意疑问句形式也不同。

- 例 They needn't make such a loud noise, need they?  
他们不需要发出那么大的噪音,是不是?[情态动词]  
You don't need to come if you feel sick, do you?  
如果你不舒服你就不要来了,好吗?[实义动词]  
He didn't dare to speak to her, did he?  
他不敢和她说话,是吗?[实义动词]  
You dare not climb the mountain, dare you?  
你不敢爬那座山,是不是?[情态动词]

## 第四节 其他结构中的反意疑问句

### 一、主从复合句中的反意疑问句

- 1. 若陈述句是一主从复合句,反意疑问句一般应根据主句的谓语形式而定。

- 例 They never said Tom would come, did they?  
他们从来说汤姆要来,是不是?  
He thinks he will lose the game, doesn't he?  
他认为他会输掉这场比赛,是不是?

- 2. 当陈述句部分是“I think( I suppose, I believe, I fancy, I imagine, I expect )that...”时,反意疑问句则要重复从句的谓语。

- 例 I don't think they will come, will they?  
我想他们不回来了,对吗?  
I suppose he can win the game, can't he?  
我认为他能够赢得这场比赛,不是吗?



## 二、陈述句中有否定词时的反意疑问句形式

当陈述句中有否定词 *hardly, little, never, nothing, rarely, seldom* 等时,反意疑问句要用肯定形式。

例 He seldom asks questions in class, does he ?

他课上很少提问题,是不是?

Your brother hardly watches TV, does he ?

你兄弟很少看电视,是不是?

## 三、祈使句也可用反意疑问句

►►1. 肯定的祈使句表示请求时,反意疑问句一般用“*will you*”;表示邀请、劝诱时,反意疑问句用“*won't you*”。但是,在否定的祈使句后面则用“*will you*”。

例 Pass me the tool, will you ? 请把工具递给我,好吗?

Don't waste too much time on the thing, will you ?

不要在这件事情上浪费太多的时间,好吗?

►►2. 当祈使句的宾语为 *us* 时,在“*Let's...*”句型中,其反意疑问句应用“*shall we*”,在“*let us...*”句型中,其反意疑问句应用“*will you*”。

例 Let's do exercises, shall we ? 咱们开始锻炼,好吗?

Let us share, will you ? 让我们共同分担,好吗?

## 四、感叹句后面的反意疑问句

感叹句中的动词要用“*to be*”的现在式,而且通常用否定形式。

例 What an interesting story, isn't it ? 真是一个有趣的故事,不是吗?

How fine a performance, isn't it ? 真是一场非常精彩的演出,不是吗?



## Exercise 17

### I. 选择题

1. Poor Tom has a bad tooth and it has been hurting him for a long time , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. isn't it      B. wasn't it      C. hasn't it      D. doesn't it
2. You won't be away for long , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. will you      B. won't you      C. would you      D. aren't you
3. You've already got our invitation , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. don't you      B. haven't you      C. won't you      D. aren't you
4. Have a little more coffee , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. haven't you      B. won't you      C. don't you      D. will you
5. It is the first time that she has been to the United States , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. hasn't she      B. isn't it      C. has she      D. is it
6. I don't suppose he cares , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. does he      B. doesn't he      C. do I      D. don't I
7. You ought to finish the task in time , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. shouldn't you      B. mustn't you      C. couldn't you      D. won't you
8. Still beginners have to learn from their mistakes , \_\_\_\_\_ they ?  
A. haven't      B. mustn't      C. don't      D. aren't
9. John isn't a diligent student , for it is the third time he has been late , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. wasn't it      B. hasn't      C. isn't it      D. hasn't he
10. " Your uncle told me that he overslept. "  
    " Oh , my uncle rarely used to oversleep , \_\_\_\_\_ ?"  
A. wasn't he      B. was he      C. didn't he      D. did he
11. I hope they won't have to wait all day , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. won't they      B. don't they      C. will they      D. won't you
12. Show me your license , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. will you      B. shouldn't you      C. shan't you      D. can't you
13. You should go to the grand opening ceremony , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. aren't you      B. shouldn't you      C. wouldn't you      D. don't you
14. Peter oughtn't to have done it in the first place , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. hasn't he      B. oughtn't he      C. hadn't he      D. ought he



· 第十七章 反意疑问句 ·

15. Everything seems all right , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. doesn't it    B. won't it    C. hasn't it    D. don't they
16. Go straight into the core and find out what's in there , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. don't you    B. will you    C. do you    D. can you
17. You'd like to have a good sleep , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. haven't you    B. would you    C. had you    D. wouldn't you
18. There has not been a great response to the sale , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. does there    B. hasn't it    C. hasn't there    D. has there
19. I wish to attend the evening party , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. wish I    B. do I    C. don't I    D. may I
20. James was very pleased , if he hadn't spoken to the salesgirl beforehand , he might have spent more money than he could really have afforded , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. didn't he    B. couldn't he    C. hadn't he    D. mightn't he
21. You'd better remain here , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. hadn't you    B. shouldn't you    C. couldn't you    D. wouldn't you
22. You seem to be dissatisfied with your present post , I don't think you judged your ability objectively when you applied for it , \_\_\_\_\_ you ?  
A. do    B. don't    C. didn't    D. did
23. Today's weather isn't as cold as it was yesterday , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. wasn't it    B. was it    C. isn't it    D. is it
24. He never used to swim in winter , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. did he    B. didn't he    C. was he    D. wasn't he
25. I am the only person who is to blame , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. am not    B. aren't I    C. isn't he    D. am I
26. I don't think he will arrive here in time , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. do I    B. don't I    C. won't he    D. will he
27. I told them not everybody could do it , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. could they    B. couldn't they    C. didn't I    D. had she
28. Tell me how to operate the electronic computer , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. do you    B. won't you    C. will you    D. don't you
29. Nobody phoned me while I was out , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. did they    B. didn't they    C. did he    D. didn't he
30. Clever boys need never work very hard , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. needn't they    B. don't they    C. do they    D. need they



31. Let's go to the dinning hall together , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. do we      B. are we      C. shall we      D. will you
32. I wish to recollect where I met her , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. would I      B. may I      C. may not I      D. can I
33. We have to do another experiment today , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. don't we      B. shouldn't we      C. did we      D. have we
34. She must be looking forward to your return , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. mustn't she      B. wasn't she      C. isn't she      D. didn't she
35. We never dared to ask him a question , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. did we      B. didn't we      C. dare we      D. daren't we
36. Don't tell him the matter , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. will you      B. do you      C. don't you      D. won't you
37. The old lady scarcely cares for anything , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. does she      B. doesn't she      C. don't she      D. do she
38. What a pleasant day , \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. is it      B. won't it      C. isn't it      D. aren't they

## II. 改错题

1. There is quite a bit of rain in your part of the county , isn't it ?  
A      B                                  C                                  D
2. If Tim had a small boat , he would let us use it , doesn't he ?  
A                                  B                                  C                                  D
3. Anyone who did that was wasting their time and money , wasn't it ?  
A                                  B                                  C                                  D
4. Your sister used to visit you quite often , hadn't she ?  
A                                  B                                  C                                  D
5. He would have bought the house , if he had only had enough money , hadn't he ?  
A                                  B                                  C                                  D
6. Black told me that there wasn't anyone in the classroom at that time , was there ?  
A                                  B                                  C                                  D
7. It is high time that we left , didn't we ?  
A      B                                  C                                  D
8. " What was the assignment for today ? " " We had to read the first  
chapter , hadn't we ? "  
A                                  B                                  C                                  D
9. You never told us why you were late for the last meeting , didn't you ?  
A                                  B                                  C                                  D





· 第十七章 反意疑问句 ·

10. Let's go swimming and boating together , will you ?  
A B C D
11. The doctor soon had the patient walking again , hadn't he ?  
A B C D
12. She had no idea she was sailing through the air , hadn't she ?  
A B C D
13. Tell me how to operate the electronic computer , won't you ?  
A B C D
14. Being a student , he daren't say such rude things , does he ?  
A B C D
15. Everybody knows that the earth goes around the sun , doesn't it ?  
A B C D
16. If I had known that you were out , I wouldn't have bothered to come all the way at that time of night , hadn't I ?  
A B C D
17. The price of crude oil used to be a great deal lower than now , wasn't it ?  
A B C D
18. Mary keeps talking about the party ; she had a very good time , hadn't she ?  
A B C D
19. They need to be reminded about it , needn't they ?  
A B C D



# 第十八章 强调、平行结构

## 第一节 强调结构

当句子中的主语、宾语、状语需要强调时,就要使用强调句型。结构为:“It is( was )+ 被强调部分 + that( which ,who ,whom )+ 句中其他部分”。动词 be 的时态可随 that 从句的时态变化而变化。

### 一、被强调的部分指人

当被强调的部分指人,要用 who ,that。当被强调的部分是宾语,又是指人时,要用 whom 或 that ,但是通常多用 that。

④ It was a young scientist who ( that ) solved this problem five



years ago.

正是一位年轻的科学家五年前解决了这个问题。

It is the man who discovered the law.

正是那个人发现了这个定律。

但是,当宾语是 them 时,强调句要改用 those。

例 It was those that the professor regarded with such contempt.

那几个就是被教授瞧不起的人。

## 二、被强调的部分指物

被强调的部分指物时,要用 which 或 that,但是通常多用 that。

例 It was the legislature that played the decisive role in declaring war.

正是立法机构在宣战时起决定性的作用。

It was the problem that a young scientist solved two years ago.

年轻的科学家两年前解决的正是这个问题。

## 三、被强调的部分为状语

被强调部分是状语时,只能用 that,不能用 when 或 where。

例 It was because her mother was ill that she didn't go with us.

正是因为她母亲病了,她才没有和我们一起去。

It was yesterday that I met him in the street.

我在街上遇见他是昨天。

It is only when you nearly lose someone that you become fully conscious of how much you value him.

只有当你将失去一个人时,你才会充分意识到你是多么珍视他。

## 四、“not...until”结构中的强调形式

由 until 引出的短语或从句,所用的强调句型是“It is( was )not until...that...”。

例 My father didn't come home until 12 last night.

我的父亲昨晚直到 12 点钟才回家。

It was not until 12 last night that my father came home.

昨晚直到 12 点我的父亲才回家。



It was not until he told me that I knew it.

直到他告诉我 , 我才知道。

## 第二节 平行结构

两个或两个以上互相连接而又属于同一层次并且有相同句法功能的结构被称为平行结构。根据此原则, 句子中由并列连词引起的两个或两个以上的并列成分间的结构、词性、数、时态等方面应保持一致。常用的这类连词有: both... and... , neither... nor... , either... or... , not only... but also... , rather than , nor , and , but , while , whereas , yet , as well as 等。

**例** We have done things we ought not to have done and left undone things we ought to have done. 做了我们不该做的, 该做的我们却没做。[ 两个谓语动词的并列 ]

The advertisement claims that this new-brand car made in Shanghai is safe , comfortable , and easy to use. 那个广告声称, 上海造的这个牌子的小汽车既安全舒适, 又容易操作。[ 三个并列的形容词作表语 ]

Her job is washing , cleaning and taking care of the children.

她的工作是洗衣服、打扫卫生和看孩子。[ 三个并列的动名词短语作表语 ]

Teachers also need fresh air , physical exercises , and necessary sleep. 老师也需要新鲜的空气、适当的体育锻炼和必要的睡眠。[ 三个并列的名词短语作宾语 ]

The instrument has been welcomed by users because of its stability in serviceability , reliability in operation and simplicity in maintenance.

该仪器性能稳定, 操作可靠, 维修方便, 因而受到用户欢迎。[ 三个并列的名词短语作介词的宾语 ]

Understanding what you are like , what you value , and what you want to become is the foundation for all career planning.

了解你是怎样的人, 你看重什么, 以及你想成为什么人, 这是整个职业规划的基础。[ 由连接代词 what 引导的三宾语从句的并列 ]



A father who spends time with his son and who thoughtfully answers his son's questions will be respected and loved.

一位父亲 ,如果花时间陪伴儿子并且细心回答儿子的所有问题 ,将受到尊敬和爱戴。[ 两个定语从句的并列 ]

The well-known play-writer spent eight days in the resorts traveling on foot , climbing mountains and bathing in the sea.

那位有名的剧作家花了 8 天的时间在那些旅游胜地徒步旅行、登山及洗海水浴。[ 三个并列的动名词短语作宾语 ]

When you are trying to plan your career , try a variety of jobs , work in many different settings , volunteer for different tasks.

当你在试着规划自己事业的时候 ,要尝试多种不同的职业 ,在多种不同环境中工作并主动承担多种不同的任务。[ 主句是三个并列的祈使句 ]

In the last twenty years , as a result of reform , the standard of living in China has risen dramatically and continuously.

在最近 20 年 ,由于改革开放 ,中国人民的生活水平已经得到了很大的提高 ,而且还在不断提高。[ 两个并列的副词作状语 ]

She has nothing to do all the time. She kills her nights by watching TV and her days by sleeping.

她一直无事可做 ,晚上看电视 ,白天睡觉来消磨时光。[ 两个并列的介词短语作状语 ]

Our teacher asked us to close our books , ( to ) take out a pen and a piece of paper , and ( to ) write a composition.

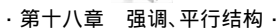
老师让我们合上书 ,拿出笔和纸 ,写一篇作文。[ 三个并列的不定式短语作宾补 ]



## Exercise 18

### I. 选择题

1. Nearly all trees have seeds that fall to the earth , take root , and eventually \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. generate new seeds                      B. by generating new seeds  
C. new seeds generated                      D. new seeds generated here
2. My boss asked me to answer the phone , to talk all messages , and \_\_\_\_\_ some letters.  
A. to type              B. typing              C. type              D. typewrite
3. The king was loved by his friends , respected by his subjects , and \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. his enemies feared him                      B. frightened his enemies  
C. he scared his enemies                      D. feared by his enemies
4. When I stop to consider my ambitions , I realize my main goals consist of doing well in school , graduating , and \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to make money                      B. making money  
C. be making money                      D. make money
5. I want to buy something colorful and \_\_\_\_\_ in your store.  
A. decoration      B. decorator      C. decorating      D. decorative
6. Jean had not realized how long the magazine was or \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. its reading difficulty                      B. its difficulty in reading  
C. that it was so difficult to read      D. how difficult it was to read
7. The typist was fast \_\_\_\_\_ and was hired immediately.  
A. but efficient                      B. and efficiently  
C. so efficiently                      D. and efficient
8. Jean wanted neither the assignment in Tokyo nor \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the job in Chicago  
B. did he want to go to the Chicago  
C. to be sent to Chicago  
D. at Chicago
9. Mr. Smith was young , enthusiastic , and \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. had interested in many activities  
B. interesting in many activities

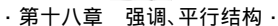


- 409



17. The role of the party system in American politics has always been \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. not dividing but a union      B. a unity instead of dividing  
C. not to divide but to unite      C. unifying instead of a division
18. The director of this organization must know \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. money management , selling , and able to satisfy the stockholders  
B. how to manage money , selling his product , and be able to satisfy stockholders  
C. how to manage money , sell his product , and satisfy the stockholders  
D. money management , selling , the idea of being able to satisfy the stockholders
19. It was after he had made an investigation \_\_\_\_\_ he came to know the truth.  
A. where      B. when      C. that      D. and
20. It was twenty years ago \_\_\_\_\_ he joined the party.  
A. then      B. when      C. since      D. that
21. It was not until she had arrived home \_\_\_\_\_ she remembered her appointment with the doctor.  
A. when      B. that      C. and      D. while
22. We were told that it was in that room \_\_\_\_\_ the Republicans held the important meeting.  
A. where      B. and      C. that      D. which
23. It was not until he entered the classroom \_\_\_\_\_ he realized that he had forgotten to do the homework.  
A. before      B. when      C. where      D. that
24. It is the uses to which television is put \_\_\_\_\_ determine its value to society.  
A. they      B. those      C. that      D. who
25. It was the training that he had as a young man \_\_\_\_\_ made him such a good engineer.  
A. that      B. has      C. what      D. who
26. \_\_\_\_\_ the Christmas shopping season begins.  
A. That is after Thanksgiving      B. After Thanksgiving it is  
C. It is after Thanksgiving that      D. It is Thanksgiving that
27. It was between 1830 and 1835 \_\_\_\_\_ the modern newspaper was born.  
A. that      B. how      C. which      D. when
28. Hold the machine as steadily as you can , \_\_\_\_\_.





- ## II. 改错题

- 411



- told them.  
D
8. The more one knows about Elizabeth than England , the more you understand the  
A B C  
importance of the British navy.  
D
9. We got up early , ate breakfast , and the house was cleaned all before my aunt  
A B C D  
arrived.
10. The function of this architecture was providing large uninterrupted floor areas  
A B  
and to allow ample light into the interior.  
C D
11. The United States Department enforces laws that promote the welfare of wage  
A  
earners , improving occupational conditions , and advance employment opportunities.  
B C D
12. The early American colonists were unaccustomed to hard work , were  
A B  
uncertain of what the future would bring and no leader.  
C D
13. It was in a second-hand store where he bought the book he likes best.  
A B C D
14. Without a doubt , it was them who won the game.  
A B C D
15. It was in 1912 when the oil ship sank while crossing the Atlantic.  
A B C D
16. I suppose that was the fantasy of being a successful , married businessman that  
A B C  
appealed to me far more than the reality.  
D
17. I spent the mornings going for long walks on the beach , the afternoons sitting  
A B  
under my favorite tree , read books and listening to tapes.  
C D
18. Swimming is a much more strenuous daily exercise than to walk leisurely in  
A B C D  
the park.
19. If motorists don't observe the traffic regulations , they will be stopped ,  
A B  
ticked , and have to pay a fine.  
C D



· 第十八章 强调、平行结构 ·

20. The way we react to other people , the educational training we received and  
the knowledge we display are all part of our cultural heritage.
- A B  
C D



## 附录 I 综合练习

### 练习 一

1. It is essential that these application forms \_\_\_\_\_ back as early as possible.  
A. must be sent    B. are sent    C. will be sent    D. be sent
2. He thought that \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the effort doing the job was not worth  
B. the effort was not worth in doing the job  
C. it was not worth the effort doing the job  
D. it was not worth the effort by doing the job
3. If I hadn't stood under the ladder to catch you when you fell, you \_\_\_\_\_ now.  
A. wouldn't be smiling                      B. won't smile  
C. couldn't have smiled                      D. didn't smile
4. It's no use \_\_\_\_\_ me not to worry.  
A. you tell                                      B. your telling  
C. for you to have told                      D. having told
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ him so closely; you should have kept your distance.  
A. shouldn't have been following    B. mustn't follow  
C. couldn't have been following    D. shouldn't follow
6. As Commander-in-Chief of the armed forces, I have directed that all measures \_\_\_\_\_ for our defense.  
A. had been taken                              B. be taken  
C. would be taken                              D. to be taken
7. The hours \_\_\_\_\_ the children spend in their one-way relationship with television people, undoubtedly affect their relationships with real-life people.  
A. in which    B. on which    C. when    D. that
8. Beer is the most popular drink among male drinkers, \_\_\_\_\_ overall consumption is significantly higher than that of women.  
A. that    B. what    C. which    D. whose
9. We didn't know his telephone number; otherwise we \_\_\_\_\_ him.

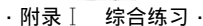


· 附录 I 综合练习 ·

- A. would have telephoned                      B. would telephone  
C. must have telephoned                      D. had telephoned
10. I'd rather have a room of my own ,however small it is ,than \_\_\_\_\_ a room with someone else.  
A. share    B. to share  
C. sharing    D. to have shared
11. You may depend on it \_\_\_\_\_ they will support you.  
A. what                      B. which                      C. that                      D. how
12. The sale usually takes place outside the house ,with the audience \_\_\_\_\_ on benches ,chairs or boxes.  
A. having seated                                      B. seating  
C. seated    D. having been seated
13. She ought to stop working ;she has a headache because she \_\_\_\_\_ too long.  
A. has been reading                                      B. had read  
C. is reading    D. read
14. It seems oil \_\_\_\_\_ from this pipe for some time. We'll have to take the machine apart to put it right.  
A. had leaked    B. is leaking  
C. leaked    D. has been leaking
15. \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature falling so rapidly we couldn't go on with the experiment.  
A. Since                      B. For                      C. As                      D. With
16. After the Arab states won independence , great emphasis was laid on expanding education ,with girls as well as boys \_\_\_\_\_ to go to school.  
A. to be encouraged                                      B. been encouraged  
C. being encouraged                                      D. be encouraged
17. So many directors \_\_\_\_\_ , the board meeting had to be put off.  
A. were absent    B. been absent  
C. had been absent    D. being absent
18. I was halfway back to the cottage where my mother lived \_\_\_\_\_ Susan caught up with me.  
A. when                      B. while                      C. until                      D. though
19. I had just started back for the house to change my clothes \_\_\_\_\_ I heard voices.



- A. as                      B. when                      C. after                      D. while
20. I felt somewhat disappointed and was about to leave , \_\_\_\_\_ something occurred which attracted my attention.
- A. unless                      B. until                      C. when                      D. while
21. No sooner had we reached the top of the hill \_\_\_\_\_ we all sat down to rest.
- A. when                      B. then                      C. than                      D. until
22. Everything we eat and drink contains some salt — we can meet the body's need for it for natural sources without turning \_\_\_\_\_ the salt bottle.
- A. up                      B. to                      C. on                      D. over
23. Agriculture was a step in human progress \_\_\_\_\_ which subsequently there was not anything comparable until our own machine age.
- A. in                      B. for                      C. to                      D. from
24. You should have been more patient \_\_\_\_\_ that customer ; I'm sure that selling him the watch was possibility.
- A. of                      B. for                      C. with                      D. at
25. We went around the table \_\_\_\_\_ ourselves and telling our stories as a way to break the ice.
- A. introducing                      B. being introduced
- C. to introduce                      D. to be introduced
26. Medical research has shown that the widespread use of cigarettes contributes \_\_\_\_\_ the increase of cancers.
- A. towards                      B. with                      C. for                      D. to
27. Without proper lessons ,you could \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of bad habits when playing the piano.
- A. keep up                      B. pick up                      C. draw up                      D. catch up
28. In Disneyland every year , some 800 000 plants are replaced because Disney refused to \_\_\_\_\_ signs asking his " guests " not to step on them.
- A. put down                      B. put out                      C. put up                      D. put off
29. The bed has been \_\_\_\_\_ in the family. It was my great-grandmother's originally.
- A. handed out                      B. handed down
- C. handed over                      D. handed round
30. The car \_\_\_\_\_ halfway for no reason.
- A. broke off                      B. broke up                      C. broke down                      D. broke out

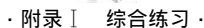


1. It is important that the hotel receptionist \_\_\_\_\_ that guests are registered correctly.  
A. has made sure                      B. must make sure  
C. made sure                          D. make sure
2. The manager would rather his daughter \_\_\_\_\_ in the same office.  
A. does not work                      B. had not worked  
C. not to work                        D. did not work
3. The manager of the hotel requests that their guests \_\_\_\_\_ after 11 00 p. m.  
A. not to play loud music            B. don't play loud music  
C. shouldn't play loud music        D. couldn't play load music
4. Had he worked harder , he \_\_\_\_\_ the exams.  
A. must have got through            B. would get through  
C. would have got through          D. could get through
5. That young man still denies \_\_\_\_\_ the fire behind the store.  
A. start                      B. to start            C. having started    D. to have started
6. —“ May I speak to your manager Mr. Williams at five o'clock tonight ?”  
—“ I'm sorry. Mr. Williams \_\_\_\_\_ to a conference long before then. ”  
A. have gone                      B. would have gone  
C. had gone                        D. will have gone
7. My train arrives in New York at eight o'clock tonight. The plane I would like to take from there \_\_\_\_\_ by then.  
A. would leave    B. will have left    C. has left     D. had left
8. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ the decision as long as it is not too late.  
A. you to delay making            B. your delaying making  
C. your delaying to make            D. you delay to make
9. *A Dream of the Red Chamber* is said \_\_\_\_\_ into dozens of languages in the last decade.  
A. to have been translated          B. to translate  
C. to be translated                    D. to have translated
10. The professor could hardly find sufficient grounds \_\_\_\_\_ his arguments in



- favor of the new theory.
- A. on which to base                      B. which to base on  
C. to base on                              D. to be based on
11. Silver is the best conductor of electricity ,copper \_\_\_\_\_ it closely.  
A. followed                              B. to follow  
C. following                              D. being followed
12. The old man had three sons , all of \_\_\_\_\_ served in the army during the war.  
A. them                      B. that                      C. which                      D. whom
13. You see the lightning \_\_\_\_\_ it happens , but you hear the thunder later.  
A. the instant      B. for an instant      C. on the instant      D. in an instant
14. \_\_\_\_\_ quite recently , most mothers in Britain did not take paid work outside the home.  
A. Before                      B. Until                      C. From                      D. Since
15. Living in the western part of the country had its problems , \_\_\_\_\_ obtaining fresh water is not the least.  
A. with which      B. of which      C. which                      D. for which
16. A survey was carried out on the death rate of new-born babies in that region , \_\_\_\_\_ were surprising.  
A. as results                              B. which results  
C. over                                      D. the results of which
17. Scientists say it may be five or ten years \_\_\_\_\_ it is possible to test this medicine on human patients.  
A. since                      B. before                      C. after                      D. when
18. \_\_\_\_\_ they reached the center of the city , they stopped at a bar.  
A. Before a mile or so when      B. For a mile or so after  
C. Further than a mile or so      D. A mile or so before
19. All things \_\_\_\_\_ , the planned trip will have to be called off.  
A. considered                              B. be considered  
C. considering                              D. having considered
20. \_\_\_\_\_ , a man who expresses himself effectively is sure to succeed more rapidly than a man whose command of language is poor.  
A. Other things being equal      B. Were other things equal  
C. To be equal to other things      D. Other things to be equal





- ### 练习三

- 419



- A. must be sent    B. be sent    C. would be sent    D. were sent
2. Sometimes I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ in a different time and a different place.  
A. be living    B. would live  
C. were living    D. would have lived
3. My father's health has greatly improved \_\_\_\_\_ he stopped smoking.  
A. when    B. since    C. before    D. while
4. The course normally attracts 20 students per year , \_\_\_\_\_ up to half will be from overseas.  
A. in which    B. for whom    C. with which    D. of whom
5. Peter , who had been driving all day , suggested \_\_\_\_\_ at the next town.  
A. stop    C. stopping  
B. to stop    D. having stopped
6. Mark often attempts to escape \_\_\_\_\_ whenever he breaks traffic regulations.  
A. having been fined    B. to have been fined  
C. to be fined    D. being fined
7. We shall not need such a big house \_\_\_\_\_ the children have all left home.  
A. so    B. thus    C. therefore    D. since
8. The conference \_\_\_\_\_ a full week by the time it ends.  
A. must have lasted    B. will have lasted  
C. would last    D. has lasted
9. It's reported that by the end of this month the output of cement in the factory \_\_\_\_\_ by about 10% .  
A. will have risen    B. has risen  
C. will be rising    D. has been rising
10. Jean doesn't want to work right away because she thinks that if she \_\_\_\_\_ a job she probably wouldn't be able to see her friends very often.  
A. has to get    B. had got  
C. were to get    D. could have got
11. The mad man was put in the soft-padded cell lest he \_\_\_\_\_ himself.  
A. injure    B. injured    C. had injured    D. would injure
12. The residents , \_\_\_\_\_ had been damaged by the flood , were given help by the Red Cross.  
A. all their homes    B. all whose homes  
C. all of whose homes    D. all of their homes



· 附录 I 综合练习 ·

13. Although he knew little about the large amount of work done in the field , he succeeded \_\_\_\_\_ other more well-informed experimenters failed.  
A. which            B. that            C. what            D. where
14. I have kept that portrait \_\_\_\_\_ I can see it every day , as it always reminds me of my university days in London.  
A. which            B. where            C. whether            D. when
15. There is more land in Australia than the government knows \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. what to do with            B. how to do  
C. to do with it            D. to do it
16. \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher in a university , it is necessary to have at least a master's degree.  
A. To become            B. Become  
C. One becomes            D. On becoming
17. A new technique \_\_\_\_\_ , the yields as a whole increased by 20 per-cent.  
A. working out            B. having worked out  
C. having been worked out            D. to have been worked out
18. \_\_\_\_\_ in a recent science competition , the three students were awarded scholarships totaling \$ 21 000.  
A. Judged the best            B. Judging the best  
C. To be judged the best            D. Having judged the best
19. \_\_\_\_\_ in this way , the situation doesn't seem so disappointing.  
A. To look at            B. Looking at  
C. Looked at            D. To be looked at
20. Corn originated in the New World and thus was not known in Europe until Columbus found it \_\_\_\_\_ in Cuba.  
A. being cultivated            B. been cultivated  
C. having cultivated            D. cultivating
21. The director was critical \_\_\_\_\_ the way we were doing the work.  
A. at            B. in            C. of            D. with
22. Tony is very disappointed \_\_\_\_\_ the result of the exam.  
A. with            B. toward            C. for            D. on
23. What he said just now had little to do with the question \_\_\_\_\_ discussion.  
A. on            B. in            C. under            D. at
24. \_\_\_\_\_ his sister , Jack is quiet and does not easily make friends with others.



- A. Dislike      B. Alike      C. Unlike      D. Liking
25. All the students in this class passed the English exam \_\_\_\_\_ the exception of Li Ming.  
A. on      B. for      C. in      D. with
26. When the whole area was \_\_\_\_\_ by the flood , the government sent food there by helicopter.  
A. cut away      B. cut up      C. cut down      D. cut off
27. When I was very young , I was terribly frightened of school , but I soon \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. got off      B. got across      C. got away      D. got over
28. The engine \_\_\_\_\_ smoke and steam.  
A. gives up      B. gives in      C. gives away      D. gives off
29. The student was just about to \_\_\_\_\_ the question , when suddenly he found the answer.  
A. arrive at      B. submit to      C. work out      D. give up
30. The early pioneers had to \_\_\_\_\_ many hardships to settle on the new land.  
A. go along with      B. go back on      C. go through      D. go into

## 练 习 四

1. \_\_\_\_\_ for your laziness , you could have finished the assignment by now.  
A. Had it not been      B. Weren't it  
C. It were not      D. Had not it been
2. It's necessary \_\_\_\_\_ the dictionary immediately.  
A. that he will return      B. that he return  
C. that he returned      D. that he has to return
3. No matter how the problem of cancer is handled in a family , all the members of the family are bound \_\_\_\_\_ in some way.  
A. to affect      B. affecting  
C. to be affected      D. being affected
4. They are considering \_\_\_\_\_ before the prices go up.  
A. of buying the house      B. with buying the house  
C. buying the house      D. to buy the house



· 附录 I 综合练习 ·

5. Wouldn't you rather your child \_\_\_\_\_ to bed early ?  
A. go                      B. would go      C. went                      D. goes
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ to start our own business , but we never had enough money.  
A. have hoped      B. had hoped      C. would hope      D. should hope
7. He will surely finish the job on time \_\_\_\_\_ he's left to do it in his own way.  
A. in that                      B. so long as      C. in case                      D. as far as
8. By the end of the year all but two people \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. have left                                      B. will leave  
C. will be leaving                              D. will have left
9. By the end of this month , we surely \_\_\_\_\_ a satisfactory solution to the problem.  
A. have found                                      B. will be finding  
C. will have found                              D. are finding
10. \_\_\_\_\_ he works hard , I don't mind when he finishes the experiment.  
A. As soon as      B. As well as      C. So far as                      D. So long as
11. We'll visit Europe next year \_\_\_\_\_ we have enough money.  
A. lest                      B. until                      C. unless                      D. provided
12. The British are not so familiar with different cultures and other ways of doing things , \_\_\_\_\_ is often the case in other countries.  
A. as                      B. what                      C. so                      D. that
13. \_\_\_\_\_ might be expected , the response to the question was very mixed.  
A. As                      B. That                      C. It                      D. What
14. Government cannot operate effectively \_\_\_\_\_ it is free from such interference.  
A. so long as      B. so that                      C. unless                      D. because
15. Some women \_\_\_\_\_ a good salary in a job instead of staying home , but they decided not to work for the sake of the family.  
A. must make                                      B. should have made  
C. would make                                      D. could have made
16. Mr. Smith advised us to withdraw \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. so that to get not involved      B. so as to get not involved  
C. so as not to get involved                      D. so that not to get involved
17. Although Anne is happy with her success she wonders \_\_\_\_\_ will happen to her private life.



- A. that                      B. what                      C. it                      D. this
18. I have heard both teachers and students \_\_\_\_\_ well of him.  
A. to speak                      B. spoken  
C. to have spoken                      D. speak
19. You will see this product \_\_\_\_\_ wherever you go.  
A. advertised                      B. advertising  
C. advertise                      D. to be advertised
20. This crop has similar qualities to the previous one , \_\_\_\_\_ both wind-resistant and adapted to the same type of soil.  
A. being                      B. been                      C. to be                      D. having been
21. She never laughed , \_\_\_\_\_ lose her temper.  
A. or she ever did                      B. nor did she ever  
C. or did she ever                      D. nor she ever did
22. The computer works very fast , \_\_\_\_\_ data at the speed of light.  
A. having handled                      B. handled  
C. handling                      D. handles
23. \_\_\_\_\_ the earth to be flat , many feared that Columbus would fall off the edge of the earth.  
A. Having believed                      B. Believing  
C. Believed                      D. Being believed
24. The British constitution is \_\_\_\_\_ a large extent a product of the historical events described above.  
A. within                      B. to                      C. by                      D. at
25. In the experiment we kept a watchful eye \_\_\_\_\_ the development and recorded every detail.  
A. in                      B. for                      C. on                      D. at
26. The bridge was named \_\_\_\_\_ the hero who gave his life for the cause of the people.  
A. after                      B. by                      C. with                      D. from
27. When he realized the police had spotted him , the man \_\_\_\_\_ the exit as quickly as possible.  
A. made off                      B. made out                      C. made for                      D. made up
28. \_\_\_\_\_ seeing the damage he had done , the child felt ashamed.  
A. By                      B. At                      C. On                      D. For

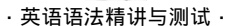


· 附录 I 综合练习 ·

29. There are other problems which I don't propose to \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.  
A. go into      B. go around      C. go for      D. go up
30. Then the speaker \_\_\_\_\_ the various factors leading to present economic crisis.  
A. went after      B. went into      C. went for      D. went on

## 练 习 五

1. It is politely requested by the hotel management that radios \_\_\_\_\_ after 11 o'clock at night.  
A. were not played      B. not be played  
C. not to play      D. did not play
2. The suggestion that the mayor \_\_\_\_\_ the prizes was accepted by everyone.  
A. would present      B. present  
C. ought to present      D. presents
3. He suggested \_\_\_\_\_ to tomorrow's exhibition together.  
A. us to go      B. we shall go      C. we went      D. we go
4. \_\_\_\_\_ right now, she would get there on Sunday.  
A. Would she leave      B. Were she to leave  
C. If she leaves      D. If she had left
5. No one had told Smith about \_\_\_\_\_ a lecture the following day.  
A. there being      B. there be      C. there would be      D. there was
6. Ann never dreams of \_\_\_\_\_ for her to be sent abroad very soon.  
A. there being a chance      B. there to be a chance  
C. there be a chance      D. being a chance
7. My sister's professor had her \_\_\_\_\_ paper many times before allowing her to present it to the committee.  
A. rewritten      B. to rewrite      C. rewrite      D. rewriting
8. I'll accept my job \_\_\_\_\_ I don't have to get up early.  
A. lest      B. as long as      C. in case      D. though
9. Turn on the television or open a magazine and you \_\_\_\_\_ advertisements showing happy, balanced families.  
A. are often seeing      B. often see



- 426



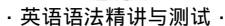


· 附录 I 综合练习 ·

- audience.
- A. having known B. being known C. knowing D. known
22. Michael used to look hurt and surprised when \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. scolding B. to scold C. having scolded D. scolded
23. While \_\_\_\_\_ the sun, the satellite has sent more than four billion bits of information back to earth.  
A. having orbited B. being orbited  
C. having been orbited D. orbiting
24. The students were participating \_\_\_\_\_ an international energy-saving competition between towns in New England and Canada.  
A. for B. to C. in D. at
25. By 1992, Mickey Mouse was as popular \_\_\_\_\_ children as Coca-Cola.  
A. for B. to C. in D. with
26. The manager assured the customer that his complaint would be seen \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.  
A. to B. on C. at D. with
27. Some plants are so sensitive \_\_\_\_\_ pollution that they can only survive in a perfectly clean environment.  
A. from B. to C. against D. with
28. He will agree to do what you require \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
A. of B. to C. from D. for
29. Being a pop star can be quite a hard life, with a lot of traveling \_\_\_\_\_ heavy schedule.  
A. with regard to B. in relation to C. as to D. owing to
30. \_\_\_\_\_ it or not, his discovery has created a stir in scientific circles.  
A. Believe B. To believe C. Believing D. Believed

## 练 习 六

1. I don't think it advisable that Tom \_\_\_\_\_ to the job since he has no experience.  
A. is assigned B. be assigned  
C. will be assigned D. has been assigned



- 428



· 附录 I 综合练习 ·

- A. however much it costs      B. how much does it cost  
C. how much does it cost      D. no matter how it costs
14. \_\_\_\_\_ difficulties we may come across , we'll help one another to overcome them.  
A. Wherever      C. Whatever      C. However      D. Whenever
15. In some countries , \_\_\_\_\_ is called " equality " does not really mean equal rights for all people.  
A. which      B. what      C. that      D. one
16. Her uncle's health has greatly improved \_\_\_\_\_ he stopped smoking.  
A. before      B. since      C. when      D. while
17. I'd rather read than watch television ; the programs seem \_\_\_\_\_ all the time.  
A. to get worse      B. to be getting worse  
C. to have got worse      D. getting worse
18. Mrs. Brown is supposed \_\_\_\_\_ for Italy last week.  
A. to have left      B. to be leaving  
C. to leave      D. to have been left
19. \_\_\_\_\_ with the size of the whole earth , the highest mountain does not seem high at all.  
A. When compared      B. Compare  
C. While comparing      D. Comparing
20. \_\_\_\_\_ in a seemingly endless war , the general was forced to evaluate the situation again.  
A. Since the loss of 50 000 soldiers  
B. Because of 50 000 soldiers having lost  
C. Having lost over 50 000 soldiers  
D. 50 000 soldiers were lost
21. Only by shouting at the top of his voice \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. was he able to make himself hear  
B. he was able to make himself hear  
C. he was able to make himself heard  
D. was he able to make himself heard
22. \_\_\_\_\_ such a good chance , he planned to learn more.  
A. To be given      B. Having been given  
C. Having given      D. Giving



23. If I correct someone , I will do it with as much good humor and self-restraint as if I were the one \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to correct                      B. correcting  
C. having corrected              D. being corrected
24. Does everyone on earth have an equal right \_\_\_\_\_ an equal share of its resources ?  
A. by                      B. to                      C. at                      D. over
25. The survival of civilization as we know is \_\_\_\_\_ threat.  
A. within                      B. under                      C. towards                      D. upon
26. \_\_\_\_\_ one time , Manchester was the home of the most productive cotton mills in the world.  
A. On                      B. At                      C. By                      D. Of
27. We gave out a cheer when the red roof of the cottage came \_\_\_\_\_ view.  
A. from                      B. before                      C. in                      D. into
28. The last time we had a family reunion was \_\_\_\_\_ my brother's wedding ceremony four years ago.  
A. under                      B. at                      C. over                      D. during
29. Frequently single-parent children \_\_\_\_\_ some of the functions that the absent adult in the house would have served.  
A. take off                      B. take in                      C. take after                      D. take on
30. The new appointment of our president \_\_\_\_\_ from the very beginning of next semester.  
A. takes effect                      B. takes place                      C. takes part                      D. takes turn

## 练 习 七

1. We desire that the tour leader \_\_\_\_\_ us immediately of any change in plans.  
A. inform                      B. informed  
C. informs                      D. has informed
2. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ longer this morning , but I had to get up and come to class.  
A. could have slept                      B. might have slept  
C. slept                      D. have slept
3. If the whole operation \_\_\_\_\_ beforehand , a great deal of time and money



· 附录 I 综合练习 ·

- would have been lost.
- A. was not planned                      B. had not been planned  
C. has not been planned                D. were not planned
4. He was punished \_\_\_\_\_ he should make the same mistake again.  
A. unless                      B. if                      C. provided                D. lest
5. The goals \_\_\_\_\_ he had fought all his life no longer seemed important to him.  
A. after which            B. for which            C. with which            D. at which
6. While people may refer to television for up-to-the-minute news , it is unlikely that television \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper completely.  
A. replaced                B. have replaced            C. replace                D. will replace
7. If she doesn't tell him the truth now , he'll simply keep on asking her until she \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. does                      B. has done                C. will do                      D. would do
8. Living in the central Australian desert has its problems , \_\_\_\_\_ obtaining water is not the least.  
A. for which                B. to which                C. of which                D. in which
9. \_\_\_\_\_ before we depart the day after tomorrow , we should have a wonderful dinner party.  
A. Had they arrived                      B. Were they arriving  
C. Would they arrive                      D. Were they to arrive
10. The match was cancelled because most of the members \_\_\_\_\_ a match without a standard court.  
A. objected to having                      B. were objected to have  
C. objected to have                      D. were objected to having
11. The traditional approach \_\_\_\_\_ with complex problem is to break them down into smaller , more easily managed problems.  
A. to dealing                B. in dealing                C. dealing                      D. to deal
12. \_\_\_\_\_ as it was at such a time , his work attracted much attention.  
A. Being published                      B. Published  
C. Publishing                      D. To be published
13. \_\_\_\_\_ that my head had cleared , my brain was also beginning to work much better.  
A. For                      B. Now                      C. Since                      D. Despite



14. Not that John doesn't want to help you , \_\_\_\_\_ it's beyond his power.  
A. but that      B. for that      C. and that      D. in that
15. I was advised to arrange for insurance \_\_\_\_\_ I needed medical treatment.  
A. nevertheless    B. although      C. in case      D. so that
16. He moved away from his parents , and missed them \_\_\_\_\_ enjoy the exciting life in New York.  
A. too much to      B. enough to  
C. very much to      D. much so as to
17. This box is too heavy ; \_\_\_\_\_ give me a hand ?  
A. would you mind      B. would you please  
C. was accepted      D. were accepted
18. I remember \_\_\_\_\_ to help us if we ever got into trouble.  
A. once offering      B. him once offering  
C. him to offer      D. to offer him
19. \_\_\_\_\_ men have learned much from the behavior of animals is hardly new.  
A. That      B. Those      C. What      D. Whether
20. Homework \_\_\_\_\_ on time will lead to better grades.  
A. done      B. be done  
C. having done      D. to have been done
21. Young \_\_\_\_\_ he is , he is equal to the task.  
A. as      B. because      C. although      D. however
22. His remarks left me \_\_\_\_\_ about his real purpose.  
A. wondered      B. wonder      C. to wonder      D. wondering
23. After a few rounds of talks , both sides regarded the territory dispute \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. being settled    B. to be settled    C. had settled      D. as settled
24. When I caught him \_\_\_\_\_ I stopped buying things there and started dealing with another shop.  
A. cheating      B. cheat      C. to cheat      D. to be cheating
25. We love peace , yet we are not the kind of people to yield \_\_\_\_\_ any military threat.  
A. up      B. to      C. in      D. at
26. He always did well at school \_\_\_\_\_ having to do part-time jobs every now and then.  
A. in spite of      B. regardless of    C. on account of    D. in case of

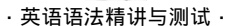


· 附录 I 综合练习 ·

27. \_\_\_\_\_ their differences ,the couple were developing an obvious and genuine affection for each other.  
A. But for          B. Above all      C. For all          D. Except for
28. I can \_\_\_\_\_ some noise while I'm studying ,but I can't stand loud noises.  
A. come up with    B. put up with    C. catch up with    D. keep up with
29. Every man in this country has the right to live where he wants to \_\_\_\_\_ the color of skin.  
A. with exception of                      B. by virtue of  
C. in the light of                          D. regardless of
30. One day I \_\_\_\_\_ a newspaper article about the retirement of an English professor at a nearby state college.  
A. came across    B. came after    C. came about    D. came at

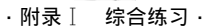
## 练 习 八

1. " You are very selfish. It's high time you \_\_\_\_\_ that you are not the most important person in the world. " Edgar said to his boss angrily.  
A. realized                                      B. realize  
C. have realized                                D. should realize
2. It's already 5 o'clock now. Don't you think it's about time \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. we are going home                      B. we went home  
C. we go home                                D. we can go home
3. If only the committee \_\_\_\_\_ the regulations and put them into effect as soon as possible.  
A. approve                                      B. can approve  
C. will approve                                D. would approve
4. Look at the terrible situation I am in !If only I \_\_\_\_\_ your advice.  
A. follow                                        B. would follow  
C. had followed                                D. have followed
5. I'm sure he is up to the job \_\_\_\_\_ he would give his mind to it.  
A. if only                      B. in case                      C. until                      D. unless
6. \_\_\_\_\_ for my illness I would have lent him a helping hand.  
A. Not being                                      B. Without being



- 434





- 435



- A. has left      B. is to leave      C. leaves      D. is to be left

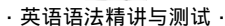
## 练 习 九

1. You don't have to be in such a hurry. I would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ on business first.  
A. would go      B. will go      C. went      D. have gone
2. Frankly speaking, I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anything about it for the time being.  
A. didn't do      B. haven't done      C. don't do      D. have done
3. Jack wishes that he \_\_\_\_\_ business instead of history when he was in university.  
A. studied      B. had been studying  
C. study      D. had studied
4. It is recommended that the project \_\_\_\_\_ until all the preparations have been made.  
A. is not started      B. not be started  
C. will not be started      D. is not to be started
5. After \_\_\_\_\_ for the job, you will be required to take a language test.  
A. being interviewed      B. interviewed  
C. interviewing      D. having interviewed
6. Jean did not have time to go to the concert last night because she was busy \_\_\_\_\_ for her examination.  
A. to prepare      B. to be prepared  
C. preparing      D. being prepared
7. As \_\_\_\_\_ announced in today's papers, the Shanghai Export Commodities Fair is also open on Sundays.  
A. being      B. is      C. to be      D. been
8. Output is now six times \_\_\_\_\_ it was before liberation.  
A. what      B. that      C. which      D. of which
9. Melted iron is poured into the mixer much \_\_\_\_\_ tea is poured into a cup from a teapot.  
A. in the same way like      B. in the same way which  
C. in the same way      D. in the same way as



· 附录 I 综合练习 ·

10. This kind of glasses manufactured by experienced craftsmen \_\_\_\_\_ comfortably.  
A. is worn      B. wears      C. wearing      D. are worn
11. The mere fact \_\_\_\_\_ most people believe nuclear war would be madness does not mean that it will not occur.  
A. what      B. which      C. that      D. why
12. Careful surveys have indicated that as many as 50 percent of patients do not take drugs \_\_\_\_\_ directed.  
A. like      B. so      C. which      D. as
13. That tree looked as if it \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time.  
A. hasn't watered      B. didn't water  
C. hadn't been watered      D. wasn't watered
14. \_\_\_\_\_ man can create radioactive elements , there is nothing he can do to reduce radioactivity.  
A. As      B. Whether      C. While      D. Now that
15. As a public relations officer , he is said \_\_\_\_\_ some very influential people.  
A. to know      B. to have been knowing  
C. to be knowing      D. to have known
16. If you want \_\_\_\_\_ you have to get the fund somewhere.  
A. that the job is done      B. the job done  
C. to have done the job      D. the job that is done
17. I'll never forget \_\_\_\_\_ you for the first time.  
A. to meet      B. meeting  
C. to have met      D. having to be meeting
18. As early as 1647 Ohio made a decision that free , tax-supported schools must be established in every town \_\_\_\_\_ 50 households or more.  
A. having      B. to have      C. to have had      D. having had
19. The house was very quiet , \_\_\_\_\_ as it was on the side of a mountain.  
A. isolated      B. isolating  
C. being isolated      D. having been isolated
20. Children are very curious \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. at heart      B. on purpose      C. in person      D. by nature
21. We regret to inform you that the materials you ordered are \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. out of work      B. out of reach



- ## 练习十

- 438



· 附录 I 综合练习 ·

- A. which                  B. how                  C. when                  D. where
2. \_\_\_\_\_ the day went on , the weather got worse.  
A. With                  B. While                  C. As                  D. Since
3. It is important that enough money \_\_\_\_\_ to fund the project.  
A. be collected                  B. was collected  
C. must be collected                  D. can be collected
4. He must have had an accident ,or he \_\_\_\_\_ then.  
A. would have been here                  B. should be here  
C. had to be here                  D. would be here
5. \_\_\_\_\_ you are leaving tomorrow , we can eat dinner together tonight.  
A. For                  B. Since                  C. Before                  D. While
6. What \_\_\_\_\_ it rains while we are a long way from shelter ?  
A. if                  B. for                  C. with                  D. time
7. \_\_\_\_\_ the calculation is right , scientist can never be sure that they have included all variables and modeled them accurately.  
A. Even if                  B. As far as                  C. If only                  D. So long as
8. These two areas are similar \_\_\_\_\_ they both have a high rainfall during this reason.  
A. to that                  B. besides that                  C. in that                  D. except that
9. Rod is determined to get a seat for the concert \_\_\_\_\_ it means standing in a queue all night.  
A. as if                  B. provided                  C. even if                  D. whatever
10. Your hair wants \_\_\_\_\_. You'd better have it done tomorrow.  
A. cut                  B. to cut                  C. cutting                  D. being cut
11. People appreciate \_\_\_\_\_ with him because he has a good sense of humor.  
A. to work                  B. to have worked  
C. working                  D. having worked
12. Sometimes children have trouble \_\_\_\_\_ fact from fiction and may believe that such things actually exist.  
A. to separate                  B. separating                  C. for separating                  D. of separating
13. \_\_\_\_\_ I had done it , I knew I had made a mistake.  
A. Moment                  B. Direct                  C. Directly                  D. Constant
14. With the development in science and technology man can make various flowers \_\_\_\_\_ before their time.



- A. be bloomed    B. bloomed    C. bloom    D. blooming
15. The president promised to keep all the board members \_\_\_\_\_ of how the negotiations were going on.  
A. inform    B. be informed    C. informing    D. informed
16. All the tasks \_\_\_\_\_ ahead of time , they decided to go on holiday for a week.  
A. been fulfilled    B. were fulfilled  
C. having been fulfilled    D. had been fulfilled
17. All flights \_\_\_\_\_ because of the terrible weather , they had to go there by train.  
A. having been canceled    B. had been canceled  
C. having canceled    D. were canceled
18. The project , \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of 2000 , will expand the city's telephone network to cover 1 000 000 users.  
A. accomplished    B. being accomplished  
C. to be accomplished    D. having been accomplished
19. A person 's calorie requirement vary \_\_\_\_\_ his life  
A. across    B. throughout    C. over    D. within
20. The committee is totally opposed \_\_\_\_\_ any changes being made in the plan.  
A. of    B. on    C. to    D. against
21. In recent years much more emphasis has been put \_\_\_\_\_ developing the students productive skills.  
A. onto    B. over    C. in    D. on
22. The older New England villages have changed relatively little \_\_\_\_\_ a gas station or two in recent decades.  
A. except for    B. except    C. in addition to    D. besides
23. Reading \_\_\_\_\_ the lines , I would say that the Government are more worried than they will admit.  
A. behind    B. between    C. along    D. among
24. Although punctual himself , the professor was quite used \_\_\_\_\_ late for his lecture.  
A. to have students    B. for students' being  
C. for students to be    D. to students' being



· 附录 I 综合练习 ·

25. I was \_\_\_\_\_ the point of telephoning him when his letter arrived.  
A. to                      B. on                      C. at                      D. in
26. Great as Newton was , many of his ideas \_\_\_\_\_ today and are being modified by the work of scientists of our time.  
A. are to challenge                      B. may be challenged  
C. have been challenged                      D. are challenging
27. The organization had broken no rules , but \_\_\_\_\_ had it acted responsibly.  
A. neither                      B. so                      C. either                      D. both
28. The manager needs an assistant that he can \_\_\_\_\_ to take care of problem in his absence.  
A. count on                      B. count in                      C. count up                      D. count out
29. I want to buy a new tie to \_\_\_\_\_ this brown suit.  
A. go into                      B. go with                      C. go after                      D. go by
30. I didn't know the word. I had to \_\_\_\_\_ a dictionary.  
A. look out                      B. make out                      C. refer to                      D. go over



## 附录 II 练习参考答案

### Exercise 1

#### I. 选择题

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. D 8. B 9. D 10. C  
11. C 12. D 13. B 14. C 15. C 16. A 17. D 18. D 19. C 20. A  
21. B 22. A 23. C 24. A 25. B 26. C 27. C 28. D 29. B 30. A  
31. D 32. D 33. C 34. A 35. D 36. A 37. C 38. D 39. A 40. C  
41. A 42. C 43. C 44. B 45. C 46. A 47. B 48. C 49. A 50. B  
51. D 52. C

#### II. 改错题

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. C—bad        | 2. B—important  |
| 3. B—lay        | 4. C—hanged     |
| 5. D—lying      | 6. B—will arise |
| 7. C—effect     | 8. D—laid       |
| 9. B—expose     | 10. D—passed    |
| 11. A—It struck | 12. B—cost      |
| 13. D—survived  | 14. B—invented  |
| 15. B—grew      | 16. B—lying     |
| 17. C—let       | 18. B—updating  |

### Exercise 2

#### I. 选择题

1. A 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. C 6. A 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. C  
11. D 12. D 13. D 14. D 15. B 16. A 17. A 18. A 19. D 20. C  
21. D 22. B 23. B 24. B 25. A 26. A 27. B 28. B 29. D 30. C  
31. C 32. A 33. B 34. A 35. B 36. A 37. D 38. B 39. C 40. B  
41. B 42. C 43. D 44. C 45. C 46. C 47. D 48. D 49. A 50. D

#### II. 改错题

- |              |                            |
|--------------|----------------------------|
| 1. D—was     | 2. B—will have taught      |
| 3. C—will be | 4. B—had already been dead |
| 5. B—dislike | 6. C—understand            |





· 附录 II 练习参考答案 ·

- |                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 7. B—has watched       | 8. D—has been             |
| 9. C—eaten             | 10. B—was hurrying        |
| 11. A—have taken       | 12. B—came/ had come      |
| 13. A—reflect          | 14. D—does                |
| 15. B—belongs          | 16. A—had been discovered |
| 17. C—was              | 18. C—was                 |
| 19. C—realized         | 20. D—are going to        |
| 21. A—was              | 22. A—goes                |
| 23. B—suddenly saw     | 24. D—had been using      |
| 25. B—was returning    | 26. D—had regarded        |
| 27. B—needed           | 28. A—has got             |
| 29. C—had been playing | 30. C—had been            |

### Exercise 3

#### I. 选择题

1. C 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. A  
11. D 12. D 13. A 14. C 15. B 16. C 17. A 18. A 19. A 20. A  
21. B 22. B 23. B 24. A 25. A 26. C 27. B 28. B 29. A 30. B  
31. A 32. C 33. B 34. C 35. A 36. B 37. D 38. B 39. B 40. D

#### II. 改错题

- |                          |                                 |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. D—survive             | 2. D—has been put               |
| 3. A—be compared         | 4. C—designed                   |
| 5. C—has been expressed  | 6. C—extended                   |
| 7. D—are overcome        | 8. C—is said                    |
| 9. A—are paid            | 10. B—won't be brought          |
| 11. B—to wait            | 12. C—has been given            |
| 13. B—be led             | 14. D—being raised              |
| 15. B—had failed         | 16. A—Having been badly damaged |
| 17. B—being given        | 18. D—understood                |
| 19. D—have been affected | 20. D—live in                   |



## Exercise 4

### I. 选择题

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. A  
11. A 12. B 13. C 14. A 15. D 16. B 17. C 18. A 19. C 20. C  
21. C 22. C 23. B 24. D 25. B 26. B 27. C 28. D 29. C 30. B  
31. A 32. B 33. C 34. C 35. A 36. C 37. C 38. B 39. A 40. B

### II. 改错题

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. C—should have planned | 2. A—can't have been     |
| 3. D—have bought         | 4. C—may have gone       |
| 5. C—needn't             | 6. C—have dropped        |
| 7. B—used to             | 8. C—must have practiced |
| 9. B—was able to         | 10. C—pay                |
| 11. B—change             | 12. C—oughtn't to        |
| 13. D—might have been    | 14. C—去掉 being           |
| 15. D—must be having     | 16. D—have liked         |
| 17. A—had to             | 18. B—might have seen    |
| 19. A—can't              | 20. D—have reached       |

## Exercise 5

### I. 选择题

1. C 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. B  
11. B 12. C 13. C 14. A 15. D 16. B 17. A 18. C 19. C 20. C  
21. C 22. A 23. A 24. B 25. C 26. D 27. C 28. B 29. B 30. B  
31. D 32. B 33. B 34. C 35. A 36. C 37. A 38. A 39. B 40. C

### II. 改错题

- |                          |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. B—should be           | 2. B—( should ) be assigned  |
| 3. C—( should ) turn off | 4. A—went                    |
| 5. B—should be           | 6. D—have                    |
| 7. C—had not attempted   | 8. A—had lived               |
| 9. A—had I had           | 10. B—( should ) appoint     |
| 11. A—had lain           | 12. B—would have accepted    |
| 13. C—not be             | 14. C—wouldn't have ventured |



· 附录 II 练习参考答案 ·

15. B—( should ) be emphasized      16. C—hadn't gone to  
17. B—( should )                      18. C—had gone  
19. B—would have seen                20. C—would have arrived

## Exercise 6

### I. 选择题

1. C 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. D 8. D 9. D 10. A  
11. A 12. C 13. C 14. A 15. D 16. D 17. C 18. B 19. D 20. C  
21. C 22. A 23. B 24. D 25. C 26. B 27. B 28. A 29. B 30. C  
31. B 32. C 33. C 34. C 35. A 36. B 37. A 38. B 39. D 40. D  
41. C 42. C 43. C 44. A 45. B 46. C 47. D 48. C 49. B 50. D  
51. C 52. D 53. C 54. D 55. A 56. B 57. C 58. C 59. C 60. C

### II. 改错题

- |                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. B—puzzled               | 2. A—to be offered  |
| 3. B—going up              | 4. C—made           |
| 5. B—written               | 6. A—having blamed  |
| 7. C—to have been invented | 8. C—but believe    |
| 9. D—being                 | 10. C—writing about |
| 11. D—affected             | 12. A—allowing      |
| 13. D—taken                | 14. B—to swim       |
| 15. A—sound-producing      | 16. B—to survive    |
| 17. D—to receiving         | 18. C—to destroy    |
| 19. A—speaking             | 20. C—to recognize  |
| 21. C—hunting              | 22. B—as planned    |
| 23. C—of performing        | 24. C—interrupting  |
| 25. D—to know how to use   | 26. D—to practice   |
| 27. C—to write             | 28. B—it            |
| 29. C—gathered             | 30. A—Having read   |
| 31. D—fixed                | 32. D—being passed  |
| 33. C—spoken               | 34. C—to get        |
| 35. B—guarantee to meet    |                     |



## Exercise 7

### I. 选择题

1. A 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. C  
11. A 12. A 13. C 14. B 15. B 16. C 17. D 18. C 19. A 20. C  
21. D 22. A 23. B 24. D 25. D 26. A 27. B 28. D 29. D 30. C  
31. A 32. B 33. C 34. A 35. B

### II. 改错题

- |                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. C—failures        | 2. B—four-day           |
| 3. C—idea            | 4. C—it contains        |
| 5. C—it is           | 6. B—was                |
| 7. A—intelligence    | 8. A—were               |
| 9. D—tube            | 10. D—hairs             |
| 11. A—Mary           | 12. B—pains             |
| 13. B—John's         | 14. B—mother-in-law's   |
| 15. C—Tom's and Ed's | 16. B—prisoners-of-war  |
| 17. D—are            | 18. C—father-in-law's   |
| 19. A—two-week       | 20. B—phenomena         |
| 21. A—women doctors  | 22. C—the human being's |
| 23. B—teeth          | 24. C—preparations      |
| 25. D—surroundings   |                         |

## Exercise 8

### I. 选择题

1. B 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. A 10. B  
11. A 12. A 13. C 14. C 15. C 16. B 17. C 18. D 19. A 20. B  
21. A 22. C 23. D 24. C 25. B 26. B 27. D 28. B 29. C 30. A  
31. A 32. A 33. C 34. B 35. A 36. C 37. B 38. A 39. B 40. A  
41. B 42. C 43. C 44. C 45. C 46. A 47. D 48. B 49. B 50. A

### II. 改错题

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. D—their         | 2. C—it         |
| 3. D—visiting them | 4. C—any        |
| 5. C—anything      | 6. A—Most of us |



· 附录 II 练习参考答案 ·

- |                      |                            |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 7. C—he              | 8. D—the other ones        |
| 9. A—Most of         | 10. D—that it looks        |
| 11. C—his            | 12. C—yourselves           |
| 13. A—Those          | 14. C—those( televisions ) |
| 15. D—for himself    | 16. C—themselves           |
| 17. B—should include | 18. C—the other            |
| 19. D—someone else   | 20. B—nothing              |
| 21. D—all our names  | 22. D—his                  |
| 23. C—nothing else   | 24. D—the second           |
| 25. D—they are       | 26. D—that of the plains   |
| 27. C—I              | 28. D—pen of his           |
| 29. C—such           | 30. C—none                 |

## Exercise 9

### I. 选择题

1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. A 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. B  
11. C 12. A 13. B 14. A 15. B 16. C 17. A 18. B 19. C 20. D  
21. B 22. B 23. D 24. B 25. A 26. B 27. C 28. A 29. B 30. A  
31. B 32. C 33. D 34. A 35. A 36. B 37. C 38. A 39. A 40. B  
41. B 42. A 43. D 44. A 45. A

### II. 改错题

- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. C—has                 | 2. B—such a way           |
| 3. A—Since the beginning | 4. B—the people           |
| 5. A—an                  | 6. A—an ancient source    |
| 7. A—a                   | 8. A—such a beautiful day |
| 9. A—taken the place of  | 10. C—a doctor            |
| 11. B—in front of        | 12. D—lives               |
| 13. D—the sunrise        | 14. A—a                   |
| 15. C—the Smiths         | 16. B—as a result         |
| 17. B—the                | 18. A—All the books       |
| 19. D—去掉 the             | 20. B—the 1950s           |



## Exercise 10

### I. 选择题(1)

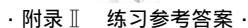
1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. D  
11. A 12. D 13. C 14. B 15. B 16. C 17. A 18. A 19. B 20. C  
21. A 22. D 23. B 24. B 25. C 26. B 27. B 28. A 29. D 30. A  
31. B 32. D 33. D 34. A 35. A 36. A 37. A 38. C 39. D 40. D  
41. B 42. A 43. B 44. A 45. A 46. B 47. B 48. B 49. C 50. D  
51. C 52. A 53. C 54. B 55. C

### 选择题(2)

1. D 2. D 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. D 10. D  
11. C 12. A 13. B 14. D 15. C 16. D 17. B 18. A 19. C 20. C  
21. B 22. C 23. A 24. A 25. C 26. B 27. D 28. A 29. C 30. D  
31. C 32. D 33. D 34. B 35. A 36. B 37. C 38. A 39. C 40. B  
41. D 42. B 43. C 44. A 45. D 46. D 47. C 48. D 49. A 50. C  
51. C 52. D 53. A 54. A 55. A

### II. 改错题

- |                                 |                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. B—are more likely            | 2. C—poorliest-taught |
| 3. D—Dick's                     | 4. C—superior         |
| 5. D—self-evident               | 6. A—Further          |
| 7. B—the worse                  | 8. D—careful enough   |
| 9. C—considerate                | 10. B—so              |
| 11. D—that of any other country | 12. B—to              |
| 13. B—three times as            | 14. C—less greedy     |
| 15. B—去掉 the more               | 16. B—late            |
| 17. B—the more likely           | 18. D—wide open       |
| 19. A—so naive                  | 20. B—a little        |
| 21. D—public                    | 22. D—incredibly      |
| 23. C—more                      | 24. D—did             |
| 25. D—fewer                     | 26. D—a universally   |
| 27. B—that of white Americans   | 28. B—larger          |



## Exercise 12

### I. 选择题

- |     |   |     |   |     |   |     |   |     |   |     |   |     |   |     |   |     |   |     |   |
|-----|---|-----|---|-----|---|-----|---|-----|---|-----|---|-----|---|-----|---|-----|---|-----|---|
| 1.  | C | 2.  | C | 3.  | D | 4.  | D | 5.  | C | 6.  | C | 7.  | D | 8.  | D | 9.  | B | 10. | B |
| 11. | B | 12. | C | 13. | C | 14. | B | 15. | A | 16. | C | 17. | C | 18. | B | 19. | C | 20. | D |
| 21. | C | 22. | B | 23. | C | 24. | D | 25. | D | 26. | A | 27. | A | 28. | B | 29. | C | 30. | D |
| 31. | B | 32. | C | 33. | A | 34. | B | 35. | C | 36. | A | 37. | A | 38. | C | 39. | A | 40. | C |
| 41. | D | 42. | A | 43. | B | 44. | C | 45. | C |     |   |     |   |     |   |     |   |     |   |

## II. 改错题

1. B—what                      2. C—that



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 3. B—whoever        | 4. B—that            |
| 5. C—that           | 6. C—what they       |
| 7. C—that           | 8. A—what it is like |
| 9. B—and that       | 10. B—whether        |
| 11. B—that          | 12. B—that           |
| 13. C—what          | 14. A—whether        |
| 15. A—who           | 16. B—whoever        |
| 17. B—what/all that | 18. D—what           |
| 19. D—that          | 20. C—that           |

## Exercise 13

### I. 选择题

1. A 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. D 8. A 9. A 10. A  
11. A 12. B 13. D 14. B 15. C 16. D 17. A 18. B 19. A 20. C  
21. A 22. D 23. D 24. D 25. D 26. B 27. C 28. B 29. A 30. C  
31. A 32. B 33. D 34. D 35. B 36. C 37. A 38. B 39. C 40. D  
41. B 42. C 43. A 44. B 45. B 46. C 47. B 48. B 49. A 50. A

### II. 改错题

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. A—which                 | 2. A—which/that            |
| 3. A—that                  | 4. C—those who only read   |
| 5. C—students who had been | 6. C—whose                 |
| 7. B—who                   | 8. A—which was             |
| 9. D—in which/where        | 10. C—which                |
| 11. B—that                 | 12. B—who                  |
| 13. A—that                 | 14. D—去掉 that              |
| 15. B—whom                 | 16. B—additives which will |
| 17. A—all of whom          | 18. B—by which             |
| 19. C—where                | 20. C—who                  |
| 21. B—which                | 22. C—but                  |
| 23. A—which                | 24. C—who                  |
| 25. D—which                |                            |





## Exercise 14

### I. 选择题

1. D 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. B 10. B  
11. A 12. A 13. D 14. D 15. B 16. B 17. B 18. B 19. A 20. B  
21. A 22. D 23. B 24. C 25. D 26. B 27. C 28. A 29. B 30. C  
31. D 32. B 33. D 34. D 35. C 36. A 37. A 38. B 39. A 40. D  
41. C 42. D 43. C 44. C 45. C 46. B 47. B 48. B 49. C 50. D

### II. 改错题

- |                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. B—each time      | 2. D—though            |
| 3. A—though         | 4. A—as                |
| 5. C—so             | 6. C—that              |
| 7. B—in that it     | 8. A—When I am walking |
| 9. C—even though    | 10. D—just as          |
| 11. C—what forceful | 12. A—However hard     |
| 13. A—Unless        | 14. A—Much as          |
| 15. A—In whatever   | 16. A—such a           |
| 17. A—Although      | 18. A—looked as if     |
| 19. A—so rapidly    | 20. B—as long as       |
| 21. A—Come up       | 22. A—Even             |
| 23. C—when          |                        |

## Exercise 15

### I. 选择题

1. D 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. C 10. B  
11. B 12. B 13. C 14. B 15. B 16. D 17. B 18. D 19. A 20. C  
21. C 22. D 23. D 24. C 25. D 26. A 27. A 28. B 29. D 30. C  
31. C 32. D 33. A 34. B 35. B 36. B 37. A 38. C 39. D 40. A  
41. D 42. C 43. B 44. D 45. C

### II. 改错题

- |                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A—has the world been | 2. C—produce           |
| 3. C—does he begin      | 4. D—they are          |
| 5. C—other planets are  | 6. B—exercise they did |



- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 7. C—nor               | 8. A—Such                  |
| 9. B—that he realized  | 10. C—can we               |
| 11. B—stands           | 12. C—did he have          |
| 13. B—had he received  | 14. B—they are             |
| 15. D—though/as        | 16. D—so would most of you |
| 17. B—did they realize | 18. A—can the computer     |
| 19. B—should you       | 20. A—exist                |
| 21. D—it has           |                            |

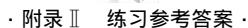
## Exercise 16

### I. 选择题

1. B 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. A 8. A 9. C 10. A  
11. B 12. C 13. B 14. B 15. B 16. B 17. D 18. B 19. C 20. D  
21. A 22. D 23. B 24. D 25. C 26. C 27. C 28. A 29. C 30. A  
31. B 32. B 33. B 34. B 35. A 36. A 37. C 38. A 39. C 40. C  
41. A 42. C 43. D 44. A 45. C 46. A 47. C 48. A 49. D 50. C  
51. C 52. B 53. A 54. B 55. C 56. A 57. C 58. C 59. C 60. B

### II. 改错题

- |                               |                          |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A—were                     | 2. C—turn into           |
| 3. A—is                       | 4. C—was                 |
| 5. A—is                       | 6. C—is                  |
| 7. C—is                       | 8. D—them                |
| 9. C—his                      | 10. D—they are           |
| 11. B—was sent                | 12. A—appear             |
| 13. B—has been                | 14. A—has been organized |
| 15. C—he invited the audience | 16. B—is                 |
| 17. B—is                      | 18. C—it                 |
| 19. C—has been                | 20. C—is                 |
| 21. D—is                      | 22. C—was                |
| 23. C—was                     | 24. C—was                |
| 25. D—receives                | 26. C—was                |
| 27. B—is                      | 28. A—is                 |



- ## Exercise 17

## Exercise 18

1. C—do
2. D—去掉 to take
3. C—smell
4. D—visiting
5. C—controls
6. D—an extra job



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

- |                           |                     |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 7. B—cheating             | 8. C—he understands |
| 9. C—cleaned the house    | 10. A—to provide    |
| 11. B—improve             | 12. D—and had no    |
| 13. C—that                | 14. B—they          |
| 15. B—that                | 16. A—it was        |
| 17. C—reading             | 18. C—walking       |
| 19. D—asked to pay a fine | 20. B—we receive    |



## 综合练习参考答案

### 练习一

1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. A  
11. C 12. C 13. A 14. D 15. D 16. C 17. D 18. A 19. B 20. C  
21. C 22. B 23. C 24. C 25. A 26. D 27. A 28. C 29. B 30. C

### 练习二

1. D 2. D 3. C 4. C 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. A  
11. C 12. D 13. A 14. B 15. B 16. D 17. B 18. D 19. A 20. A  
21. A 22. D 23. A 24. B 25. D 26. C 27. C 28. D 29. C 30. A

### 练习三

1. B 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. C 6. D 7. D 8. B 9. A 10. C  
11. A 12. C 13. D 14. B 15. A 16. A 17. C 18. A 19. C 20. A  
21. C 22. A 23. C 24. C 25. D 26. D 27. D 28. D 29. D 30. C

### 练习四

1. A 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. B 8. D 9. C 10. D  
11. D 12. A 13. A 14. C 15. D 16. C 17. B 18. D 19. A 20. A  
21. B 22. C 23. B 24. B 25. C 26. A 27. C 28. C 29. A 30. B

### 练习五

1. B 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. A  
11. D 12. C 13. B 14. C 15. C 16. B 17. A 18. D 19. B 20. B  
21. D 22. D 23. D 24. C 25. D 26. A 27. B 28. A 29. D 30. A

### 练习六

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. C 10. A  
11. B 12. C 13. A 14. C 15. B 16. B 17. B 18. A 19. A 20. C  
21. D 22. B 23. D 24. B 25. B 26. B 27. D 28. B 29. D 30. A



### 练习七

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. A  
11. A 12. B 13. B 14. A 15. C 16. A 17. B 18. B 19. A 20. A  
21. A 22. D 23. D 24. A 25. B 26. A 27. C 28. B 29. D 30. A

### 练习八

1. A 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. D 10. A  
11. A 12. C 13. C 14. A 15. A 16. D 17. B 18. D 19. A 20. A  
21. C 22. C 23. D 24. C 25. C 26. C 27. B 28. B 29. C 30. D

### 练习九

1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. B  
11. C 12. D 13. C 14. C 15. A 16. B 17. B 18. A 19. A 20. D  
21. C 22. D 23. C 24. C 25. C 26. C 27. B 28. C 29. C 30. A

### 练习十

1. C 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. C  
11. C 12. B 13. C 14. C 15. D 16. C 17. A 18. C 19. B 20. C  
21. D 22. A 23. B 24. D 25. B 26. C 27. A 28. A 29. B 30. C



## 附录Ⅲ 不规则动词的变化形式

Infinitive	Past Tense	Past Participle
不定式	过去式	过去分词
abide	abode , abided	abode , abided
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awoke , awaked
be	was , were	been
bear	bore	borne , born
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
befall	befell	befallen
beget	begot	begotten , begot
begin	began	begun
behold	beheld	beheld
bend	bent	bent
bereave	bereaved , bereft	bereaved , bereft
beseech	besought , beseeched	besought , beseeched
beset	beset	beset
bespeak	bespoke	bespoken , bespoke
bespread	bespread	bespread
bestrew	bestrewed	bestrewn , bestrewed
bestride	bestrode	bestridden , bestrid , bestrode
bet	bet , betted	bet , betted
betake	betook	betaken
bethink	bethought	bethought
bid	bade , bid	bidden , bid
bide	bode , bided	bided
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bitten , bit
bleed	bled	bled
blend	blended , blent	blended , blent
bless	blessed , blest	blessed , blest



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
breed	bred	bred
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast , broadcasted	broadcast , broadcasted
browbeat	browbeat	browbeaten
build	built	built
burn	burnt , burned	burnt , burned
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
chide	chid , chided	chid , chidden , chided
choose	chose	chosen
cling	clung	clung
clothe	clothed , clad	clothed , clad
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
crow	crowed , crew	crowed
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
dispread	dispread	dispread
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamed , dreamt	dreamed , dreamt
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
dwel	dwelt , dwelled	dwelt , dwelled
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt





· 附录Ⅲ 不规则动词的变化形式 ·

fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
flee	fled	fled
fling	flung	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbear	forbore	forborne
forbid	forbade , forbade	forbidden
forecast	forecast , forecasted	forecast , forecasted
fordo	fordid	fordone
forego	forewent	foregone
foreknow	foreknew	foreknown
forerun	foreran	forerun
foresee	foresaw	foreseen
foreshow	foreshowed	foreshown
foretell	foretold	foretold
forget	forgot	forgotten , forgot
forgive	forgave	forgiven
forsake	forsook	forsaken
forswear	forswore	forsworn
freeze	froze	frozen
gainsay	gainsaid	gainsaid
get	got	got , gotten
gild	gilded , gild	gilded
gird	girded , girt	girded , girt
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grave	graved	graven , graved
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hamstring	hamstringed , hamstrung	hamstringed , hamstrung
hang	hung , hanged	hung , hanged
have( has )	had	had
hear	heard	heard
heave	heaved , hove	heaved , hove



· 英语语法精讲与测试 ·

hew	hewed	hewed , hewn
hide	hid	hidden , hid
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
inlay	inlaid	inlaid
keep	kept	kept
kneel	knelt , kneeled	knelt , kneeled
knit	knitted , knit	knitted , knit
know	knew	known
lade	laded	laded , laden
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
lean	leaned , leant	leaned , leant
leap	leapt , leaped	leapt , leaped
learn	learnt , learned	learnt , learned
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit , lighted	lit , lighted
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
mislead	misled	misled
mistake	mistook	mistaken
misunderstand	misunderstood	misunderstood
outbid	outbade , outbid	outbidden , outbid
outbreed	outbred	outbred
outdo	outdid	outdone
outeat	outate	outaten
outfight	outfought	outfought
outgo	outwent	outgone